



PROJECT MANUAL

ELMIRA CITY SCHOOL DISTRICT

BROADWAY 2026 RENOVATIONS

VOLUME III

BROADWAY SED # : 07-06-00-01-0-034-027

CAPITAL OUTLAY SED #: 07-06-00-01-0-034-028

The design of this project conforms to all applicable provisions of the New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code, the New York State Energy Conservation Code, and the building standards of the New York State Education Department

JULY 24, 2026

ISSUED FOR BIDS: OCTOBER 9, 2026

HUNT 2012-254

HUNT ENGINEERS | ARCHITECTS | SURVEYORS

SECTION 00 01 12
TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

DIVISION 00 -- PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 01 12 - Table of Contents
00 01 15 - List of Drawing Sheets
00 11 13 - Advertisement for Bids
00 12 00 - Request for Information
00 13 00 - AutoCad Civil 3D Request Form
00 21 13 - Instructions to Bidders (AIA A701)
00 21 16 - Instructions to Proposers
00 41 13 - Bid Form
00 42 00 - Proposal Form
00 43 13 - Bid Bond (AIA A310)
00 44 00 - Equivalent Listing
00 45 13 - Qualifications Statement (AIA A305 and Exhibits A - E)
00 45 19 - Non-Collusion Affidavit
00 45 43 - Corporate Resolution
00 45 46.01 - Iran Divestment Act Certification
00 45 46.02 - Federal and State Certification
00 45 46.04 - Gender-Based Violence and the Workplace Certification
00 52 00 - Standard Form of Agreement (AIA A132)
00 61 13.13 - Performance Bond (AIA A312)
00 61 13.16 - Payment Bond (AIA A312)
00 62 16 - Sample Insurance Certificate with Supplemental Attachment (AIA Document G715)

00 72 00 - General Conditions of the Contract for Construction (AIA A232)

00 73 43 - Wage Rate Requirements

DIVISION 01 -- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 10 00 - Summary

01 20 00 - Price and Payment Procedures

01 21 00 - Allowances

01 22 00 - Unit Prices

01 23 00 - Alternates

01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures

01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements

01 32 16 - Construction Progress Schedule

01 33 29.07 - Prohibited Content Installer Certification

01 35 17 - Alteration Project Procedures

01 40 00 - Quality Requirements

01 41 13 - Codes

01 45 33 - Code-Required Special Inspections and Procedures

01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls

01 51 00 - Temporary Utilities

01 51 10 - Life Safety Requirements During School Construction

01 57 13 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control

01 60 00 - Product Requirements

01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions

01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements

01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal

01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals

01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training

01 91 13 - General Commissioning Requirements

VOLUME II

SPECIFICATIONS

00 01 12 - TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 02 -- EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 21 10 - Asbestos Abatement

02 41 00 - Demolition

02 83 13 - Lead Hazard Control Activities

DIVISION 03 -- CONCRETE

03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete

03 54 00 - Cast Underlayment

DIVISION 04 -- MASONRY

04 01 00 - Maintenance of Masonry

04 05 11 - Masonry Mortaring and Grouting

04 20 00 - Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 -- METALS

05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing

05 21 00 - Steel Joist Framing

05 31 00 - Steel Decking

05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing

05 50 00 - Metal Fabrications

05 51 33 - Metal Ladders

05 52 13 - Pipe and Tube Railings

DIVISION 06 -- WOOD, PLASTICS, COMPOSITES

06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry

06 20 00 - Finish Carpentry

06 41 00 - Architectural Wood Casework

DIVISION 07 -- THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

- 07 05 53 - Fire and Smoke Assembly Identification
- 07 21 00 - Thermal Insulation
- 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers
- 07 53 00 - Elastomeric Membrane Roofing
- 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- 07 71 00 - Roof Specialties
- 07 72 00 - Roof Accessories
- 07 84 00 - Firestopping
- 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants
- 07 95 13 - Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies

DIVISION 08-- OPENINGS

- 08 06 71 - Door Hardware Schedule
- 08 11 16 - Aluminum Doors and Frames
- 08 12 13 - Hollow Metal Frames
- 08 14 16 - Flush Wood Doors
- 08 16 13 - Fiberglass Doors
- 08 31 00 - Access Doors and Panels
- 08 44 35 - Protective Framed Glazing Assemblies
- 08 71 00 - Door Hardware
- 08 80 00 - Glazing
- 08 88 13 - Fire-Rated Glazing

DIVISION 09-- FINISHES

- 09 05 61 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation
- 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- 09 30 00 - Tiling
- 09 51 00 - Acoustical Ceilings
- 09 65 00 - Resilient Flooring

- 09 66 23 - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring
- 09 67 00 - Fluid-Applied Flooring
- 09 68 13 - Tile Carpeting
- 09 72 00 - Wall Coverings
- 09 78 00 - Interior Wall Paneling
- 09 84 30 - Sound-Absorbing Wall and Ceiling Units
- 09 91 13 - Exterior Painting
- 09 91 23 - Interior Painting

DIVISION 10-- SPECIALTIES

- 10 11 00 - Visual Display Units
- 10 14 19 - Dimensional Letter Signage
- 10 14 23 - Panel Signage
- 10 28 00 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories

DIVISION 11-- EQUIPMENT

- 11 40 00 - Foodservice Equipment
- 11 66 23 - Gymnasium Equipment

DIVISION 12-- FURNISHINGS

- 12 24 00 - Window Shades
- 12 35 83 - Music Casework
- 12 36 00 - Countertops

DIVISION 13-- SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION - NOT USED

DIVISION 14-- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

- 14 28 19 - Elevator Equipment
- 14 42 00 - Wheelchair Lifts

DIVISION 19 - THEATRICAL EQUIPMENT

- 19 20 00 - Theatrical Lighting and Control Systems
- 19 30 00 - Theatrical Stage Rigging and Curtains

VOLUME III

DIVISION 21 -- FIRE SUPPRESSION - NOT USED

DIVISION 22 -- PLUMBING

22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment

22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation

22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping and Specialties

22 40 00 - Plumbing Fixtures

DIVISION 23 -- HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 05 16 - Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping

23 05 19 - Meters and Gauges for HVAC Piping

23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC

23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment

23 05 93 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC

23 07 13 - Duct Insulation

23 07 16 - HVAC Equipment Insulation

23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation

23 08 00 - Commissioning of HVAC

23 09 23 - Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC

23 09 34 - Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers for HVAC

23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls

23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping

23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties

23 21 23 - Hydronic Pumps

23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping

23 25 00 - HVAC Water Treatment

23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings

23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories

23 34 23 - HVAC Power Ventilators

- 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units
- 23 37 00 - Air Outlets and Inlets
- 23 64 23.13 - Air-Cooled Scroll Water Chillers
- 23 73 13 - Modular Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units
- 23 74 13 - Packaged Outdoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units
- 23 82 00 - Convection Heating and Cooling Units
- 23 82 14 - Chilled Beams
- 23 82 26 - Induction Units

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION - NOT USED

DIVISION 26 -- ELECTRICAL

- 26 05 00 - Common Work Results For Electrical
- 26 05 05 - Selective Demolition for Electrical
- 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems
- 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections
- 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices
- 26 24 16 - Panelboards
- 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices
- 26 28 13 - Fuses
- 26 28 16.16 - Enclosed Switches
- 26 32 13 - Engine Generators
- 26 36 00 - Transfer Switches
- 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting

DIVISION 27 -- COMMUNICATIONS

27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems

27 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems

27 05 33.13 - Conduit for Communications Systems

27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems

27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling

27 11 16 - Communications Cabinets, Racks, Enclosures, & Accessories

27 15 23 - Communications Optical Fiber Cabling

27 15 55 - Communications Cable Testing

DIVISION 28 -- ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 10 00 - Access Control

28 15 00 - Integrated Access Control Hardware Devices

28 20 00 - Video Surveillance

28 46 21.16 - Existing Fire Alarm System

DIVISION 31 -- EARTHWORK

31 10 00 - Site Clearing

31 22 00 - Grading

31 23 16 - Excavation

31 23 16.13 - Trenching

31 23 19 - Dewatering

31 23 23 - Fill

DIVISION 32 -- EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 01 90 - Operation and Maintenance of Planting

32 11 20 - Subbase and Aggregate Base Courses

32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving

32 12 17 - Asphalt Paving Joint Sealants

32 13 13 - Concrete Paving

32 17 23 - Pavement Markings

32 17 26 - Tactile Warning Surfacing

32 18 16.13 - Playground Protective Surfacing

32 18 23.59 - Synthetic Court Surfacing

32 31 13 - Chain Link Fences and Gates

32 33 44 - Playground Equipment

32 91 19 - Landscape Grading

32 92 19 - Seeding

32 93 00 - Plants

DIVISION 33 -- UTILITIES

33 41 16.16 - Geocomposite Subdrainage

33 42 11 - Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping

33 42 30 - Stormwater Drains

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 22 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Tags.
- C. Stencils.
- D. Pipe markers.
- E. Ceiling tacks.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Identification painting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; 2023.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Schedules:
 - 1. Submit plumbing component identification schedule listing equipment, piping, and valves.
 - 2. Detail proposed component identification data in terms of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding to be applied to corresponding product.
 - 3. Valve Data Format: Include id-number, location, function, and model number.
- C. Operation and Maintenance, O&M, Manual Data: Record actual locations of tagged valves, and provide laminated valve chart which includes valve tag numbers, location and function in chart form for placement into Operations and Maintenance Manual.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PLUMBING COMPONENT IDENTIFICATION GUIDELINE

- A. Tags:
 - 1. Piping: 3/4 inch diameter and smaller.
 - 2. Ceiling tacks placed on lay-in ceiling surface to reference plumbing components.
- B. Pipe Markers: 3/4 inch diameter and higher.

2.2 NAMEPLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Brimar Industries, Inc: www.pipemarker.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

- B. Description: Laminated piece with up to three lines of text.
 - 1. Letter Color: White.
 - 2. Letter Height: 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.
- C. Main Gas Shutoff Valve: 2 inch by 4 inch, engraved yellow anodized aluminum with rounded corners and 1/4 inch text for exterior use. Nameplate to read "BUILDING GAS SHUTOFF VALVE - NOT GENERATOR SHUTOFF". Nameplate to be secured with brass chains. Nameplate available from Craftmark Pipe Markers or Equivalent.

2.3 TAGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Flexible: Vinyl with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color with up to three lines of text. Minimum tag size 1-1/2 inch in diameter.
- C. Valve Tag Chart: Typewritten letter sized list, plastic laminated. Typewritten letter size list to include applied tag function description, valve tag number and location.

2.4 STENCILS (CONCEALED PIPING)

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Pipe: Stencil size required per external insulated or uninsulated pipe diameter.
- C. Stencil Paint:
 - 1. Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrate indicated under conditions of service and application.
 - 2. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content: Not exceeding 100g/l.
 - 3. Background and Stencil Paint: Semi-gloss enamel, colors complying with ASME A13.1.

2.5 PIPE MARKERS (EXPOSED PIPING)

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Flexible Marker: Factory fabricated, semi-rigid, preformed to fit around pipe or pipe covering; minimum information indicating flow direction arrow and identification of fluid conveyed.
- C. Flexible Tape Marker: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.
- D. Identification Scheme, ASME A13.1:
 - 1. Primary: External Pipe Diameter, Uninsulated or Insulated.
 - 2. Secondary: Color scheme per fluid service.
 - a. Water; Potable, Cooling, Boiler Feed, and Other: White text on green background.

2.6 CEILING TACKS

- A. Manufacturers:
- B. Description: Steel with 3/4 inch diameter color coded head.
- C. Color code as follows:
 - 1. Plumbing Valves: Green.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive identification products.
- B. Prepare surfaces for stencil painting, see Section 09 91 23.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.
- B. Install tags in clear view and align with axis of piping
- C. Identify water heaters, pumps, tanks, and water treatment devices with plastic nameplates. Identify in-line pumps and other small devices with tags.
- D. Apply stencil painted identification in compliance with manufacturer's requirements. Identify unit with assigned id-number and area being served using pipe marking rules.
- E. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure.
 - 2. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping.
 - 3. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and Tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.
- F. Locate ceiling tacks to locate valves above lay-in panel ceilings. Locate in corner of panel closest to equipment.
- G. Identify concealed piping, with stenciled painting. Identify exposed piping with plastic pipe markers. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.
- H. Identify valves in main and branch piping with tags.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 22 07 19
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Expanded polystyrene insulation.
- B. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation.
- C. Glass fiber insulation.
- D. Jacketing and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Painting insulation jacket.
- C. Section 22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping and Specialties: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.
- D. Section 22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2023).
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2024).
- C. ASTM C449 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2024).
- D. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- E. ASTM C533 - Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation; 2017 (Reapproved 2023).
- F. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2025.
- G. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2022a.
- H. ASTM C552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation; 2022.
- I. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2023.
- J. ASTM C591 - Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation; 2022.
- K. ASTM C610 - Standard Specification for Molded Expanded Perlite Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation; 2017 (Reapproved 2023).

- L. ASTM D1056 - Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials—Sponge or Expanded Rubber; 2020.
- M. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- N. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2024a.
- O. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum 5 years of experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and damage, by storing in original wrapping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Environmental conditions affecting products on site.
- B. Maintain ambient conditions required by manufacturers of each product.
- C. Maintain temperature before, during, and after installation for minimum of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, UL 723, ASTM E84, or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Armstrong
- B. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.

1. K Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F.
 3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.1 percent by volume.
- C. Vapor Retarder Jacket: ASTM C1136 Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation, Type II. Facing: 1 inch galvanized steel hexagonal wire mesh stitched on one face of insulation.
- D. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- E. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

2.3 EXPANDED POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Armstrong.
 2. Certainteed Company.
 3. Manville Products
 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C578; rigid closed cell.
1. K Value: 0.23 at 75 degrees F.
 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 165 degrees F.
 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
 4. Maximum Water Vapor Permeance: 5.0 perm inch.

2.4 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Armstrong
 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.

2.5 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES

- A. PVC Plastic Pipe Jacket.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Armstrong.
 - b. Owens Corning.
 - c. Knauf.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
 - a. Maximum Service Temperature: 450 degrees F.
 - b. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - c. Thickness: 15 mil.
 - d. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
 3. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.
 4. Insulation covering cold water systems shall contain integral vapor retarder system for moisture removal and mold prevention.
- B. Aluminum Jacket:
1. Thickness: 0.020 inch sheet.
 2. Finish: Embossed.
 3. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch laps.
 4. Fittings: 0.016 inch thick die-shaped fitting covers with factory-attached protective liner.
 5. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8 inch wide; 0.015 inch thick aluminum.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (NAIMA) National Insulation Standards.
- C. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections and expansion joints.
- E. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature:
 - 1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples and vapor barrier mastic.
 - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. For hot piping conveying fluids 140 degrees F or less, do not insulate flanges and unions at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- G. For hot piping conveying fluids over 140 degrees F, insulate flanges and unions at equipment.
- H. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:
 - 1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples.
 - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- I. Inserts and Shields:
 - 1. Application: Piping 1-1/2 inches diameter or larger.
 - 2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
 - 3. Insert Location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
 - 4. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
 - 5. Insert Material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- J. Continue insulation through penetrations of building assemblies or portions of assemblies having fire resistance rating of one hour or less. Provide intumescent firestopping when continuing insulation through assembly. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. Refer to Section 07 84 00 for penetrations of assemblies with fire resistance rating greater than one hour.
- K. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment and Storage Rooms (less than 10 feet above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- L. Pipe Exposed in Finished Spaces: Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- M. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

- N. Heat Traced Piping: Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material, thickness, and finish as adjoining pipe. Size large enough to enclose pipe and heat tracer. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.
- O. Provide insulation to storm piping in its entirety from roof drain, entire length of horizontal storm piping run to main vertical drop.

3.3 SCHEDULES

A. Plumbing Systems:

1. All sizes of Domestic Cold water, 1/2 inch to 1-1/4 inch Hot Water, 1/2 inch to 1-1/4 inch Hot Water Recirculation and 1/2 inch to 1-1/4 inch Tempered Water Piping:
 - a. Glass Fiber Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - b. Cellular Glass Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - c. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - d. Cellular Foam Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
2. 1-1/2 inch and Larger Domestic Hot Water, Hot Water Recirculation and Tempered Water Piping:
 - a. Glass Fiber Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
 - b. Cellular Glass Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
 - c. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
 - d. Cellular Foam Insulation:
 - 1) Pipe Size Range: As Noted.
 - 2) Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
3. Roof Drain Bodies:
 - a. Fiber Glass Insulation with integral vapor retarder. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - b. Elastomeric Cellular Foam Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - c. Cellular Glass Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
4. Exposed Roof Drainage Above Grade
 - a. Fiber Glass Insulation with integral vapor retarder. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - b. Elastomeric Cellular Foam Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - c. Cellular Glass Insulation with full PVC jacket. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
5. Concealed Roof Drainage
 - a. Fiber Glass Insulation with integral vapor retarder. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - b. Elastomeric Cellular Foam Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - c. Cellular Glass Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
6. Roof Drainage Run Horizontal at Roof Level:
 - a. Fiber Glass Insulation with integral vapor retarder. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - b. Elastomeric Cellular Foam Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - c. Cellular Glass Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
7. Plumbing Vents Within 10 Feet of the Exterior:
 - a. Fiber Glass Insulation with integral vapor retarder. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - b. Elastomeric Cellular Foam Insulation all pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.
 - c. Cellular Glass Insulation. All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.

- B. Plumbing Systems:
 - 1. Domestic Hot Water Storage Tanks:
 - a. Cellular Glass Insulation: 2 inches thick.
 - 2. Domestic Cold Water Storage Tanks:
 - a. Cellular Glass Insulation: 2 inches thick.
 - 3. Piping Exposed to Freezing with Heat Tracing: All pipe sizes, 1 inch thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 10 05
PLUMBING PIPING AND SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Sanitary waste piping, buried within 5 feet of building.
- B. Sanitary waste piping, above grade.
- C. Chemical-resistant sanitary waste piping.
- D. Domestic water piping, buried within 5 feet of building.
- E. Domestic water piping, above grade.
- F. Pipe, pipe fittings, valves, connections and specialties for:
 - 1. Sanitary sewer systems.
 - 2. Domestic water systems.
 - 3. Storm water systems.
 - 4. Gas systems.
 - 5. Pipe flanges, unions, and couplings.
 - 6. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - 7. Pipe sleeve-seal systems.
 - 8. Ball valves.
 - 9. Butterfly valves.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- C. Section 22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation.
- D. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- E. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z21.22 - American National Standard for Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems; 2015 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- B. ANSI Z223.1 - National Fuel Gas Code; 2024.
- C. ASME A112.6.4 - Roof, Deck, and Balcony Drains; 2022.
- D. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2021.
- E. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- F. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- G. ASME B16.23 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings: DWV; 2021.
- H. ASME B16.26 - Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes; 2024.

- I. ASME B16.29 - Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings—DWV; 2022.
- J. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2025.
- K. ASME BPVC-IV - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IV - Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers; 2025, with Errata.
- L. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Qualification Standard for Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Procedures; Welders; Brazers; and Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Operators; 2025, with Errata.
- M. ASSE 1003 - Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Potable Water Distribution Systems; 2023.
- N. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2024.
- O. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2025.
- P. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2025.
- Q. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2020.
- R. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes; 2025.
- S. ASTM B68/B68M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed; 2025.
- T. ASTM B75/B75M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube; 2020.
- U. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2022.
- V. ASTM B88M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric); 2020.
- W. ASTM B306 - Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV); 2020.
- X. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2020a.
- Y. ASTM D2239 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter; 2025.
- Z. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2020 (Reapproved 2024).
- AA. ASTM D2609 - Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe; 2024.
- BB. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2025.
- CC. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2021.
- DD. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for the Two-Step (Primer and Solvent Cement) Method of Joining Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Pipe and Piping Components with Tapered Sockets; 2020 (Reapproved 2024).
- EE. ASTM D3034 - Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2024, with Editorial Revision (2025).
- FF. ASTM F477 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe; 2014 (Reapproved 2021).
- GG. ASTM F679 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Large-Diameter Plastic Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2021.

- HH. AWWA C105/A21.5 - Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems; 2018.
- II. AWWA C111/A21.11 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings; 2023.
- JJ. AWWA C151/A21.51 - Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast; 2023.
- KK. AWWA C651 - Disinfecting Water Mains; 2023.
- LL. AWWA C901 - Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings, 3/4 In. (19 mm) Through 3 In. (76 mm), for Water Service; 2025.
- MM. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2021.
- NN. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2020.
- OO. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2018, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- PP. ICC-ES AC106 - Acceptance Criteria for Predrilled Fasteners (Screw Anchors) in Masonry; 2018, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- QQ. ICC-ES AC193 - Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2017, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- RR. ICC-ES AC308 - Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2023.
- SS. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2025.
- TT. MSS SP-71 - Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2018.
- UU. MSS SP-78 - Gray Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- VV. MSS SP-80 - Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves; 2019.
- WW. MSS SP-85 - Gray Iron Globe and Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- XX. MSS SP-110 - Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends; 2010, with Errata .
- YY. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2024.
- ZZ. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2024.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, hangers, supports and accessories. Provide manufacturers catalog information. Indicate valve data and ratings.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of valves.
- D. Hangers and Supports: Submit manufacturers catalog information including load capacity.
- E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.
 - 2. Valve Repacking Kits: One for each type and size of valve.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with applicable codes.

- B. Perform Work in accordance with standards of the State of New York.
- C. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- D. Welding Materials and Procedures: Comply with ASME BPVC-IX and applicable state labor regulations.
- E. Welder Qualifications: Certified in accordance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- F. Identify pipe with marking including size, ASTM material classification, ASTM specification, potable water certification, water pressure rating.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for installation of backflow prevention devices.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of installation of backflow prevention devices.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Potable Water Supply Systems: Provide piping, pipe fittings, and solder and flux (if used), that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.
- B. Plenum-Installed Acid Waste Piping: Flame-spread index equal or below 25 and smoke-spread index equal or below 50 according to ASTM E84 or UL 723 tests.

2.2 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74 extra heavy weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
 - 2. Joints: Hub-and-spigot, CISPI HSN compression type with ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets or lead and oakum.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
 - 1. Fittings: PVC.
 - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

2.3 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
 - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B306, DWV, Type L.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.29, wrought copper, or ASME B16.23, solvent.
2. Joints: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

C. PVC Pipe - (Not For Use in Return Air Plenums or Exposed in Places of Assembly.): ASTM D2665.

1. Fittings: PVC.
2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

2.4 CHEMICAL-RESISTANT SANITARY WASTE PIPING

A. PVC Pipe (Not For Use in Return Air Plenums or Exposed in Places of Assembly.): ASTM D2729 or ASTM D2665.

1. Fittings: PVC.
2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

B. CPVC Pipe (Not For Use in Return Air Plenums or Exposed in Places of Assembly.): Chlorinated Polyvinyl Chloride, ASTM D1784, Minimum Cell Classification of 23447, with Schedule 40 dimensions.

1. Fittings: All components certified by NSF International for chemical waste drain application.
2. Joints: Solvent welded with ASTM F493 certified one-step solvent cement.

2.5 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

A. Copper Pipe: ASTM B42, hard drawn, 2-1/2 inches and smaller.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze.
2. Joints: ASTM B32, alloy Sn95 solder.

B. Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, 3 inches and larger.

1. Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile iron, standard thickness. Cement Mortar lining in conformance with AWWA C-104.
2. Joints: AWWA C111/A21.11, styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or vulcanized SBR gasket with 3/4 inch diameter rods.
3. Jackets: AWWA C105/A21.5 polyethylene jacket.

C. PEX Pipe: Polyethylene cross-linked for Potable water (non-oxygen barrier). Color coded: Blue for cold domestic water and Red for hot domestic water. Complies with ASTM F876, F877, F1807, F2159, 2023, CSA B137.5.

1. Fittings: PEX designed for use with Potable water piping.

2.6 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Copper Tubing for pipe 2 1/2 inches and smaller: ASTM B 88 (ASTM B 88M), Type L (B), Drawn (H)

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought copper and bronze.
2. Joints: ASTM B 32, alloy Sn95 solder. Lead free.

B. Copper Tubing for pipe 3 inches and larger: ASTM B88, Type L (B), hard drawn, rolled grooved ends

1. Fittings: ASTM B584 bronze sand castings, grooved ends.
2. Joints: Grooved mechanical couplings meeting ASTM F1476.
 - a. Housing Clamps: ASTM A395/A395M and ASTM A536 ductile iron, enamel coated, compatible with copper tubing sizes, to engage and lock designed to permit some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion.
 - b. Gasket: Elastomer composition for operating temperature range from -30 degrees F to 180 degrees F.
 - c. Accessories: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
3. Mechanically pressed fitting are allowed for this application.

2.7 STORM DRAINAGE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74 service weight, bell and spigot ends.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, ASTM A74.
 - 2. Joint Seals: ASTM C 564 neoprene gaskets.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 - 1. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
 - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.
- C. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665, ASTM D3034, or ASTM F679, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 - 1. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2665, ASTM D3034, or ASTM F679.
 - 2. Joints: Push-on, using ASTM F477 elastomeric gaskets.

2.8 STORM DRAINAGE PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.
 - 2. Joints: Neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- B. PVC Pipe (Not For Use in Return Air Plenums or Exposed in Places of Assembly.): ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
 - 1. Fittings: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034, PVC.
 - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

2.9 FLUE AND COMBUSTION AIR PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ULC S636 compliant, chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC-FGV) material.
 - 1. Fittings: ULC S636 compliant.
 - 2. Joints: ULC S636 compliant.
 - 3. All ULC S636 compliant pipes, fitting and cements to be supplied from same manufacturer.

2.10 ROOF DRAINS

- A. Roof Drain:
 - 1. Assembly: ASME A112.6.4.
 - 2. Body: cast iron with sump.
 - 3. Strainer: Removable aluminum dome.
 - 4. Accessories: Coordinate with roofing type:
 - a. Membrane flange and membrane clamp with integral gravel stop.
 - b. Adjustable under deck clamp.
 - c. Roof sump receiver.
 - d. Waterproofing flange.
 - e. Controlled flow weir.
 - f. Leveling frame.
 - g. Adjustable extension sleeve for roof insulation.
 - h. Perforated or slotted ballast guard extension for inverted roof.
 - i. Perforated stainless steel ballast guard extension.
- B. Retrofit Roof Drain:
 - 1. Assembly: ASME A112.6.4.
 - 2. Body: #16 gage Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 3. Strainer: Removable aluminum dome.
 - 4. Accessories: Coordinate with roofing type:
 - a. Membrane flange and membrane clamp with integral gravel stop.
 - b. Roof sump receiver.
 - c. Waterproofing flange.
 - d. Controlled flow weir.
 - e. Leveling frame.
 - f. Perforated or slotted ballast guard extension for inverted roof.

- g. Perforated stainless steel ballast guard extension.
- h. Dura-Coated cast iron clamp collar.
- i. Stainless steel hardware.
- j. Neoprene gasket.

2.11 PIPE FLANGES, UNIONS, AND COUPLINGS

- A. Unions for Pipe Sizes 2 inches and Under:
 - 1. Copper Tube and Pipe: Class 150 bronze unions with soldered joints.
 - 2. PVC Piping: PVC
 - 3. CPVC Piping: PVC
- B. Flanges for Pipe Size Over 2 inches:
 - 1. Copper Tube and Pipe: Class 150 slip-on bronze flanges; preformed neoprene gaskets.
 - 2. Dielectric Connections: Union with galvanized or plated steel threaded end, copper solder end, water impervious isolation barrier.
 - 3. PVC Piping: PVC.
 - 4. CPVC Piping: PVC.
 - 5. Gaskets: 1/16 inch thick preformed neoprene gaskets.

2.12 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
 - 1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
 - 2. Overhead Supports: Individual steel rod hangers attached to structure or to trapeze hangers.
 - 3. Trapeze Hangers: Welded steel channel frames attached to structure.
 - 4. Vertical Pipe Support: Steel riser clamp.
- B. Plumbing Piping - Drain, Waste, and Vent:
 - 1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
 - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 inch: Malleable iron, adjustable swivel, split ring.
 - 3. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 inch and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
 - 4. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
 - 5. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 inch: Cast iron hook.
 - 6. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 inch and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
 - 7. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
 - 8. Floor Support: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
 - 9. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
- C. Plumbing Piping - Water:
 - 1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
 - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 inch: Malleable iron, adjustable swivel, split ring.
 - 3. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 inch and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
 - 4. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 to 4 inch: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
 - 5. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inch and Larger: Adjustable steel yoke, cast iron pipe roll, double hanger.
 - 6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods.
 - 7. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Over: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.
 - 8. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes Up to 3 inch: Cast iron hook.
 - 9. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 inch and Larger: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
 - 10. Wall Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inch and Larger: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp with adjustable steel yoke and cast iron pipe roll.
 - 11. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
 - 12. Floor Support for Cold Pipe: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.

13. Floor Support for Hot Pipe Sizes to 4 inch: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, locknut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
14. Floor Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inch and Larger: Adjustable cast iron pipe roll and stand, steel screws, and concrete pier or steel support.
15. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.

D. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:

1. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC193.
2. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC01.
3. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC193.
4. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC106.
5. Concrete Adhesive Type Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC308.

E. INSERTS

1. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

F. FLASHING

1. Metal Flashing: 26 gage thick galvanized steel.
2. Metal Counterflashing: 22 gage thick galvanized steel.
3. Lead Flashing:
 - a. Waterproofing: 5 lb./sq. ft sheet lead.
 - b. Soundproofing: 1 lb./sq. ft sheet lead.
4. Flexible Flashing: 47 mil thick sheet compatible with roofing.
5. Caps: Steel, 22 gage minimum; 16 gage at fire resistant elements.

G. SLEEVES

1. Sleeves for Pipes through Non-fire Rated Floors: 18 gage thick galvanized steel.
2. Sleeves for Pipes through Non-fire Rated Beams, Walls, Footings, and Potentially Wet Floors: Steel pipe or 18 gage thick galvanized steel.
3. Sealant: See Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants.

H. MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

1. Product Description: Modular mechanical type, consisting of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill annular space between object and sleeve, connected with bolts and pressure plates causing rubber sealing elements to expand when tightened, providing watertight seal and electrical insulation.

I. FORMED STEEL CHANNEL

1. Product Description: Galvanized 12 gage thick steel. With holes 1-1/2 inches on center.

J. FIRESTOPPING

1. See Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping for firestopping requirements.

2.13 PIPE SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Modular Mechanical Seals:

1. Elastomer-based interlocking links continuously fill annular space between pipe and wall-sleeve, wall or casing opening.
2. Watertight seal between pipe and wall-sleeve, wall or casing opening.
3. Size and select seal component materials in accordance to service requirements.
4. Glass reinforced plastic pressure end plates.

2.14 BALL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

- B. Construction, 4 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-110, Class 150, 400 psi CWP, bronze body, chrome plated brass ball, regular port, teflon seats and stuffing box ring, blow-out proof stem, lever handle, solder or threaded ends with union. Lead free.

2.15 PLUG VALVES

- A. Construction 2-1/2 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-78, 175 psi CWP, cast iron body and plug, pressure lubricated, teflon or Buna N packing, flanged or grooved ends. Provide lever operator with set screw.

2.16 HORIZONTAL SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Up to 2 Inches:
 - 1. MSS SP-80, 150, bronze body and cap, bronze swing disc with rubber seat, solder or threaded ends. Lead free.

2.17 SPRING LOADED CHECK VALVES

- A. Up to 2 inches:
 - 1. MSS SP 80, Class 250, bronze body, in-line spring lift check, silent closing, Buna-N disc, integral seat, threaded ends. Lead free.
- B. 2-1/2 inches and Larger:
- C. MSS SP 71, Class 125, wafer style, cast iron body, bronze seat, center guided bronze disc, stainless steel spring and screws, flanged ends.

2.18 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Gauge: ASME B40.1, UL 393 with bourdon tube, rotary brass movement, brass socket, front calibration adjustment, black scale on white background.
 - 1. Case: Steel
 - 2. Bourdon Tube: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - 3. Dial Size: 3-1/2 inch diameter.
 - 4. Mid-Scale Accuracy: One percent.
 - 5. Scale: Psi.

2.19 PRESSURE GAUGE TAPS

- A. Needle Valve: Brass, 1/4 inch NPT for minimum 300 psi.
- B. Ball Valve: Brass, 1/4 inch NPT for 250 psi.
- C. Pulsation Damper: Pressure snubber, brass with 1/4 inch NPT connections.

2.20 STEM TYPE THERMOMETERS

- A. Thermometer: ASTM E1, adjustable angle, red appearing indicator, lens front tube, cast aluminum case with enamel finish, cast aluminum adjustable joint with positive locking device.
 - 1. Size: 9 inch scale.
 - 2. Window: Clear Lexan.
 - 3. Stem: Brass, 3/4 inch NPT, 3-1/2 inch long.
 - 4. Accuracy: 2 percent.
 - 5. Calibration: Degrees F.
 - 6. Indicator shall be non-mercury.

2.21 HOSE BIBBS

- A. Hose Bibb, HB-1: Lead-Free, interior use, rough chrome plated brass construction, wall mounted, cold water and hot water service with hose thread spout, integral stop valves, vacuum breaker, lever handles.
- B. Hose Bibb, HB-1: Lead-Free, interior use, brass construction with integral vacuum breaker, hose connection.

2.22 WATER METER

- A. Provide Lead Free water meter and remote reader as recommended by water service provider. Meter to register flow in Gallons. Plumbing Contractor to install meter and reader. Install meter in accordance with AWWA M6, with isolating valves on inlet and outlet.
- B. Obtain meter from water service provider. If not possible, obtain approval of proposed meter from Director of Utility of Water Service Provider prior to water meter purchase.

2.23 HYDRANTS

- A. Wall Hydrant, HYD-1: Lead-Free, interior use, self-draining type with lockable recessed box hose thread spout, locks shield and removable key, and integral vacuum breaker.
- B. Wall Hydrant, HYD-2: Lead-Free, non-freeze, self-draining type with lockable recessed box hose thread spout, locks shield and removable key, and integral vacuum breaker.

2.24 RECESSED VALVE BOX

- A. Washing Machine: Plastic preformed rough-in box with brass long shank valves with wheel handles, socket for 2 inch waste, slip in finishing cover.

2.25 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced Pressure Backflow Preventers, RPZ-1 (Domestic):
 - 1. Comply with ASSE 1013. Lead Free.
 - 2. Bronze body, with bronze internal parts and stainless steel springs.
 - 3. Two independently operating, spring loaded check valves; diaphragm type differential pressure relief valve located between check valves; third check valve opening under back pressure in case of diaphragm failure; non-threaded vent outlet; assembled with two gate valves, strainer, and four test cocks.
 - 4. Air gap per manufacturer's recommendation.
 - 5. Provide testing by State certified backflow prevention device tester, and document of Certification.
- B. Double Check Valve Assemblies, DCV-1:
 - 1. Comply with ASSE 1012. Lead Free.
 - 2. Bronze body with corrosion resistant internal parts and stainless steel springs.
 - 3. Two independently operating check valves with intermediate atmospheric vent.
 - 4. Provide testing by State certified backflow prevention device tester, and document of Certification.
- C. Reduced Pressure Detector Assembly Backflow Preventers, RPDA-1 (Fire Protection):
 - 1. Comply with ASSE 1047.
 - 2. Fused epoxy coated cast iron with bronze seat, UL listed and FM approved OSY shutoff valves, test cocks, relief valve and check valves.
 - 3. Air gap per manufacturer's recommendation.
 - 4. Provide testing by State certified backflow prevention device tester, and document of Certification.

2.26 WATER HAMMER ARRESTOR -LEAD FREE

- A. Stainless steel bellow type, complies with and sized in accordance with PDI WH-201.
- B. Pre-charged suitable for operation in temperature range 34 to 250 degrees F and maximum 150 psi working pressure.

2.27 THERMOSTATIC MIXING VALVE

- A. Valve: Chrome plated cast brass body, stainless steel or nickel plated bellows, integral temperature adjustment.
- B. Accessories:
 - 1. Check valve on inlets.
 - 2. Volume control shut-off valve on outlet.
 - 3. Stem thermometer on outlet.
 - 4. Strainer stop checks on inlets.
- C. Cabinet: 16 gage enameled steel, for surface mounting with keyed lock.

2.28 DIAPHRAGM-TYPE EXPANSION TANK

- A. Expansion Tank, ET-1: Construction: Welded steel, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME Section VIII; supplied with National Board Form U-1, rated for working pressure of 125 psig, with flexible EPDM diaphragm sealed into tank.
- B. Accessories: Pressure gage and air-charging fitting, tank drain; pre-charge to 40 psig.
- C. Size: as indicated on Drawing.

2.29 FLOOR DRAIN / FLOOR SINK

- A. Floor Drain, FD-1: ASME A112.21.1; cast iron two piece body with double drainage flange, weep holes, 1/2 inch trap primer connection, reversible clamping collar, and round adjustable nickel-bronze strainer.
- B. Floor Sink, FS-1: 12 inch x 12 inch x 6 inch floor receptor, full nickel-bronze grate, enamel interior and top, interior bottom dome strainer and 1/2 inch trap primer connection.
- C. Floor Drain / Floor Sink Trap Primer Valve: ASSE 1018, corrosion resistant brass, piston operated, no springs or diaphragms, adjustable in line pressure, 1/2 inch inlet and outlet openings.

2.30 CLEANOUTS

- A. Cleanout, Interior Finished Floor Area, CO-1: cast iron body with anchor flange, reversible clamping collar, threaded top assembly, and round polished bronze scoriated cover.
- B. Cleanout, Interior Unfinished Inline Accessible Area, CO-2: cast iron body ferrule type with ABS countersunk plug.
- C. Wall Cleanout, Interior Finished Wall Area, WCO-1: cast iron body with lacquered ABS tapered threaded plug and round stainless steel wall access cover with securing screw.

2.31 SUMP PITS

- A. Type: Vertical centrifugal, direct connected, duplex arrangement.
- B. Casing: Cast iron volute with radial clearance around impeller.
- C. Impeller: Bronze keyed to stainless steel shaft.
- D. Support: Cast iron pedestal motor support on steel floor plate with gas tight gaskets.

- E. Bearings: Forced grease lubricated bronze sleeve spaced maximum 48 inches and grease lubricated ball thrust at floor plate.
- F. Drive: Flexible coupling to vertical, solid shaft ball bearing electric motor.
- G. Sump: Steel cover plate with inspection opening and cover, and alarm fittings.
- H. Controls (Duplex): Float operated mechanical alternator with float rod, stops, and corrosion resistant float to alternate operation of pumps. Cut-in second pump on rising level or lead pump failure. Furnish high level alarm with transformer, alarm bell, and standpipe and extra set of wired terminals for remote alarm circuit.

2.32 SUMP PUMP, ELEVATOR

- A. Type: ASME A17.1, Vertical centrifugal, submersible, support legs for free standing operation.
- B. Casing: Class 25 cast iron.
- C. Motor shall be oil filled, permanent split capacitor, class B insulated NEMA B design, rated for continuous duty. Shall be oil filled to dissipate heat.
- D. Impeller: Polymer. Threaded to motor shaft.
- E. Bearing and Shaft: Upper sleeve and lower single ball type bearing, oil lubricated, stainless steel shaft.
- F. The motor shall be protected on the top side with sealed cord entry plate with molded pins to conduct electricity eliminating the ability of water to enter internally through the cord. The motor shall be protected on the lower side with a unitized ceramic/carbon seal with stainless steel housings and spring or engineered double lip seal with stainless steel springs. The pump shall be furnished with stainless steel handle.
- G. Controls: Three probes and a float ball switch. System will differentiate between water and oil and activates alarm. Provide complete sump pump system with pump, control panel, remote alarm NEMA 1 enclosure, plug-in pump and panel cord.
- H. Warranty: 3 years.

2.33 GREASE SEPARATOR

- A. Construction:
 - 1. Material: Epoxy coated fabricated steel.
 - 2. Fully recessed with cover flush with finished floor
- B. Accessories: Flow control fittings, cover design with quick removal for cleaning purpose.
- C. Signage: Warning sign, permanently mounted, minimum 14 inches wide by 10 inches high; mount where directed by Architect.



- D. Unit Rating: 25 gpm flow and 50 lb. grease capacity.

2.34 NEUTRALIZATION TANK

- A. Under Sink Type: Five gallon, rectangular basin, inlet and outlet hub, cover and limestone chips. Limestone chips type and quantity per manufacturers recommendations.

2.35 TRENCH DRAIN

- A. Cast in place concrete trench drain with catch basins.
- B. Polystyrene trench drain forms.
- C. Structural steel trench rails complete with end rails and anchoring legs.
- D. Ductile iron grate with locking device

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that excavations are to required grade, dry, and not over-excavated.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly. Protect open ends with temporary plugs or caps.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide non-conducting dielectric connections wherever jointing dissimilar metals.
- C. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Route parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- D. Install piping to maintain headroom, conserve space, and not interfere with use of space.
- E. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- F. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment. See Section 22 05 16.
- G. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- H. Provide access where valves and fittings are not exposed.
- I. Install vent piping penetrating roofed areas to maintain integrity of roof assembly.
- J. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc-rich primer to welding.
- K. Provide support for utility meters in accordance with requirements of utility companies.
- L. Excavate in accordance with Section 31 23 16.
- M. Backfill in accordance with Section 31 23 23.

- N. Trench - Provide 3 inches of sand for bedding material at trench bottom to provide uniform bedding for piping. Level bedding materials and install pipe on prepared bedding. Encase installed piping with 6 inches of pea gravel. Provide fill material to trench and compact to 90 percent maximum density. Route pipe in straight line.
- O. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.
- P. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted. See Section 22 05 23.
- Q. Install water piping to ASME B31.9.
- R. PVC Pipe: Make solvent-welded joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.
- S. Sleeve pipes passing through partitions, walls, and floors.
- T. Install brass male adapters each side of valves in copper piped system. Solder adapters to pipe.
- U. PVC piping is not allowed to be installed in places of assembly, plenum spaces, exit discharge corridors or stairs. Use cast iron or copper piping in these locations.
- V. Install firestopping at fire rated construction perimeters and openings containing penetrating sleeves and piping.
- W. Install water hammer arrestors complete with accessible isolation valve on hot and cold water supply piping to fixtures to prevent hammer or install air chambers on hot and cold water supply piping to each fixture or group of fixtures (each washroom). Fabricate same size as supply pipe or 3/4 inch minimum, and minimum 18 inches long.
- X. Inserts:
 - 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
 - 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
 - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
 - 4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
 - 5. Where inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through-bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut above slab.
- Y. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9.
 - 2. Support horizontal piping as indicated.
 - 3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
 - 4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
 - 5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
 - 6. Support vertical piping at every other floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
 - 7. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
 - 8. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
 - 9. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports located in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.
 - 10. Provide hangers adjacent to motor-driven equipment with vibration isolation; see Section 22 05 48.
 - 11. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.
- Z. Pipe Sleeve-Seal Systems:
 - 1. Install manufactured sleeve-seal systems in sleeves located in grade slabs and exterior concrete walls at piping entrances into building.
 - 2. Provide sealing elements of the size, quantity, and type required for the piping and sleeve inner diameter or penetration diameter.
 - 3. Locate piping in center of sleeve or penetration.

4. Install field assembled sleeve-seal system components in annular space between sleeve and piping.
5. Tighten bolting for a watertight seal.
6. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

AA. Equipment Bases and Supports

1. Provide housekeeping pads of concrete, minimum 3-1/2 inches thick and extending 6 inches beyond supported equipment. Refer to Section 03 30 00.
2. Using templates furnished with equipment, install anchor bolts, and accessories for mounting and anchoring equipment.
3. Construct supports of steel members or formed steel channel. Brace and fasten with flanges bolted to structure.
4. Provide rigid anchors for pipes after vibration isolation components are installed. Refer to Section 22 05 48.

BB. Flashing

1. Provide flexible flashing and metal counterflashing where piping penetrates weather or waterproofed walls, floors, and roofs.
2. Flash vent and soil pipes projecting 3 inches minimum above finished roof surface with lead worked 1 inch minimum into hub, 8 inches minimum clear on sides with 24 x 24 inches sheet size. For pipes through outside walls, turn flanges back into wall and caulk, metal counter-flash, and seal.
3. Flash floor drains in floors with topping over finished areas with lead, 10 inches clear on sides with minimum 36 x 36 inch sheet size. Fasten flashing to drain clamp device.
4. Seal floor, shower, and mop sink drains watertight to adjacent materials.
5. Adjust storm collars tight to pipe with bolts; caulk around top edge. Use storm collars above roof jacks. Screw vertical flange section to face of curb.

CC. Sleeves

1. Set sleeves in position in forms. Provide reinforcing around sleeves.
2. Size sleeves large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and contraction. Provide for continuous insulation wrapping.
3. Extend sleeves through floors 1 inch above finished floor level. Caulk sleeves.
4. Where piping penetrates floor, ceiling, or wall, close off space between pipe and adjacent work with fire stopping, insulation and caulk airtight. Provide close fitting metal collar or escutcheon covers at both sides of penetration.
5. Install chrome plated steel escutcheons at finished surfaces.

3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Install unions downstream of valves and at equipment or apparatus connections.
- B. Install brass male adapters each side of valves in copper piped system. Solder adapters to pipe.
- C. Install ball valves for shut-off and to isolate equipment, part of systems, branch piping, or vertical risers.
- D. Install globe valves for throttling, bypass, or manual flow control services.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Sanitary Drainage Piping: Establish invert elevations, slopes for drainage to 1/8 inch per foot minimum on mains 4 inches and larger. Install branch mains smaller than 4 inch with 1/4 inch per foot minimum.
- B. Storm Drainage Piping: Establish invert elevations, slopes for drainage to 1/8 inch per foot minimum.

3.6 DISINFECTION OF DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Final water samples shall be sent to a State Department of Health approved testing lab in the State of New York and sample test results shall be submitted to A/E of record.
- B. Prior to starting work, verify system is complete, flushed, and clean.
- C. Ensure acidity (pH) of water to be treated is between 7.4 and 7.6 by adding alkali (caustic soda or soda ash) or acid (hydrochloric).
- D. Inject disinfectant, free chlorine in liquid, powder, tablet, or gas form throughout system to obtain 50 to 80 mg/L residual.
- E. Bleed water from outlets to ensure distribution and test for disinfectant residual at minimum 15 percent of outlets.
- F. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- G. If final disinfectant residual tests less than 25 mg/L, repeat treatment.
- H. Flush disinfectant from system until residual equal to that of incoming water or 1.0 mg/L.
- I. Take samples no sooner than 24 hours after flushing, from 10 percent of outlets and from water entry, and analyze in accordance with AWWA C651.

3.7 SERVICE CONNECTIONS

- A. Test sanitary waste, vent piping and storm drainage system in accordance with Plumbing Code of the State of New York.
- B. Test domestic water piping system in accordance with Plumbing Code of the State of New York.

3.8 SCHEDULES

- A. Pipe Hanger Spacing:
 - 1. Metal Piping:
 - a. Pipe Size: 1/2 inch to 1-1/4 inch:
 - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 6.5 ft.
 - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inches.
 - b. Pipe Size: 1-1/2 inch to 2 inch:
 - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft.
 - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch.
 - c. Pipe Size: 2-1/2 inch to 3 inch:
 - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft.
 - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - d. Pipe Size: 4 inch to 6 inch:
 - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft.
 - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Cast Iron (All Sizes) pipe length less than 10':
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 5 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 5/8 inch
 - 3. Cast Iron (All Sizes) with 10 foot length of pipe
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 10 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 5/8 inch
 - 4. CPVC, 1 inch and smaller
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 3 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch
 - 5. CPVC, 1-1/4 inches and larger
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 4 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch
 - 6. Copper Tube, 1-1/4 inches and smaller
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 6 ft.

- b. Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch
- 7. Copper Tube, 1-1/2 inches and larger
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 10 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch
- 8. PVC (All Sizes)
 - a. Maximum hanger Spacing: 4 ft.
 - b. Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inch

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 22 40 00
PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flush valve water closets.
- B. Wall hung urinals.
- C. Lavatories.
- D. Sinks.
- E. Under-lavatory pipe supply covers.
- F. Electric water coolers.
- G. Mop sinks.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping and Specialties.
- B. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASHRAE Std 18 - Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking-Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration; 2008 (Reaffirmed 2013).
- C. ASME A112.6.1M - Floor-Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use; 1997 (Reaffirmed 2017).
- D. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; 2024.
- E. ASME A112.18.9 - Protectors/Insulators for Exposed Waste and Supplies on Accessible Fixtures; 2011 (Reaffirmed 2022).
- F. ASME A112.19.2 - Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures; 2024.
- G. ASME A112.19.3 - Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures; 2022.
- H. ASME A112.19.5 - Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks; 2022.
- I. ASTM C1822 - Standard Specification for Insulating Covers on Accessible Lavatory Piping; 2021.
- J. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.
- K. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2024.
- L. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2024.
- M. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; Current Edition.
- N. ARI 1010 - Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's literature and data sheets for each product. Include materials of fabrication, rough-in requirements, location and sizes of connections, configurations, dimensions, finishes, features, and accessories.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include fixture trim exploded view and replacement parts lists.
- D. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.
 - 2. Flush Valve Service Kits: One for each type and size.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Plumbing piping, joints, faucets, etc. must comply with the requirements, and bear the label indicating the materials comply with the definition of "lead free" requirement of the Environmental Protection Agency "Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act".
- B. Lead Water Testing: Lead water testing shall be conducted at all Lavatories, Sinks and Drinking Fountains in accordance with Public Health Law section 1370-a and 1110, Subpart 67-4 of Title 10 (Health) of the Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York and the Environmental Protection Agency 3T's for Reducing Lead in Drinking Water.
- C. School District reserves the right to accept or not accept installation unless results are not greater than the Department Of Health action level.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept fixtures on-site in factory packaging. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect installed fixtures from damage by securing areas and by leaving factory packaging in place to protect fixtures and prevent use.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide standard manufacturer warranty for Plumbing Fixtures.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Potable Water Systems: Provide drinking water system components certified as complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- B. ADA: Where indicated to be ADA-compliant, provide fixtures complying with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable codes for installation of plumbing systems.
- B. Comply with UL (DIR) requirements.
- C. Perform work in accordance with local health department regulations.

2.3 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing for Manufacturer, Model, Trim and Remarks.

2.4 FLUSH VALVE WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closet Bowl (WC-1): ASME A112.19.2; ADA compliant, wall mount, siphon jet, vitreous china closet bowl with elongated rim, 1-1/2 inch top spud and 1.28 gallon flush volume.
- B. Flush Valve, Manually Operated (WC-1): ADA compliant, exposed chrome plated, diaphragm type with oscillating handle, escutcheon, seat bumper, integral screwdriver stop, vacuum breaker and 1.28 gallon flush volume for use with 1-1/2 inch top spud.
- C. Flush Valve, Concealed Electric Powered Sensor Operated (WC-2): ADA compliant, concealed rough brass diaphragm type with solenoid operator with wall box with stainless steel access panel and vandal resistant screws. Adaptive infrared sensor and true mechanical over-ride button, stop seat, integral wheel handle stop, vacuum breaker and 1.28 gallon flush volume for use with 1-1/2 inch back spud.
 - 1. Electrical requirements:
 - a. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing.
- D. Toilet Seats:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Standard, Inc: www.americanstandard-us.com.
 - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company: www.bemismfg.com/#sle.
 - c. Church Seat Company: www.churchseats.com/#sle.
 - 2. Elongated solid white plastic, open front without cover, self-sustaining hinge, brass bolts.
 - 3. Elongated solid white seat and hinges, open front without cover, scalloped handhold for use with child floor mounted water closet.
- E. Water Closet Carriers:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Jay R. Smith MFG. Co: www.jrsmith.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. ASME A112.6.1M; floor mounted, adjustable cast iron frame, integral drain hub and vent, adjustable spud, lugs for floor attachment, threaded fixture studs with nuts and washers. For handicap and non-handicap wall mount water closets.
- F. Water Closet Accessories:
 - 1. Toilet mounting flange, bowl ring, mounting hardware, bolt caps. For handicap and non-handicap floor mounted water closets.

2.5 WALL HUNG URINALS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. American Standard: www.americanstandard-us.com/#sle
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Urinal, (UR-1): ASME A112.19.2; ADA compliant, wall mount, washout, vitreous china urinal with shields, integral trap, elongated 14 inch rim from finished wall, 3/4 inch top spud, steel supporting hanger and 0.50 gallon flush volume.

- C. Flush Valve, Concealed Electric Powered Sensor Operated (UR-1): ADA compliant, concealed rough brass diaphragm type with solenoid operator with wall box with stainless steel access panel and vandal resistant screws. Adaptive infrared sensor, true mechanical over-ride button, integral wheel handle stop, vacuum breaker and 0.50 gallon flush volume for use with 3/4 inch back spud.
 - 1. Electrical requirements:
 - a. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing.
- D. Flush Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company: www.sloanvalve.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- E. Urinal Carriers:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Jay R. Smith MFG. Co: www.jrsmith.com/#sle.
 - b. Zurn Industries, Inc: www.zurn.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. ASME A112.6.1M; cast iron and steel frame with tubular legs, lugs for floor attachment, threaded fixture studs for fixture hanger, bearing studs. For handicap and non-handicap urinals.

2.6 LAVATORIES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. American Standard, Inc: www.americanstandard-us.com.
 - 2. Kohler Company: www.kohler.com/#sle.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Lavatory, Vitreous China Wall Mount Basin (LAV1-): ASME A112.19.2; ADA compliant, vitreous china wall mount, 20 x 18 inch minimum, with 4 inch high back, single hole faucet mount drilling, D-shaped basin with splash lip, front overflow and grid drain. For handicap and non-handicap lavatories. Provide offset grid drain and pipe covers for handicap lavatory.
- C. Electric Powered Sensor Faucet: ADA compliant, low lead content, tempered water connection, chrome finish, maximum 0.50 gpm flow of 60 psig, 4 inch cover plate, transformer (hard wired) and lead-free thermostatic mixing valve.
 - 1. Electrical requirements:
 - a. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing.
- D. Wall Mounted Carrier: ASME A112.6.1; Cast iron and steel frame with tubular legs, lugs for floor and wall attachment, threaded studs for fixture hanger, concealed arm supports, bearing plate and studs. For handicap and non-handicap lavatories.

2.7 SINKS

- A. Single Compartment Bowl
 - 1. ASME A112.19.3; 19 by 21 by 5-1/2 inch outside dimensions, 18 gauge, 0.050 inch thick, type 304 stainless steel, self-rimming and undercoated, with ledge back drilled for trim.
- B. Faucets:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Single Compartment Bowl: ASME A112.19.3; 19 x 21 x 5-1/2 inch outside dimensions, 18 gage thick, Type 304 stainless steel. Self-rimming and undercoated, with 1-1/2 inch stainless steel offset grid drain and tailpiece and ledge back drilled for trim.
 - 1. Trim: Deck mounted low lead content mixing faucet, 11-5/8 inch high spout with 2.20 gpm aerator, chrome plated finish with single lever handle.
 - 2. Accessories: Chrome plated 17 gage brass P-trap with clean-out plug and arm with escutcheon, screwdriver stop and rigid supplies.

- D. Single Compartment Bowl: ASME A112.19.3; 19 x 21 x 10-1/8 inch outside dimensions, 18 gage thick, Type 304 stainless steel. Self-rimming and undercoated, with 1-1/2 inch stainless steel offset grid drain and tailpiece, transformer, thermostatic mixing valve and ledge back drilled, single hole, for trim.
 - 1. Trim: Deck mounted low lead content sensor faucet, 11-5/8 inch high spout with 2.20 gpm aerator, chrome plated finish.
 - 2. Accessories: Chrome plated 17 gage brass P-trap with clean-out plug and arm with escutcheon, screwdriver stop and rigid supplies.
 - 3. Electrical requirements:
 - a. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing.
 - b. Transformer (Hard Wired): 120V AC Input / 12V AC Output / 300 mA Output Current.

2.8 UNDER-LAVATORY PIPE SUPPLY COVERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Basis of Design: Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc; www.plumberex.com/#sle.
- C. General:
 - 1. Insulate exposed drainage piping including hot, cold and tempered water supplies under lavatories or sinks per ADA Standards.
 - 2. Construction: 1/8 inch PVC with antimicrobial, antifungal and UV resistant properties.
 - a. Comply with ASTM C1822 Type III for covers on accessible lavatory piping.
 - b. Comply with ASME A112.18.9 for covers on accessible lavatory piping.
 - c. Comply with ICC A117.1.

2.9 ELECTRIC WATER COOLERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Water Cooler with Bottle Filler, (EWC-1): Lead-Free, ADA compliant Two-station, electric, mechanically refrigerated; surface handicapped mounted; stainless steel top, stainless steel body, elevated lead-free anti-squirt bubbler with stream guard, automatic stream regulator, push controls located in front, left and right side of unit, mounting bracket; integral air cooled condenser, cane apron. Body and lower shroud to be stainless steel. Bottle filler with filter and electronic sensor activation, plastic components, visual monitor for filter replacement. Provide 3-pack replacement filters.
 - 1. Capacity: Water Cooler - 8 gallons per minute of 50 degrees F water with inlet at 80 degrees F and room temperature of 90 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Std 18.
Capacity: Bottle Filler - 1.1 - 1.5 gallons per minute of 50 degrees F water with inlet at 80 degrees F and room temperature of 90 degrees F.
 - 2. Electrical requirements:
 - a. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on drawing.

2.10 MOP SINKS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Type: Rectilinear.
- C. Terrazzo Mop Sink Manufacturers:
 - 1. Acorn Engineering Company: www.acorneng.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Bowl: 24 x 36 x 12 inch high molded stone, floor mounted with not less than 1 1/2 inch wide shoulder, stainless steel cap, stainless steel strainer.
 - 1. Trim: Lead-Free, recessed wall type supply with handles, spout wall brace, vacuum breaker, hose end spout, integral screwdriver stops with covering caps and adjustable threaded wall flanges.

2. Accessories:
 - a. Hose clamp hanger.
 - b. Mop hanger.
 - c. Stainless Steel Wall Guards.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify walls, floors, and finishes are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.
- B. Verify rough-ins for field connections match sizes and locations shown on drawings.
- C. Verify electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.
- D. Verify casework and countertops are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install components level and plumb.
- C. Secure fixtures in place with wall supports and bolts.
- D. Solidly attach water closets to floor with lag screws. Lead flashing is not intended to hold fixture in place.
- E. Install rigid or flexible supplies to fixtures. Provide loose key supply stops, reducers, and escutcheons.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust stops and valves so fixtures operate without splashing, noise, or overflow.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage due to subsequent construction operations.
- B. Do not permit use of fixtures by construction personnel.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 16
EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flexible pipe connectors.
- B. Expansion joints and compensators.
- C. Pipe loops, offsets, and swing joints.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- B. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping; 2024.
- B. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; 2022.
- C. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2025.
- D. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Qualification Standard for Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Procedures; Welders; Brazers; and Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Operators; 2025, with Errata.
- E. ASTM A269/A269M - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2025.
- F. EJMA (STDS) - EJMA Standards; Tenth Edition.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Flexible Pipe Connectors: Indicate maximum temperature and pressure rating, face-to-face length, live length, hose wall thickness, hose convolutions per foot and per assembly, fundamental frequency of assembly, braid structure, and total number of wires in braid.
 - 2. Expansion Joints: Indicate maximum temperature and pressure rating, and maximum expansion compensation.
- C. Design Data: Indicate selection calculations.
- D. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- E. Installer's Qualification Statement.

- F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate manufacturer's installation instructions, special procedures, and external controls.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include adjustment instructions.
- H. Project Record Documents: Record installed locations of flexible pipe connectors, expansion joints, anchors, and guides.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with ASME B31.1, ASME B31.5 and ASME B31.9 code for installation of piping systems and ASME BPVC-IX for welding materials and procedures.
- B. Perform Work in accordance with the applicable Mechanical Code in the State of New York.
- C. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- D. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years experience.
- E. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Product storage and handling requirements.
- B. Accept expansion joints on site in factory packing with shipping bars and positioning devices intact. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect equipment from exposure by leaving factory coverings, pipe end protection, and packaging in place until installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for leak free performance of packed expansion joints.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS - STEEL PIPING

- A. Inner Hose: Bronze.
- B. Exterior Sleeve: Single braided, stainless steel.
- C. Pressure Rating: 125 psi up to 12 inch.
- D. End Connections: Flanged.
- E. Size: Use pipe sized units.
- F. Maximum offset: 3/4 inch on each side of installed center line.

2.2 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS - COPPER PIPING

- A. Inner Hose: Bronze.
- B. Exterior Sleeve: Braided bronze.

- C. Pressure Rating: 125 psi up to 2 inch.
- D. End Connections: Flanged.
- E. Size: Use pipe sized units.
- F. Maximum offset: 3/4 inch on each side of installed center line.
- G. Application: Copper piping.

2.3 EXPANSION JOINTS - STAINLESS STEEL BELLOWS TYPE

- A. Pressure Rating: 125 psi and 400 degrees F.
- B. Maximum Compression: 1-3/4 inches.
- C. Maximum Extension: 1/4 inch.
- D. End Connections: Externally pressurized with flanged ends.
- E. Size: Use pipe sized units.
- F. Application: Steel piping 3 inches and under.

2.4 EXPANSION JOINTS - COMPENSATORS

- A. Type: Two-ply 304 stainless steel bellows with carbon steel shroud.
- B. Maximum Working Pressure: 200 psi.
- C. Maximum Working Temperatures: 400 degrees F.
- D. Maximum Compression: 1/2 inch.
- E. Maximum Extension: 5/32 inch.
- F. End Connections: Female copper sweat.
- G. Application: Copper piping up to 3 inches in size or steel piping up to 4 inches in size.

2.5 EXPANSION JOINTS AND LOOPS - HOSE AND BRAID

- A. Provide flexible loops with two flexible sections of hose and braid, two 90 degree elbows, and 180 degree return with support brackets and plugged drain port for steam service.
- B. Maximum Allowable Motion: 2 inch in the x, y, and z planes with no thrust loads to the building structure
- C. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psi at 800 degrees F.
- D. Construction: Class 150, schedule 40, stainless steel hose and braid assembly with carbon steel fittings, including elbows and flanged end connections sized to match pipe segment
 - 1. Selected Product to Accommodate:
 - a. Compression and Expansion Axial Deflection: 1.5 inch.
 - b. Angular Rotation: 15 degrees.
 - c. Force developed by 1.5 times specified maximum allowable operating pressure.
 - 2. Provide necessary accessories including, but not limited to, swivel joints.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pipe Alignment Guides:
 - 1. Two piece welded steel with enamel paint, bolted, with spider to fit standard pipe, frame with four mounting holes, clearance for minimum 1 inch thick insulation, minimum 3 inches travel.

EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

- B. Swivel Joints:
 - 1. Fabricated steel body, double ball bearing race, field lubricated, with rubber (Buna-N) o-ring seals.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install flexible pipe connectors on pipes connected to vibration isolated equipment. Provide line size flexible connectors.
- C. Install flexible connectors at right angles to displacement. Install one end immediately adjacent to isolated equipment and anchor other end. Install in horizontal plane unless indicated otherwise.
- D. Anchor pipe to building structure where indicated. Provide pipe guides so movement is directed along axis of pipe only. Erect piping such that strain and weight is not on cast connections or apparatus.
- E. Provide support and equipment required to control expansion and contraction of piping. Provide loops, pipe offsets, and swing joints, or expansion joints where required.
- F. Substitute grooved piping for vibration isolated equipment instead of flexible connectors. Grooved piping need not be anchored.
- G. Provide expansion loops as indicated on Drawings.

3.2 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.

3.3 MAINTENANCE

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Supply two 12 ounce containers of packing lubricant and cartridge style grease gun.

3.4 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Manufacturers' field services.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 19
METERS AND GAUGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pressure gauges and pressure gauge taps.
- B. Thermometers and thermometer wells.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 09 23 - Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC.
- B. Section 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls.
- C. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B40.100 - Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments; 2022.
- B. ASTM E1 - Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers; 2014 (Reapproved 2025).
- C. AWWA M6 - Water Meters -- Selection, Installation, Testing, and Maintenance; 2012, with Addendum (2018).
- D. UL 393 - Indicating Pressure Gauges for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide list that indicates use, operating range, total range and location for manufactured components.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and instrumentation.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Extra Gauge Oil for Inclined Manometers: One bottle.
 - 3. Extra Pressure Gauges: One of each type and size.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install instrumentation when areas are under construction, except for required rough-in, taps, supports and test plugs.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Pressure Gauges: ASME B40.100, UL 393 drawn steel case, phosphor bronze bourdon tube, rotary brass movement, brass socket, with front recalibration adjustment, black scale on white background.

2.2 PRESSURE GAUGE TAPPINGS

- A. Gauge Cock: Tee or lever handle, brass for maximum 150 psi.
- B. Needle Valve: Brass, 1/4 inch NPT for minimum 150 psi.
- C. Pulsation Damper: Pressure snubber, brass with 1/4 inch connections.
- D. Syphon: Steel, Schedule 40, 1/4 inch angle or straight pattern.

2.3 STEM TYPE THERMOMETERS

- A. Thermometers - Adjustable Angle: Red- or blue-appearing non-toxic liquid in glass; ASTM E1; lens front tube, cast aluminum case with enamel finish, cast aluminum adjustable joint with positive locking device; adjustable 360 degrees in horizontal plane, 180 degrees in vertical plane.

2.4 DIAL THERMOMETERS

- A. Thermometer: ASTM E1, stainless steel case, adjustable angle with front recalibration, bimetallic helix actuated with silicone fluid damping, white with black markings and black pointer hermetically sealed lens, stainless steel stem.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

- A. Test Plug: 1/4 inch or 1/2 inch brass fitting and cap for receiving 1/8 inch outside diameter pressure or temperature probe with neoprene core for temperatures up to 200 degrees F.
- B. Test Plug: 1/4 inch or 1/2 inch brass fitting and cap for receiving 1/8 inch outside diameter pressure or temperature probe with Nordel core for temperatures up to 350 degrees F.
- C. Test Plug: 1/4 inch or 1/2 inch brass fitting and cap for receiving 1/8 inch outside diameter pressure or temperature probe with Viton core for temperatures up to 400 degrees F.
- D. Test Kit: Carrying case, internally padded and fitted containing one 2-1/2 inch diameter pressure gauges, one gauge adapters with 1/8 inch probes, two 1 inch dial thermometers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install positive displacement meters with isolating valves on inlet and outlet to AWWA M6. Provide full line size valved bypass with globe valve for liquid service meters.
- C. Provide one pressure gauge per pump, installing taps before strainers and on suction and discharge of pump. Pipe to gauge.
- D. Install pressure gauges with pulsation dampers. Provide gauge cock to isolate each gauge. Provide syphon on gauges in steam systems. Extend nipples and syphons to allow clearance from insulation.
- E. Install thermometers in piping systems in sockets in short couplings. Enlarge pipes smaller than 2-1/2 inch for installation of thermometer sockets. Ensure sockets allow clearance from insulation.

- F. Install thermometer sockets adjacent to controls system thermostat, transmitter, or sensor sockets. Refer to Section 23 09 43. Where thermometers are provided on local panels, duct or pipe mounted thermometers are not required.
- G. Coil and conceal excess capillary on remote element instruments.
- H. Provide instruments with scale ranges selected according to service with largest appropriate scale.
- I. Install gauges and thermometers in locations where they are easily read from normal operating level. Install vertical to 45 degrees off vertical.
- J. Adjust gauges and thermometers to final angle, clean windows and lenses, and calibrate to zero.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 05 48
VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Vibration isolation requirements.
- B. Vibration-isolated equipment support bases.
- C. Vibration isolators.
- D. Seismic restraint systems.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA 300 - Reverberation Room Methods of Sound Testing of Fans; 2024.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate selection and arrangement of vibration isolation and/or seismic control components with the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
 - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at the installed locations.
 - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not install products on or provide attachment to concrete surfaces until concrete has fully cured in accordance with Section 03 30 00.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide vibration isolation on motor driven equipment over 0.5 hp, plus connected piping and ductwork.
- B. Provide minimum static deflection of isolators for equipment as follows:
 - 1. Basement, Under 20 hp
 - a. 400 - 600 rpm: 1 inch
 - b. 600 - 800 rpm: 0.5 inch
 - c. 800 - 900 rpm: 0.2 inch
 - d. 1100 - 1500 rpm: 0.14 inch
 - e. Over 1500 rpm: 0.1 inch
 - 2. Basement, Over 20 hp
 - a. 400 - 600 rpm: 2 inch
 - b. 600 - 800 rpm: 1 inch
 - c. 800 - 900 rpm: 0.5 inch
 - d. 1100 - 1500 rpm: 0.2 inch

- e. Over 1500 rpm: 0.15 inch
- 3. Upper Floors, Normal
 - a. 400 - 600 rpm: 3.5 inch
 - b. 600 - 800 rpm: 2 inch
 - c. 800 - 900 rpm: 1 inch
 - d. 1100 - 1500 rpm: 0.5 inch
 - e. Over 1500 rpm: 0.2 inch
- C. Maintain sound level of spaces at levels not to exceed those listed below by utilizing acoustical devices.
- D. Maintain rooms at following maximum sound levels, in Room Criteria (RC) as defined by ASHRAE Handbook., HVAC Applications
 - 1. Halls, corridors, lobbies: 40
 - a. Service/support areas: 45
 - 2. Offices
 - a. Executive: 30
 - b. Conference rooms: 25
 - c. Private: 35
 - d. Public circulation: 40
 - 3. Schools
 - a. Lecture and classrooms: 30
 - 4. Libraries: 30
 - 5. Auditoriums and Theaters
 - a. Theater: 20 25
 - b. Stage house: 20 25

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for products, including materials, fabrication details, dimensions, and finishes.
 - 1. Vibration Isolators: Include rated load capacities and deflections; include information on color coding or other identification methods for spring element load capacities.
- C. Shop Drawings - Vibration Isolation Systems:
 - 1. Include dimensioned plan views and sections indicating proposed arrangement of vibration isolators; indicate equipment weights and static deflections.
- D. Manufacturer's detailed field testing and inspection procedures.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with applicable building code.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 5 years of experience.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify isolators meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of hangers including attachment points.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with AMCA 300 standards and recommendations of.
- B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.11 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.

1.12 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Open Spring Isolators:
 - 1. Springs: Minimum horizontal stiffness equal to 75 percent vertical stiffness, with working deflection between 0.3 and 0.6 of maximum deflection. Color code springs for load carrying capacity.
 - 2. Spring Mounts: Provide with leveling devices, minimum 0.25 inch thick neoprene sound pads, and zinc chromate plated hardware.
 - 3. Sound Pads: Size for minimum deflection of 0.05 inch; meet requirements for neoprene pad isolators.
 - 4. For Exterior and Humid Areas: Hot dipped galvanized housings and neoprene coated springs.
- B. Restrained Open Spring Isolators:
 - 1. Springs: Minimum horizontal stiffness equal to 75 percent vertical stiffness, with working deflection between 0.3 and 0.6 of maximum deflection. Color code springs for load carrying capacity.
 - 2. Spring Mounts: Provide with leveling devices, minimum 0.25 inch thick neoprene sound pads, and zinc chromate plated hardware.
 - 3. Sound Pads: Size for minimum deflection of 0.05 inch; meet requirements for neoprene pad isolators.
 - 4. Restraint: Provide heavy mounting frame and limit stops.
 - 5. For Exterior and Humid Areas: Hot dipped galvanized housings and neoprene coated springs.
- C. Closed Spring Isolators:
 - 1. Type : Closed spring mount with top and bottom housing separated with neoprene rubber stabilizers.
 - 2. Springs: Minimum horizontal stiffness equal to 75 percent vertical stiffness, with working deflection between 0.3 and 0.6 of maximum deflection. Color code springs for load carrying capacity.
 - 3. Housings: Incorporate neoprene isolation pad meeting requirements for neoprene pad isolators, and neoprene side stabilizers with minimum 0.25 inch clearance.
 - 4. For Exterior and Humid Areas: Hot dipped galvanized housings and neoprene coated springs.

- D. Restrained Closed Spring Isolators:
 - 1. Type : Closed spring mount with top and bottom housing separated with neoprene rubber stabilizers.
 - 2. Springs: Minimum horizontal stiffness equal to 75 percent vertical stiffness, with working deflection between 0.3 and 0.6 of maximum deflection. Color code springs for load carrying capacity.
 - 3. Housings: Incorporate neoprene isolation pad meeting requirements for neoprene pad isolators, and neoprene side stabilizers with minimum 0.25 inch clearance and limit stops.
 - 4. For Exterior and Humid Areas: Hot dipped galvanized housings and neoprene coated springs.
- E. Spring Hangers:
 - 1. Springs: Minimum horizontal stiffness equal to 75 percent vertical stiffness, with working deflection between 0.3 and 0.6 of maximum deflection. Color code springs for load carrying capacity.
 - 2. Housings: Incorporate neoprene isolation pad meeting requirements for neoprene pad isolators.
 - 3. Misalignment: Capable of 20 degree hanger rod misalignment.
 - 4. For Exterior and Humid Areas: Hot dipped galvanized housings and neoprene coated springs.
- F. Neoprene Pad Isolators:
 - 1. Rubber or neoprene waffle pads.
 - a. Hardness: 30 durometer.
 - b. Thickness: Minimum 1/2 inch.
 - c. Maximum Loading: 50 psi.
 - d. Rib Height: Maximum 0.7 times width.
- G. Rubber Mount or Hanger: Molded rubber designed for 0.4 inch deflection with threaded insert.
- H. Glass Fiber Pads: Neoprene jacketed pre-compressed molded glass fiber.
- I. Seismic Snubbers:
 - 1. Type: Non-directional and double acting unit consisting of interlocking steel members restrained by neoprene elements.
 - 2. Elements: Replaceable neoprene, minimum of 0.75 inch thick with minimum 1/8 inch air gap.
 - 3. Capacity: 4 times load assigned to mount groupings at 0.4 inch deflection.
 - 4. Attachment Points and Fasteners: Capable of withstanding 3 times rated load capacity of seismic snubber.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive vibration isolation and/or seismic control components and associated attachments.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install anchors and fasteners in accordance with ICC Evaluation Services, LLC (ICC-ES) evaluation report conditions of use where applicable.
- C. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- D. Install flexible piping connections to provide sufficient slack for vibration isolation and/or seismic relative displacements as indicated or as required.

- E. Vibration Isolation Systems:
 - 1. Spring Isolators:
 - a. Position equipment at operating height; provide temporary blocking as required.
 - b. Lift equipment free of isolators prior to lateral repositioning to avoid damage to isolators.
 - c. Level equipment by adjusting isolators gradually in sequence to raise equipment uniformly such that excessive weight or stress is not placed on any single isolator.
 - 2. Isolator Hangers:
 - a. Use precompressed isolator hangers where required to facilitate installation and prevent damage to equipment utility connection provisions.
 - b. Locate isolator hangers at top of hanger rods in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 3. Clean debris from beneath vibration-isolated equipment that could cause short-circuiting of isolation.
 - 4. Use elastomeric grommets for attachments where required to prevent short-circuiting of isolation.
 - 5. Adjust isolators to be free of isolation short circuits during normal operation.
 - 6. Do not overtighten fasteners such that resilient material isolator pads are compressed beyond manufacturer's maximum recommended deflection.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect vibration isolation and/or seismic control components for damage and defects.
- C. Provide manufacturer representative or authorized technician services to assist with inspection and testing of vibration isolation systems and seismic controls. Submit a detailed copy of manufacturer recommended inspection, testing, and field report procedures.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective vibration isolation and/or seismic control components.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Tags.
- C. Stencils.
- D. Pipe markers.
- E. Ceiling tacks.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Identification painting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; 2023.
- B. ASTM D709 - Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials; 2025.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. List: Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.
- C. Chart and Schedule: Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, and installation.
- F. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of tagged valves; include valve tag numbers.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 IDENTIFICATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Air Handling Units: Nameplates.
- B. Air Terminal Units: Tags.
- C. Automatic Controls: Tags. Key to control schematic.
- D. Control Panels: Nameplates.

- E. Dampers: Ceiling tacks, where located above lay-in ceiling.
- F. Ductwork: Stencilled painting.
- G. Major Control Components: Nameplates.
- H. Piping: Tags.
- I. Pumps: Nameplates.
- J. Small-sized Equipment: Tags.
- K. Tanks: Nameplates.
- L. Thermostats: Nameplates.
- M. Valves: Tags and ceiling tacks where located above lay-in ceiling.
- N. Water Treatment Devices: Nameplates.

2.2 NAMEPLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Graphic Engraving, LLC: www.advancedgraphicengraving.com/#sle.
 - 2. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co: www.kolbipipemarkers.com/#sle.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 - 4. Letter Color: White.
 - 5. Letter Height: 1/2 inch.
 - 6. Background Color: Black.

2.3 TAGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Graphic Engraving: www.advancedgraphicengraving.com/#sle.
 - 2. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co: www.kolbipipemarkers.com/#sle.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Plastic Tags: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color. Tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter.
- C. Metal Tags: Brass with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter with smooth edges.
- D. Valve Tag Chart: Typewritten letter size list of applied tags and locations in plastic laminated frame.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Brady Corporation: www.bradycorp.com/#sle.
 - 2. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co: www.kolbipipemarkers.com/#sle.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Stencils: With clean cut symbols and letters of following size:
 - 1. 3/4 to 1-1/4 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 8 inch long color field, 1/2 inch high letters.
 - 2. 1-1/2 to 2 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 8 inch long color field, 3/4 inch high letters.
 - 3. 2-1/2 to 6 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 12 inch long color field, 1-1/4 inch high letters.
 - 4. 8 to 10 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 24 inch long color field, 2-1/2 inch high letters.

5. Over 10 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 32 inch long color field, 3-1/2 inch high letters.
6. Ductwork and Equipment: 2-1/2 inch high letters.

2.5 PIPE MARKERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Brady Corporation: www.bradycorp.com/#sle.
 2. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co: www.kolbipipemarkers.com/#sle.
 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Color and Lettering: Conform to ASME A13.1.
- C. Plastic Pipe Markers: Factory fabricated, flexible, semi- rigid plastic, preformed to fit around pipe or pipe covering; minimum information indicating flow direction arrow and identification of fluid being conveyed.
- D. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.
- E. Color code as follows:
 1. Heating, Cooling, and Boiler Feedwater: Green with white letters.
 2. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Orange with black letters.
 3. Compressed Air: Blue with white letters.

2.6 CEILING TACKS

- A. Description: Steel with 3/4 inch diameter color coded head.
- B. Color code as follows:
 1. HVAC Equipment: Yellow.
 2. Fire Dampers and Smoke Dampers: Red.
 3. Heating/Cooling Valves: Blue.
 4. Plumbing valves: Green

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials.
- B. Prepare surfaces in accordance with Section 09 91 23 for stencil painting.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.
- B. Install tags with corrosion resistant chain.
- C. Apply stencil painting in accordance with Section 09 91 23.
- D. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Install plastic tape pipe markers complete around pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Install ductwork with stencilled painting. Identify with air handling unit identification number and area served. Locate identification at air handling unit, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.

- G. Locate ceiling tacks to locate valves or dampers above lay-in panel ceilings. Locate in corner of panel closest to equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 93
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of air systems.
- B. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of hydronic and refrigerating systems.
- C. Measurement of final operating condition of HVAC systems.
- D. Sound measurement of equipment operating conditions.
- E. Commissioning activities.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Employment of testing agency and payment for services.
- B. Section 23 08 00 - Commissioning of HVAC.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AABC (NSTSB) - AABC National Standards for Total System Balance, 7th Edition; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE Std 111 - Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC Systems; 2024, with Errata (2025).
- C. NEBB (TAB) - Procedural Standard for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems; 2019, with Errata (2022).
- D. SMACNA (TAB) - HVAC Systems Testing, Adjusting and Balancing; 2023.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Submit name of adjusting and balancing agency and TAB supervisor for approval within 30 days after award of Contract.
- C. TAB Plan: Submit a written plan indicating the testing, adjusting, and balancing standard to be followed and the specific approach for each system and component.
 - 1. Submit to Architect.
 - 2. Submit to the project engineer / Commissioning Authority.
 - 3. Submit six weeks prior to starting the testing, adjusting, and balancing work.
 - 4. Include certification that the plan developer has reviewed Contract Documents, the equipment and systems, and the control system with the Architect and other installers to sufficiently understand the design intent for each system.
 - 5. Include at least the following in the plan:
 - a. Preface: An explanation of the intended use of the control system.
 - b. List of all air flow, water flow, sound level, system capacity and efficiency measurements to be performed and a description of specific test procedures, parameters, formulas to be used.
 - c. Copy of field checkout sheets and logs to be used, listing each piece of equipment to be tested, adjusted and balanced with the data cells to be gathered for each.

- d. Identification and types of measurement instruments to be used and their most recent calibration date.
 - e. Discussion of what notations and markings will be made on the duct and piping drawings during the process.
 - f. Final test report forms to be used.
 - g. Detailed step-by-step procedures for TAB work for each system and issue, including:
 - 1) Terminal flow calibration (for each terminal type).
 - 2) Diffuser proportioning.
 - 3) Branch/submain proportioning.
 - 4) Total flow calculations.
 - 5) Rechecking.
 - 6) Diversity issues.
 - h. Details of how TOTAL flow will be determined; for example:
 - 1) Air: Sum of terminal flows via control system calibrated readings or via hood readings of all terminals, supply (SA) and return air (RA) pitot traverse, SA or RA flow stations.
 - 2) Water: Pump curves, circuit setter, flow station, ultrasonic, etc.
 - i. Procedures for formal deficiency reports, including scope, frequency and distribution.
- D. Field Logs: Submit at least once a week to project engineer / Commissioning Authority.
- E. Control System Coordination Reports: Communicate in writing to the controls installer all setpoint and parameter changes made or problems and discrepancies identified during TAB that affect, or could affect, the control system setup and operation.
- F. Progress Reports.
- G. Final Report: Indicate deficiencies in systems that would prevent proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment to achieve specified performance.
- 1. Submit to the project engineer / Commissioning Authority within two weeks after completion of testing, adjusting, and balancing.
 - 2. Revise TAB plan to reflect actual procedures and submit as part of final report.
 - 3. Submit draft copies of report for review prior to final acceptance of Project. Provide final copies for Architect and for inclusion in operating and maintenance manuals.
 - 4. Include actual instrument list, with manufacturer name, serial number, and date of calibration.
 - 5. Form of Test Reports: Where the TAB standard being followed recommends a report format use that; otherwise, follow ASHRAE Std 111.
 - 6. Units of Measure: Report data in both I-P (inch-pound) and SI (metric) units.
- H. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of flow measuring stations and balancing valves and rough setting.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Furnish final copy of testing, adjusting, and balancing report inclusion in operating and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NEBB Procedural Standards for Testing, Balancing and Adjusting of Environmental Systems.
- B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- C. Prior to commencing Work, calibrate each instrument to be used.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Agency: Company specializing in testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience certified by AABC or Certified by NEBB.

1.8 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.

1.9 SEQUENCING

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Work sequence.
- B. Sequence balancing between completion of systems tested and Date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 SCHEDULING

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Coordination and project conditions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform total system balance in accordance with one of the following:
 - 1. AABC (NSTSB), AABC National Standards for Total System Balance.
 - 2. ASHRAE Std 111, Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems.
 - 3. SMACNA (TAB).
- B. Begin work after completion of systems to be tested, adjusted, or balanced and complete work prior to Substantial Completion of the project.
- C. Where HVAC systems and/or components interface with life safety systems, including fire and smoke detection, alarm, and control, coordinate scheduling and testing and inspection procedures with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. TAB Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Company specializing in the testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems specified in this section.
 - 2. Having minimum of three years documented experience.
 - 3. Certified by one of the following:
 - a. AABC, Associated Air Balance Council: www.aabc.com/#sle; upon completion submit AABC National Performance Guaranty.
 - b. NEBB, National Environmental Balancing Bureau: www.nebb.org/#sle.
 - c. TABB, The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau of National Energy Management Institute: www.tabbcertified.org/#sle.
- E. TAB Supervisor and Technician Qualifications: Certified by same organization as TAB agency.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that systems are complete and operable before commencing work. Ensure the following conditions:
 - 1. Systems are started and operating in a safe and normal condition.
 - 2. Temperature control systems are installed complete and operable.
 - 3. Proper thermal overload protection is in place for electrical equipment.

4. Final filters are clean and in place. If required, install temporary media in addition to final filters.
5. Duct systems are clean of debris.
6. Fans are rotating correctly.
7. Fire and volume dampers are in place and open.
8. Air coil fins are cleaned and combed.
9. Access doors are closed and duct end caps are in place.
10. Air outlets are installed and connected.
11. Duct system leakage is minimized.
12. Hydronic systems are flushed, filled, and vented.
13. Pumps are rotating correctly.
14. Proper strainer baskets are clean and in place.
15. Service and balance valves are open.

B. Submit field reports. Report defects and deficiencies that will or could prevent proper system balance.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Hold a pre-balancing meeting at least one week prior to starting TAB work.
1. Require attendance by all installers whose work will be tested, adjusted, or balanced.
- B. Provide instruments required for testing, adjusting, and balancing operations. Make instruments available to Architect and project engineer / Commissioning Authority to facilitate spot checks during testing.

3.4 ADJUSTMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Air Handling Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 5 percent of design for supply systems and plus or minus 5 percent of design for return and exhaust systems.
- B. Hydronic Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

3.5 RECORDING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Field Logs: Maintain written logs including:
1. Running log of events and issues.
 2. Discrepancies, deficient or uncompleted work by others.
 3. Contract interpretation requests.
 4. Lists of completed tests.
- B. Ensure recorded data represents actual measured or observed conditions.
- C. Permanently mark settings of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.
- D. Mark on drawings the locations where traverse and other critical measurements were taken and cross reference the location in the final report.
- E. After adjustment, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted or that such disruption has been rectified.
- F. Leave systems in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.
- G. At final inspection, recheck random selections of data recorded in report. Recheck points or areas as selected and witnessed by the Owner.
- H. Check and adjust systems approximately six months after final acceptance and submit report.

3.6 AIR SYSTEM PROCEDURE

- A. Adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required or design supply, return, and exhaust air quantities at site altitude.
- B. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct.
- C. Measure air quantities at air inlets and outlets.
- D. Adjust distribution system to obtain uniform space temperatures free from objectionable drafts and noise.
- E. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to extend that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Effect volume control by duct internal devices such as dampers and splitters.
- F. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
- G. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Make allowances for 50 percent loading of filters.
- H. Adjust outside air automatic dampers, outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers for design conditions.
- I. Measure temperature conditions across outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers to check leakage.
- J. Where modulating dampers are provided, take measurements and balance at extreme conditions. Balance variable volume systems at maximum air flow rate, full cooling, and at minimum air flow rate, full heating.
- K. Measure building static pressure and adjust supply, return, and exhaust air systems to provide required relationship between each to maintain approximately 0.05 inches positive static pressure near the building entries.
- L. Check multi-zone units for motorized damper leakage. Adjust air quantities with mixing dampers set first for cooling, then heating, then modulating.
- M. For variable air volume system powered units set volume controller to air flow setting indicated. Confirm connections properly made and confirm proper operation for automatic variable air volume temperature control.

3.7 WATER SYSTEM PROCEDURE

- A. Adjust water systems to provide required or design quantities.
- B. Use calibrated Venturi tubes, orifices, or other metered fittings and pressure gauges to determine flow rates for system balance. Where flow metering devices are not installed, base flow balance on temperature difference across various heat transfer elements in the system.
- C. Adjust systems to provide specified pressure drops and flows through heat transfer elements prior to thermal testing. Perform balancing by measurement of temperature differential in conjunction with air balancing.
- D. Effect system balance with automatic control valves fully open to heat transfer elements.
- E. Effect adjustment of water distribution systems by means of balancing cocks, valves, and fittings. Do not use service or shut-off valves for balancing unless indexed for balance point.
- F. Where available pump capacity is less than total flow requirements or individual system parts, full flow in one part may be simulated by temporary restriction of flow to other parts.

3.8 COMMISSIONING

- A. See Section 23 08 00 for additional requirements.
- B. Perform prerequisites prior to starting commissioning activities.
- C. Re-check minimum outdoor air intake flows and maximum and intermediate total airflow rates for 10 percent of the air handlers plus a random sample equivalent to 10 percent of the final TAB report data as directed by Commissioning Provider.
 - 1. Original TAB agency shall execute the re-checks, witnessed by the Commissioning Provider.
 - 2. Use the same test instruments as used in the original TAB work.
 - 3. Failure of more than 10 percent of the re-checked items of a given system shall result in the rejection of the system TAB report; rebalance the system, provide a new system TAB report, and repeat random re-checks.
 - 4. For purposes of re-check, failure is defined as follows:
 - a. Air Flow of Supply and Return: Deviation of more than 10 percent of instrument reading.
 - b. Minimum Outside Air Flow: Deviation of more than 20 percent of instrument reading; for inlet vane or VFD OSA compensation system using linear proportional control, deviation of more than 30 percent at intermediate supply flow.
 - c. Temperatures: Deviation of more than one degree F.
 - d. Air and Water Pressures: Deviation of more than 10 percent of full scale of test instrument reading.
 - e. Sound Pressures: Deviation of more than 3 decibels, with consideration for variations in background noise.
 - 5. For purposes of re-check, a whole system is defined as one in which inaccuracies will have little or no impact on connected systems; for example, the air distribution system served by one air handler or the hydronic chilled water supply system served by a chiller or the condenser water system.
- D. In the presence of the Commissioning Provider, verify that:
 - 1. Final settings of all valves, splitters, dampers and other adjustment devices have been permanently marked.
 - 2. The air system is being controlled to the lowest possible static pressure while still meeting design loads, less diversity; this shall include a review of TAB methods, established control setpoints, and physical verification of at least one leg from fan to diffuser having all balancing dampers wide open and that during full cooling of all terminal units taking off downstream of the static pressure sensor, the terminal unit on the critical leg has its damper 90 percent or more open.
 - 3. The water system is being controlled to the lowest possible pressure while still meeting design loads, less diversity; this shall include a review of TAB methods, established control setpoints, and physical verification of at least one leg from the pump to the coil having all balancing valves wide open and that during full cooling the cooling coil valve of that leg is 90 percent or more open.
- E. No seasonal tests are required.
- F. No further monitoring is required.
- G. No deferred testing is required.

3.9 SCOPE

- A. Test, adjust, and balance the following:
 - 1. HVAC Pumps.
 - 2. Air Cooled Water Chillers.
 - 3. Air Cooled Refrigerant Condensers.
 - 4. Packaged Roof Top Heating/Cooling Units.
 - 5. Air Coils.
 - 6. Terminal Heat Transfer Units.
 - 7. Air Handling Units.
 - 8. Fans.
 - 9. Air Filters.
 - 10. Air Terminal Units.

11. Air Inlets and Outlets.

3.10 MINIMUM DATA TO BE REPORTED

- A. Electric Motors:
 - 1. Manufacturer.
 - 2. Model/Frame.
 - 3. HP/BHP.
 - 4. Phase, voltage, amperage; nameplate, actual, no load.
 - 5. RPM.
 - 6. Service factor.
 - 7. Starter size, rating, heater elements.
 - 8. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
- B. V-Belt Drives:
 - 1. Identification/location.
 - 2. Required driven RPM.
 - 3. Driven sheave, diameter and RPM.
 - 4. Belt, size and quantity.
 - 5. Motor sheave diameter and RPM.
 - 6. Center to center distance, maximum, minimum, and actual.
- C. Pumps:
 - 1. Identification/number.
 - 2. Manufacturer.
 - 3. Size/model.
 - 4. Impeller.
 - 5. Service.
 - 6. Design flow rate, pressure drop, BHP.
 - 7. Actual flow rate, pressure drop, BHP.
 - 8. Discharge pressure.
 - 9. Suction pressure.
 - 10. Total operating head pressure.
 - 11. Shut off, discharge and suction pressures.
 - 12. Shut off, total head pressure.
- D. Combustion Equipment:
 - 1. Boiler manufacturer.
 - 2. Model number.
 - 3. Serial number.
 - 4. Firing rate.
 - 5. Overfire draft.
 - 6. Gas meter timing dial size.
 - 7. Gas meter time per revolution.
 - 8. Gas pressure at meter outlet.
 - 9. Gas flow rate.
 - 10. Heat input.
 - 11. Burner manifold gas pressure.
 - 12. Percent carbon monoxide (CO).
 - 13. Percent carbon dioxide (CO₂).
 - 14. Percent oxygen (O₂).
 - 15. Percent excess air.
 - 16. Flue gas temperature at outlet.
 - 17. Ambient temperature.
 - 18. Net stack temperature.
 - 19. Percent stack loss.
 - 20. Percent combustion efficiency.
 - 21. Heat output.

- E. Air Cooled Condensers:
 - 1. Identification/number.
 - 2. Location.
 - 3. Manufacturer.
 - 4. Model number.
 - 5. Serial number.
 - 6. Entering DB air temperature, design and actual.
 - 7. Leaving DB air temperature, design and actual.
 - 8. Number of compressors.
- F. Chillers:
 - 1. Identification/number.
 - 2. Manufacturer.
 - 3. Capacity.
 - 4. Model number.
 - 5. Serial number.
 - 6. Evaporator entering water temperature, design and actual.
 - 7. Evaporator leaving water temperature, design and actual.
 - 8. Evaporator pressure drop, design and actual.
 - 9. Evaporator water flow rate, design and actual.
- G. Cooling Coils:
 - 1. Identification/number.
 - 2. Location.
 - 3. Service.
 - 4. Manufacturer.
 - 5. Air flow, design and actual.
 - 6. Entering air DB temperature, design and actual.
 - 7. Entering air WB temperature, design and actual.
 - 8. Leaving air DB temperature, design and actual.
 - 9. Leaving air WB temperature, design and actual.
 - 10. Water flow, design and actual.
 - 11. Water pressure drop, design and actual.
 - 12. Entering water temperature, design and actual.
 - 13. Leaving water temperature, design and actual.
 - 14. Saturated suction temperature, design and actual.
 - 15. Air pressure drop, design and actual.
- H. Heating Coils:
 - 1. Identification/number.
 - 2. Location.
 - 3. Service.
 - 4. Manufacturer.
 - 5. Air flow, design and actual.
 - 6. Water flow, design and actual.
 - 7. Water pressure drop, design and actual.
 - 8. Entering water temperature, design and actual.
 - 9. Leaving water temperature, design and actual.
 - 10. Entering air temperature, design and actual.
 - 11. Leaving air temperature, design and actual.
 - 12. Air pressure drop, design and actual.
- I. Induction Units:
 - 1. Manufacturer.
 - 2. Identification/number.
 - 3. Location.
 - 4. Model number.
 - 5. Size.

6. Design air flow.
 7. Design nozzle pressure drop.
 8. Final nozzle pressure drop.
 9. Final air flow.
- J. Air Moving Equipment:
1. Location.
 2. Manufacturer.
 3. Model number.
 4. Serial number.
 5. Arrangement/Class/Discharge.
 6. Air flow, specified and actual.
 7. Return air flow, specified and actual.
 8. Outside air flow, specified and actual.
 9. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual.
 10. Inlet pressure.
 11. Discharge pressure.
 12. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
 13. Number of Belts/Make/Size.
 14. Fan RPM.
- K. Return Air/Outside Air:
1. Identification/location.
 2. Design air flow.
 3. Actual air flow.
 4. Design return air flow.
 5. Actual return air flow.
 6. Design outside air flow.
 7. Actual outside air flow.
 8. Return air temperature.
 9. Outside air temperature.
 10. Required mixed air temperature.
 11. Actual mixed air temperature.
 12. Design outside/return air ratio.
 13. Actual outside/return air ratio.
- L. Exhaust Fans:
1. Location.
 2. Manufacturer.
 3. Model number.
 4. Serial number.
 5. Air flow, specified and actual.
 6. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual.
 7. Inlet pressure.
 8. Discharge pressure.
 9. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
 10. Number of Belts/Make/Size.
 11. Fan RPM.
- M. Duct Traverses:
1. System zone/branch.
 2. Duct size.
 3. Area.
 4. Design velocity.
 5. Design air flow.
 6. Test velocity.
 7. Test air flow.
 8. Duct static pressure.

9. Air temperature.
 10. Air correction factor.
- N. Flow Measuring Stations:
1. Identification/number.
 2. Location.
 3. Size.
 4. Manufacturer.
 5. Model number.
 6. Serial number.
 7. Design Flow rate.
 8. Design pressure drop.
 9. Actual/final pressure drop.
 10. Actual/final flow rate.
 11. Station calibrated setting.
- O. Terminal Unit Data:
1. Manufacturer.
 2. Type, constant, variable, single, dual duct.
 3. Identification/number.
 4. Location.
 5. Model number.
 6. Size.
 7. Minimum static pressure.
 8. Minimum design air flow.
 9. Maximum design air flow.
 10. Maximum actual air flow.
 11. Inlet static pressure.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 13
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Duct insulation.
- B. Duct liner.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions.
- B. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Painting insulation jackets.
- C. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- B. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2024.
- C. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation; 2014 (Reapproved 2019).
- D. ASTM C916 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation; 2020.
- E. ASTM C1071 - Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material); 2025.
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- G. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2024a.
- H. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- I. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2020.
- J. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures necessary to ensure acceptable workmanship and that installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum 5 years of experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labelled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with UL 723, ASTM E84, UL 723, or ASTM E84.

2.2 GLASS FIBER, FLEXIBLE

- A. Manufacturer:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com/#sle.
 - 2. Johns Manville: www.jm.com/#sle.
 - 3. Owens Corning Corporation; SOFTR Duct Wrap FRK: www.owenscorning.com/en-us/#sle.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C553; flexible, noncombustible blanket.
 - 1. K value: .28 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 250 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Service Temperature: 450 degrees F.
 - 4. Maximum Water Vapor Absorption: 5.0 percent by weight.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
 - 1. Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
 - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - 3. Secure with pressure-sensitive tape.
- D. Vapor Barrier Tape:
 - 1. Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film, with pressure-sensitive rubber-based adhesive.

2.3 GLASS FIBER, RIGID

- A. Manufacturer:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com/#sle.
 - 2. Johns Manville: www.jm.com/#sle.

- B. Insulation: ASTM C612; rigid, noncombustible.
 - 1. K Value: .28 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 450 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Water Vapor Absorption: 5.0 percent.
 - 4. Maximum Density: 8.0 pcf.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
 - 1. Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
 - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - 3. Secure with pressure-sensitive tape.
- D. Vapor Barrier Tape:
 - 1. Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film, with pressure-sensitive rubber-based adhesive.

2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com/#sle.
 - 2. Johns Manville: www.jm.com/#sle.
- B. Glass Fiber Insulation: Non-corrosive, incombustible glass fiber complying with ASTM C1071; flexible blanket, rigid board, and preformed round liner board; impregnated surface and edges coated with poly vinyl acetate polymer, acrylic polymer, or black composite.
 - 1. Fungal Resistance: No growth when tested according to ASTM G21.
 - 2. Apparent Thermal Conductivity: Maximum of 0.31 at 75 degrees F.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Up to 250 degrees F.
 - 4. Rated Velocity on Coated Air Side for Air Erosion: 5,000 fpm, minimum.
 - 5. Minimum Noise Reduction Coefficients:
 - a. 1 inch Thickness: 0.45.
- C. Adhesive: Waterproof, fire-retardant type, ASTM C916.
- D. Liner Fasteners: Galvanized steel, self-adhesive pad with integral head.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test ductwork for design pressure prior to applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean, foreign material removed, and dry.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Insulated Ducts Conveying Air Below Ambient Temperature:
 - 1. Provide insulation with vapor barrier jackets.
 - 2. Finish with tape and vapor barrier jacket.
 - 3. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, hangers, and other duct penetrations.
 - 4. Insulate entire system, including fittings, joints, flanges, fire dampers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.
- C. Insulated Ducts Conveying Air Above Ambient Temperature:
 - 1. Provide with or without standard vapor barrier jacket.
 - 2. Insulate fittings and joints. Where service access is required, bevel and seal ends of insulation.

- D. External Duct Insulation Application:
 - 1. Secure insulation with vapor barrier with wires and seal jacket joints with vapor barrier adhesive or tape to match jacket.
 - 2. Install without sag on underside of duct. Use adhesive or mechanical fasteners where necessary to prevent sagging. Lift duct off trapeze hangers and insert spacers.
 - 3. Seal vapor barrier penetrations by mechanical fasteners with vapor barrier adhesive.
 - 4. Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing wrapping.
- E. Duct and Plenum Liner Application:
 - 1. Adhere insulation with adhesive for 90 percent coverage.
 - 2. Secure insulation with mechanical liner fasteners. Refer to SMACNA (DCS) for spacing.
 - 3. Seal and smooth joints. Seal and coat transverse joints.
 - 4. Seal liner surface penetrations with adhesive.
 - 5. Duct dimensions indicated are net inside dimensions required for airflow. Increase duct size to allow for insulation thickness.

3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Combustion Air Duct:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner.
- B. Exhaust Ducts Within 10 ft of Exterior Openings:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner.
- C. Outside Air Intake Ducts:
 - 1. 1" rigid in exposed locations.
 - 2. 2" flexible for concealed.
- D. Supply and Return Ducts:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner for exposed applications.
 - 2. 2" flexible for concealed.
 - 3. 2" rigid for mechanical rooms.
- E. Exterior duct:
 - 1. 2" rigid finished with aluminum duct jacket.
- F. Ducts within 10 ft of fans:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner upstream and downstream of fan.
- G. Relief ductwork within 10 ft of exterior opening:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner in exposed applications.
 - 2. 2" flexible for concealed.
- H. Transfer ducts:
 - 1. 1" rigid liner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 16
HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Equipment insulation.
- B. Jacketing and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.
- B. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.
- C. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping: Placement of inserts.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2023).
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2024).
- C. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- D. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2025.
- E. ASTM C552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation; 2022.
- F. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2024.
- G. ASTM C592 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Insulation and Blanket-Type Pipe Insulation (Metal-Mesh Covered) (Industrial Type); 2024.
- H. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation; 2014 (Reapproved 2019).
- I. ASTM C1393 - Standard Specification for Perpendicularly Oriented Mineral Fiber Roll and Sheet Thermal Insulation for Pipes and Tanks; 2025.
- J. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- K. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2024a.
- L. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for equipment scheduled.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum 5 years of experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with UL 723, ASTM E84, ASTM E84, or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER, FLEXIBLE

- A. Insulation: ASTM C553; flexible, noncombustible.
 - 1. K Value: 0.36 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C177 or ASTM C518.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 1,000 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.1 percent by volume.
 - 4. K Value: ASTM C177, 0.27 at 75 degrees F.
 - 5. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F.
 - 6. Density: 1.0 lb/cu ft.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C1393; pipe and tank, end grain adhered to jacket.
 - 1. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket: Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
 - 1. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - 2. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips.
- D. Tie Wire: 0.048 inch stainless steel with twisted ends on maximum 12 inch centers.
- E. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- F. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

2.3 GLASS FIBER, RIGID

- A. Insulation: ASTM C612 or ASTM C592; rigid, noncombustible.
 - 1. K Value: 0.25 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C177 or ASTM C518.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 1,200 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.1 percent by volume.
 - 4. Maximum Density: 8.0 pcf.
- B. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
 - 1. Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
 - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
- C. Facing: 1 inch galvanized steel hexagonal wire mesh stitched on one face of insulation.
- D. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- E. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

2.4 CELLULAR GLASS

- A. Block Insulation: ASTM C552, Type I, Grade 6.
 - 1. K Value: 0.35 at 100 degrees F.

2.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1, in sheet form.
 - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
 - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- B. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

2.6 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES

- A. PVC Plastic:
 - 1. Jacket: Sheet material, off-white color.
 - a. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
 - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
 - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - d. Thickness: 10 mil, 0.010 inch.
 - e. Connections: Pressure sensitive color matching vinyl tape.
 - 2. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Factory Insulated Equipment: Do not insulate.

- C. Exposed Equipment: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Apply insulation close to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation. Fasten insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires, or bands.
- E. Fill joints, cracks, seams, and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor barrier cement.
- F. Insulated equipment containing fluids below ambient temperature; insulate entire system.
- G. Fiber glass insulated equipment containing fluids below ambient temperature; provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive.
- H. For hot equipment containing fluids 140 degrees F or less, do not insulate flanges and unions, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- I. For hot equipment containing fluids over 140 degrees F, insulate flanges and unions with removable sections and jackets.
- J. Inserts and Shields:
 - 1. Application: Equipment 2 inches diameter or larger.
 - 2. Shields: Galvanized steel between hangers and inserts.
 - 3. Insert Location: Between support shield and equipment and under the finish jacket.
 - 4. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
 - 5. Insert Material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- K. Finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- L. Equipment in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces: Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- M. Exterior Applications:
 - 1. Provide vapor barrier jacket or finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement.
 - 2. Cover with aluminum or stainless steel.
- N. Cover glass fiber insulation with metal mesh and finish with heavy coat of insulating cement.
- O. Nameplates and ASME Stamps: Bevel and seal insulation around; do not insulate over.
- P. Equipment Requiring Access for Maintenance, Repair, or Cleaning: Install insulation so it can be easily removed and replaced without damage.

3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Cooling Systems:
 - 1. Pump Bodies: 1-1/2" Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation
 - 2. Air Separators: 1-1/2" Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation
 - 3. Expansion Tanks: 1-1/2" Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation (finish with PVC Jacket)
 - 4. Cold Thermal Storage Tanks: 1-1/2" Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation (finish with PVC Jacket)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 19
HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Flexible removable and reusable blanket insulation.
- C. Jacketing and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions.
- B. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- C. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.
- D. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping: Placement of inserts.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2023).
- B. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2025.
- C. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2022a.
- D. ASTM C552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation; 2022.
- E. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2023).
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- G. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2024a.
- H. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum 5 years of experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient conditions required by manufacturers of each product.
- B. Maintain temperature before, during, and after installation for minimum of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, UL 723, ASTM E84, or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER, RIGID

- A. Manufacturers:
- B. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
 - 1. K Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; semi-rigid, noncombustible, end grain adhered to jacket.
 - 1. K Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 650 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- D. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm-inches.
- E. Tie Wire: 0.048 inch stainless steel with twisted ends on maximum 12 inch centers.
- F. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.

2.3 CELLULAR GLASS

- A. Block Insulation: ASTM C552, Type I, Grade 6.
 - 1. K Value: 0.35 at 100 degrees F.
 - 2. Service Temperature: 800 degrees F, maximum.
 - 3. Water Vapor Permeability: 0.005 perm inch maximum per inch.
 - 4. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent by volume, maximum.

2.4 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Armacell LLC: www.armacell.us/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
 - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 180 degrees F.
 - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.
- D. All fittings shall be constructed of like material and sealed per insulation manufacturer recommendations. Fiberglass insulation with fitting covers shall not be accepted.

2.5 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES

- A. PVC Plastic.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com/#sle.
 - b. Knauf: www.knaufnorthamerica.com.
 - 2. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
 - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
 - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
 - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - d. Thickness: 10 mil, 0.010 inch.
 - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
 - 3. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test piping for design pressure, liquid tightness, and continuity prior to applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Insulated Pipes Conveying Fluids Below Ambient Temperature:
 - 1. Insulate entire system, including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- E. Glass Fiber Insulated Pipes Conveying Fluids Below Ambient Temperature:
 - 1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied; secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples and vapor barrier mastic.
 - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. For hot piping conveying fluids 140 degrees F or less, do not insulate flanges and unions at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- G. For hot piping conveying fluids over 140 degrees F, insulate flanges and unions at equipment.
- H. Glass Fiber Insulated Pipes Conveying Fluids Above Ambient Temperature:

1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied, or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples.
 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe.
- I. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, see Section 07 84 00.
- J. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment and Storage Rooms (less than 10 feet above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- K. Pipe Exposed in Finished Spaces: Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- L. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping. Provide two coats of UV-resistant finish for flexible elastomeric cellular insulation without jacketing.

3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Dual- Temp Systems:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation; 1 1/2" thick.
 2. Behind Displacement Ventilation Units: 1" thick.
- B. Cooling Systems:
1. Chilled Water: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation; All pipe sizes = 1 1/2" thick.
 2. Condensate Drains from Cooling Coils: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation; All pipe sizes = 1 1/2" thick.
 3. All Refrigerant Piping: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation; All pipe sizes = 1 1/2" thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 08 00
COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section covers the Contractor's responsibilities for commissioning; each subcontractor or installer responsible for the installation of a particular system or equipment item to be commissioned is responsible for demonstrating proper operation to the Commissioning Provider (CxP). A Commissioning Provider (CxP) who is hired by the Owner shall supervise and approve all commissioning activities.
- B. The Commissioning Provider (CxP) directs and coordinates all commissioning activities and provides Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test Procedures for Contractor's use.
- C. The following HVAC equipment is to be commissioned, including commissioning activities for the following specific items:
 - 1. HVAC controls, including equipment / system sequences of operations.
 - 2. DDC front-end controls graphics.
 - 3. Air handling units and associated controls.
 - 4. Split-system air conditioning units.
 - 5. Exhaust fans and EF systems.
 - 6. Major and minor equipment items.
 - 7. Piping systems and equipment.
 - 8. Ductwork and accessories.
 - 9. Terminal units.
 - 10. Service water heating system.
 - 11. Lighting control systems.
 - 12. Variable frequency drives.
 - 13. Other equipment and systems explicitly identified elsewhere in Contract Documents as requiring commissioning.
- D. The Prefunctional Checklist and Functional Test requirements specified in this section are in addition to, not a substitute for, inspection or testing specified in other sections.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Scope and procedures for operation and maintenance manuals and project record documents.
- B. Section 23 05 93 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Guideline 1.1 - Application of the Commissioning Process to New HVAC&R Systems; 2025.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Updated Submittals: Keep Commissioning Provider (CxP), Owner, Owner's representative, and project Engineer informed of all changes to control system documentation made during programming and setup; revise and resubmit when substantial changes are made.

- B. Startup Reports, Prefunctional Checklists, and Trend Logs: Submit for approval of project Engineer and Commissioning Provider.
- C. HVAC Control System O&M Manual Requirements. In addition to documentation specified elsewhere, compile and organize at minimum the following data on the control system:
 - 1. Specific step-by-step instructions on how to perform and apply all functions, features, modes, etc. mentioned in the controls training sections of this specification and other features of this system. Provide an index and clear table of contents. Include the detailed technical manual for programming and customizing control loops and algorithms.
 - 2. Full as-built set of control drawings.
 - 3. Full as-built sequence of operations for each piece of equipment.
 - 4. Full print out of all schedules and set points after testing and acceptance of the system.
 - 5. Maintenance instructions, including sensor calibration requirements and methods by sensor type, etc.
 - 6. Control equipment component submittals, parts lists, etc.
 - 7. Warranty requirements.
 - 8. Copies of all checkout tests and calibrations performed by the Contractor (not commissioning tests).
 - 9. Organize and subdivide the manual with permanently labeled tabs for each of the following data in the given order:
 - a. Sequences of operation.
 - b. Control drawings.
 - c. Points lists.
 - d. Controller and/or module data.
 - e. Thermostats and timers.
 - f. Sensors and DP switches.
 - g. Valves and valve actuators.
 - h. Dampers and damper actuators.
 - i. Program setups (software program printouts).
- D. Project Record Documents: See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements.
 - 1. Submit updated version of control system documentation, for inclusion with operation and maintenance data.
 - 2. Show actual locations of all static and differential pressure sensors (air, water and building pressure) and air-flow stations on project record drawings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide all standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required functional performance testing; unless otherwise noted such testing equipment will NOT become the property of Owner.
- B. Equipment-Specific Tools: Where special testing equipment, tools and instruments are specific to a piece of equipment, are only available from the vendor, and are required in order to accomplish startup or Functional Testing, provide such equipment, tools, and instruments as part of the work at no extra cost to Owner; such equipment, tools, and instruments are to become the property of Owner.
- C. Provide the use of Testing and Balancing instruments used by sub-contractors, for consistency of measurements and calibration.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Cooperate with CxP in development of the Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test Procedures.
- B. Furnish additional information requested by Construction Manager, Project Engineer, and CxP.
- C. Prepare a preliminary schedule for HVAC pipe and duct system testing, flushing and cleaning, equipment start-up and testing, adjusting, and balancing start and completion for use by CxP; update the schedule as appropriate.
- D. Put all HVAC equipment and systems into operation and continue operation during each working day of testing, adjusting, and balancing and commissioning, as required.
 - 1. Include cost of sheaves and belts that may be required for testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Provide test holes in ducts and plenums where directed to allow air measurements and air balancing; close with an approved plug.
- F. Provide temperature and pressure taps in accordance with Contract Documents.
 - 1. Provide a pressure/temperature plug at each new water sensor that is an input point to the control system.

3.2 INSPECTING AND TESTING - GENERAL

- A. Submit startup plans, startup reports, and Prefunctional Checklists for each item of equipment or other assembly to be commissioned.
- B. Provide two-way radios for use during the testing.
- C. Test all functions that are described in the sequence of operations.
- D. Valve/Damper Stroke Setup and Check:
 - 1. For all valve/damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the control system readout.
 - 2. Set pump/fan to normal operating mode.
 - 3. Command valve/damper closed; visually verify that valve/damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required.
 - 4. Command valve/damper open; verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required.
 - 5. Command valve/damper to a few intermediate positions.
 - 6. If actual valve/damper position does not reasonably correspond, replace actuator.
 - 7. Closure for Heating Coil Valves - Normally Open:
 - a. Set heating setpoint 20 degrees F above room temperature.
 - b. Observe valve open.
 - c. Remove control air or power from the valve and verify that the valve stem and actuator position do not change.
 - d. Restore to normal.
 - e. Set heating setpoint to 20 degrees F below room temperature.
 - f. Observe the valve close.
 - g. Restore to normal.
 - 8. Closure for Cooling Coil Valves - Normally Closed:
 - a. Set cooling setpoint 20 degrees F above room temperature.
 - b. Observe the valve close.
 - c. Remove control air or power from the valve and verify that the valve stem and actuator position do not change.
 - d. Restore to normal.
 - e. Set cooling setpoint to 20 degrees F below room temperature.
 - f. Observe valve open.
 - g. Restore to normal.
- E. Isolation Valve or System Valve Leak Check: For valves not by coils.
 - 1. With full pressure in the system, command valve closed.
 - 2. Use an ultra-sonic flow meter to detect flow or leakage.

- F. Deficiencies: Correct deficiencies and re-inspect or re-test, as applicable, at no extra cost to Owner.

3.3 TAB COORDINATION

- A. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC.
- B. Coordinate commissioning schedule with TAB schedule.
- C. Review the TAB plan to determine the capabilities of the control system toward completing TAB.
- D. Provide all necessary unique instruments and instruct the TAB technicians in their use; such as handheld control system interface for setting terminal unit boxes, etc.
- E. Have all required Prefunctional Checklists, calibrations, startup, and component Functional Tests of the system completed and approved by CxP prior to starting TAB.
- F. Provide a qualified control system technician to operate the controls to assist the TAB technicians or provide sufficient training for the TAB technicians to operate the system without assistance.

3.4 CONTROL SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL TESTING

- A. Prefunctional Checklists for control system components will require a signed and dated certification that all system programming is complete as required to accomplish the requirements of Contract Documents and the detailed Sequences of Operation documentation submittal.
- B. Do not start Functional Testing until all controlled components have themselves been successfully Functionally Tested in accordance with Contract Documents.
- C. Functional Testing of the control system constitutes demonstration and trend logging of control points monitored by the control system.
 - 1. The scope of trend logging is partially specified; trend log up to 50 percent more points than specified at no extra cost to Owner.
 - 2. Perform all trend logging specified in Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test procedures.
- D. Functionally Test integral or stand-alone controls in conjunction with the Functional Tests of the equipment they are attached to, including any interlocks with other equipment or systems; further testing during control system Functional Test is not required unless specifically indicated below.
- E. Demonstrate the following to Owner, project Engineer, and CxP during testing of controlled equipment; coordinate with commissioning of equipment.
 - 1. Setpoint changing features and functions.
 - 2. Sensor calibrations.
- F. Demonstrate to Owner, project Engineer, and CxP:
 - 1. That all specified functions and features are set up, debugged and fully operable.
 - 2. That scheduling features are fully functional and setup, including holidays.
 - 3. That all graphic screens and value readouts are completed.
 - 4. Correct date and time setting in central computer.
 - 5. That field panels read the same time as the central computer; sample 10 percent of field panels; if any of those fail, sample another 10 percent; if any of those fail test all remaining units at no extra cost to Owner.
 - 6. Power failure and battery backup and power-up restart functions.
 - 7. Global commands features.
 - 8. O&M schedules and alarms.
 - 9. Occupancy sensors and controls.
 - 10. All control strategies and sequences not tested during controlled equipment testing.

- G. If the control system, integral control components, or related equipment do not respond to changing conditions and parameters appropriately as expected, as specified and according to acceptable operating practice, under any of the conditions, sequences, or modes tested, correct all systems, equipment, components, and software required at no additional cost to Owner.

3.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements.
- B. Add design intent documentation furnished by Architect to manuals prior to submission to Owner.
- C. Submit manuals related to items that were commissioned to project Engineer and Commissioning Provider for review; make changes recommended by Commissioning Provider.

3.6 PRELIMINARY COMMISSIONING REPORT

- A. The preliminary commissioning report shall include the following:
 - 1. Itemization of deficiencies found during the testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
 - 2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
 - 3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.
 - 4. Results of functional performance tests.
 - 5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

3.7 FINAL COMMISSIONING REPORT

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional requirements
- B. The final commissioning report shall include the following:
 - 1. Results of functional performance tests.
 - 2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
 - 3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repetability.
- C. The final report shall be submitted to the Engineer as a submittal for approval, and will serve as the final indication that all work has been executed in accordance with the design.
- D. The final report and any other documentation listed above shall be turned over to the building Owner or Owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 09 23
DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEM FOR HVAC

PTIPART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. This project is an extension of the existing Schneider Electric EcoStruxure for building operation system. See Section 2.1 Acceptable manufacturers.
- B. In accordance to the scope of work, the system shall also provide a graphical, web-based, operator interface that allows for instant access to any system through a standard browser. The contractor must provide PC-based programming workstations, operator workstations and microcomputer controllers of modular design providing distributed processing capability and allowing future expansion of both input/output points and processing/control functions. For this project, the system shall consist of the following components:
- C. Administration and Programming Workstation(s): The BAS Contractor shall include Operation software and architecture as described in Part 2 of the specification. These workstations must be running the standard workstation software developed and tested by the manufacturer of the network server controllers and the standalone controllers. No third-party front-end workstation software will be acceptable. Workstations must conform to the B-OWS BACnet device profile.
- D. Web-Based Operator Workstations: The BAS Contractor shall furnish licenses for web connection to the BAS system. Web-based users shall have access to all system points and graphics, shall be able to receive and acknowledge alarms, and shall be able to control setpoints and other parameters. All engineering work, such as trends, reports, graphics, etc. that are accomplished from the WorkStation shall be available for viewing through the web browser interface without additional changes. The web-based interface must conform to the B-OWS BACnet device profile. There will be no need for any additional computer-based hardware to support the web-based user interface.
- E. Ethernet-based Network Router and/or Network Server Controller(s): The BAS Contractor shall furnish needed quantity of Ethernet-based Network Server Controllers as described in Part 2 of the specification. These controllers will connect directly to the Operator Workstation over Ethernet at a minimum of 100mbps and provide communication to the Standalone Digital Control Units and/or other Input/Output Modules. Network Server Controllers shall conform to BACnet device profile B-BC. Network controllers that utilize RS232 serial communications or ARCNET to communicate with the workstations will not be accepted. Network Controllers shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as BACnet Building Controllers (B-BC).
- F. Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs): Provide the necessary quantity and types of SDCUs to meet the requirements of the project for mechanical equipment control including air handlers, central plant control, and terminal unit control. Each SDCU will operate completely standalone, containing all of the I/O and programs to control its associated equipment. Each BACnet protocol SDCU shall conform to the BACnet device profile B-AAC. BACnet SDCUs shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as BACnet Advanced Application Controllers (B-AAC).
- G. The Local Area Network (LAN) shall be either a 10 or 100 Mbps Ethernet network supporting BACnet, Modbus, XML and HTTP for maximum flexibility for integration of building data with enterprise information systems and providing support for multiple Network Server Controllers (NSCs), user workstations and a local host computer system.
- H. The Enterprise Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) LAN shall utilize Carrier Sense Multiple/Access/Collision Detect (CSMA/CD), Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) operating at 10 or 100 Mbps.

- I. The system shall enable an open architecture that utilizes ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet functionality to assure interoperability between all system components. Native support for the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004 BACnet protocol are required to assure that the project is fully supported to reduce future building maintenance, upgrade, and expansion costs.
- J. The system shall enable an architecture that utilizes a MS/TP selectable 9.6-76.8 Kbaud protocol, as a common communication protocol between controllers and integral ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet functionality to assure interoperability between all system components. The AAC shall be capable of communicating as a MS/TP device or as a BACnet IP device communicating at 10/100 Mbps on a TCP/IP trunk. The ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol is required to assure that the project is fully supported by the leading HVAC open protocol to reduce future building maintenance, upgrade, and expansion costs.
- K. The software tools required for network management of the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol must be provided with the system. Drawings are diagrammatic only. Equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans and are required to meet the functional intent, shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner. BACnet clients shall comply with the BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) device profile; with the ability to support data read and write functionality. Physical connection of BACnet devices shall be via Ethernet IP or MS/TP. The system shall provide support for Modbus TCP and RTU protocols natively, and not require the use of gateways.
- L. Complete temperature control system to be DDC with electronic sensors and electronic/electric actuation of Mechanical Equipment Room (MER) valves and dampers and electronic actuation of terminal equipment valves and actuators as specified herein. The BMS is intended to seamlessly connect devices throughout the building regardless of subsystem type, i.e. variable frequency drives, low voltage lighting systems, electrical circuit breakers, power metering and card access should easily coexist on the same network channel.
- M. The supplied system must incorporate the ability to access all data using HTML5 enabled browsers without requiring proprietary operator interface and configuration programs. The system shall not require JAVA to be enabled in the browser.
- N. Data shall reside on a supplier-installed server for all database access.
- O. A hierarchical topology is required to assure reasonable system response times and to manage the flow and sharing of data without unduly burdening the customer's internal Intranet network.
- P. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested and calibrated by factory certified technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of the approved manufacturer's local field office. The approved manufacturer's local field office shall have a minimum of 3 years of installation experience with the manufacturer and shall provide documentation in the bid and submittal package verifying longevity of the installing company's relationship with the manufacturer when requested. Supervision, hardware and software engineering, calibration and checkout of the system shall be by the employees of the approved manufacturer's local field office and shall not be subcontracted. The control contractor shall have an in place support facility within 100 miles of the site with factory certified technicians and engineers, spare parts inventory and all necessary test and diagnostic equipment for the installed system, and the control contractor shall have 24 hours/day, 7 days/week emergency service available.
- Q. Provide the Commissioning, configuration and diagnostic tool (CCDT), color display personnel computer, software, and interfaces to provide uploading/downloading of High Point Count Controllers (AAC), Unitary Equipment Controllers (UEC) and VAV controllers (VAVDDC), monitoring all BACnet objects, monitoring overrides of all controller physical input/output points, and editing of controller resident time schedules.

- R. The system shall have the capability to provide a web-enabled PEMS (power and energy management system) monitoring system intended to monitor an entire electrical distribution infrastructure, from incoming utility feeds down to low voltage distribution points. It shall be designed to monitor and manage energy consumption throughout an enterprise, whether within a single facility or across a network of facilities, to improve energy availability and reliability, and to measure and manage energy efficiency. It shall be a standard product offering with no custom programming required. It shall provide a seamless user experience ("Single pane of glass") for managing the mechanical systems (HVAC and lighting) and monitoring the power distribution system (transformers, breakers, relays, switches, capacitors, UPS, invertors, etc.) Pricing is to be a separate line item from the BAS proposal. See specification 26 09 13 for exact requirements.

1.2 STANDARD TERMS

A. Standard HVAC Terms:

1. ASHRAE: American Society Heating, Refrigeration, Air Conditioning Engineers
2. AHU: Air Handling Unit
3. BACnet: Building Automation Controls Network
4. BMS: Building Management System
5. DDC: Direct Digital Control
6. EIA: Electronic Industries Alliance
7. GUI: Graphical User Interface
8. HVAC: Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning
9. IEEE: Institute Electrical Electronic Engineers
10. MER: Mechanical Equipment Room
11. PID: Proportional, Integral, Derivative
12. VAV: Variable Air Volume Box

B. Communications and protocols:

1. ARP: Address Resolution Protocol
2. BACnet: Building Automation and Control Networks
3. CORBA: Common Object Request Broker Architecture
4. CSMA/CD: Carrier Sense Multiple Access/Collision Detect
5. DDE: Dynamic Data Exchange
6. FTP: File Transfer Protocol
7. FTT: Free Topology Transceivers
8. HTTP: Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
9. IIOP: Internet Inter-ORB Protocol
10. IP: Internet Protocol
11. LAN: Local Area Network
12. LON: Echelon Communication – Local Operating Network
13. MS/TP: Master Slave Token Passing
14. OBIX: Open Building Information Exchange
15. ODBC: Open Database Connectivity
16. ORB: Object Request Broker
17. SNVT: Standard Network Variables Types
18. SQL: Structured Query Language
19. UDP: User Datagram Protocol
20. XML: eXtensible Markup Language

C. Controllers:

1. ASD: Application Specific Device
2. AAC: Advanced Application Controller
3. ASC: Application Specific Controller.
4. CAC: Custom Application Controller.
5. DCU: Distributed Control Unit
6. LCM: Local Control Module
7. MC: MicroControllers
8. MP: Multi-purpose

9. MPC: Multi-purpose Controller
10. MPV: Multi-purpose VAV controller
11. NSC: Network Server Controller
12. PEM: Package Equipment Module
13. PPC: Programmable Process Controller
14. RC: Room controller
15. SDCU: Standalone Digital Control Units
16. SLC: Supervisory Logic Controller
17. UEC: Unitary Equipment Controller
18. VAVDDC: Variable Air Volume Direct Digital Controller

D. Tools and Software:

1. AFDD: Automated Fault Detection and Diagnostic
2. APEO: Automated Predictive Energy Optimization
3. DR: Demand Response
4. CCDT: Configuration, Commissioning and Diagnostic Tool
5. BPES: BACnet Portable Engineering Station
6. LPES: LON Portable Engineering Station
7. POT: Portable Operator's Terminal
8. PEMS: Power and Energy Management Software

1.3 WORK BY OTHERS

- A. The BAS Contractor shall cooperate with other contractors performing work on this project necessary to achieve a complete and neat installation. To that end, each contractor shall consult the drawings and specifications for all trades to determine the nature and extent of others' work.
- B. The BAS Contractor shall furnish all Airflow Stations, Control Dampers, Control Valves, Flow Meters, Flow Switches, Sensor Wells and other similar equipment for installation by the Mechanical Contractor and/or others.
- C. The BAS Contractor shall provide field supervision to the designated contractor for the installation of the following:
 1. Automatic control dampers
 2. The Electrical Contractor shall provide:
 - a. All 120VAC power wiring to motors, heat trace, junction boxes for power to BAS panels.
 - b. Furnish smoke detectors and wire to the building fire alarm system. HVAC Contractor to mount devices.

1.4 CODE COMPLIANCE

- A. Provide BAS components and ancillary equipment, which are UL-916 listed and labeled.
- B. All equipment or piping used in conditioned air streams, spaces or return air plenums shall comply with NFPA 90A Flame/Smoke/Fuel contribution rating of 25/50/0 and all applicable building codes or requirements.
- C. All wiring shall conform to the National Electrical Code.
- D. All smoke dampers shall be rated in accordance with UL 555S.
- E. Comply with FCC rules, Part 15 regarding Class A radiation for computing devices and low power communication equipment operating in commercial environments.
- F. Comply with FCC, Part 68 rules for telephone modems and data sets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All labor, material, equipment and software necessary to meet the functional intent of the system, as specified herein and as shown on the drawings, shall be provided by Day Automation Systems. Equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans, which are required to meet the functional intent, shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner. This contractor also is responsible for all costs of changes in the work required by substitute equipment.
- B. The Building Management System (BMS) Contractor must have been in business for not less than 10 years and providing BMS systems must be the Contractor's primary business. BMS Contractor must be an authorized distributor or branch office of the manufacturers specified. BMS Contractor must have a trained staff of application engineers, project managers, software engineers, commissioning staff, and service staff experienced in the configuration, programming and service of the automation system.
- C. The BMS Contractor shall have a training facility with regularly scheduled training so as to provide ongoing regularly scheduled application training.
- D. Electrical standards: Provide electrical products that comply with the following agency approvals:
 - 1. UL-916; Energy Management Systems for BAS components and ancillary equipment
 - 2. UL-873; Temperature Indication and Regulating Equipment
 - 3. FCC, Part 15, Subpart J, Class A Computing Devices
- E. All products shall be labeled with the appropriate approval markings. System installation shall comply with NFPA, NEMA, Local and National codes.

1.6 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Except as otherwise noted, the control system shall consist of all Ethernet Network Controllers, Standalone Digital Control Units, workstations, software, sensors, transducers, relays, valves, dampers, damper operators and other accessory equipment, along with a complete system of electrical interlocking wiring as required to fill the intent of the specification and provide for a complete and operable system. Except as otherwise specified, provide operators for equipment such as dampers if the equipment manufacturer does not provide these. Coordinate requirements with the various Contractors.
- B. Provide Schneider Electric EcoStruxure for building operation Front End Software Workstation for this project. All building systems graphics, scheduling and centralized alarming must be developed on this software to provide the campus one portal for the complete system from any existing EcoStruxure for building operation workstation.
- C. The BAS contractor shall review and study all HVAC drawings and the entire specification to familiarize themselves with the equipment and system operation and to verify the quantities and types of dampers, operators, alarms, etc. to be provided.
- D. All interlocking, wiring and installation of control devices associated with the equipment listed below shall be provided under this Contract. When the BAS system is fully installed and operational, the BAS Contractor shall review and check out the system. At that time, the BAS contractor shall demonstrate the operation of the system to the Owner and prove that it complies with the intent of the drawings and specifications.
 - 1. The Contractor shall furnish and install a complete building automation system including all necessary hardware and all operating and applications software necessary to perform the control sequences of operation as called for in this specification.
- E. Provide services and manpower necessary for commissioning of system in coordination with the HVAC Contractor, Balancing Contractor and Owner's representative. Commissioning reports showing the testing of each DDC point on the system shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval upon completion of the commissioning process.

1.7 TRAINING

- A. The BAS Contractor shall provide both on-site and classroom training to the Owner's representative and maintenance personnel.
- B. The BAS Contractor shall have a dedicated training center with a minimum of 8 permanent workstations connected to a simulated system.
- C. Trainees must have the ability to access their system remotely during the classroom training session as required.
- D. The BAS Contractor's trainer must have a minimum of 10 years of experience with the manufacturer's software and products per the following description:
 - 1. On-site training shall consist of a minimum of (8) hours of hands-on instruction geared at the operation and maintenance of the systems. The curriculum shall include:
 - a. System Overview
 - b. System Software and Operation
 - 1) System access
 - 2) Software features overview
 - 3) Changing setpoints and other attributes
 - 4) Scheduling
 - 5) Editing programmed variables
 - 6) Displaying color graphics
 - 7) Running reports
 - 8) Workstation maintenance
 - 9) Application programming
 - c. Operational sequences including start-up, shutdown, adjusting and balancing.
 - d. Equipment maintenance
- E. Classroom training shall include a minimum of (6) training slots for two days of course material covering workstation operation and controller programming.
- F. The training facility shall have the capability to provide hands on training experience for all applications that can be run on the Schneider Electric EcoStruxure application.
- G. The training facility shall have the capability to train on the owners' system through off site connection.

1.8 WORK BY OTHERS

- A. The BAS Contractor shall cooperate with other contractors performing work on this project necessary to achieve a complete and neat installation. To that end, each contractor shall consult the drawings and specifications for all trades to determine the nature and extent of others' work.
- B. The BAS Contractor shall furnish all control valves, sensor wells, flow meters and other similar equipment specified in this section for installation by the Mechanical Contractor.
- C. The BAS Contractor shall provide field supervision to the designated contractor for the installation of the following:
 - 1. Automatic Control Dampers
 - 2. Automatic Control Valves.
 - 3. Temperature Sensing Thermal Wells
 - 4. Pressure Control Sensing Taps

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- B. Coordinate equipment from other divisions including "Intrusion Detection," "Lighting Controls," "Motor Control Centers," "Panel boards," and "Fire Alarm" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with those systems.

- C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical circuits for control units and operator workstation.
- D. Coordinate with the Owner's IT department on locations for NSC's, Ethernet communication cabling and TCP/IP addresses.

1.10 WARRANTY AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. The microprocessor temperature control contractor shall warrant the control system installed in this contract to be free from defects in material and workmanship, except for damages from other causes, for a period of one year after final acceptance from the owner. The microprocessor temperature control contractor shall be responsible for all necessary revisions to the software required for a workable system performance through the first year of operation. Any changes in the software shall be transmitted immediately to the owner. The software responsibility is for a complete and workable system as described in the control cycle description of the specification. The software shall become the property of the owner.
- B. Updates to the manufacturer's software shall be provided at no charge during the warranty period.
- C. All equipment required to maintain operation of the temperature control system for the project shall be stocked in the microprocessor temperature control contractor's local facility. It shall be immediately available in the event of component failure. A spare or loaner piece of equipment shall be installed immediately when a failure occurs, and the equipment shall be returned to the factory for repair.
- D. Submit a proposal to provide all services, materials and the equipment necessary for preventative maintenance on the entire system for a period of one year. The work covered in this proposal shall include maintenance of the control equipment including all computer equipment, CPU, peripherals, transmission equipment, and related HVAC control devices.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawings shall include a riser diagram depicting locations of all controllers and workstations, with associated network wiring. Also included shall be individual schematics of each mechanical system showing all connected points with reference to their associated controller. Typical schematics will be allowed where appropriate.
 - 1. Each drawing containing an equipment schematic shall contain a table indicating what equipment is covered by this drawing (i.e. equipment "tag #") and which drawing in the Construction Document set this piece of equipment is shown on.
- B. Submittal data shall contain manufacturer's data on all hardware and software products required by the specification. Valve, damper and airflow station schedules shall indicate size, configuration, capacity and location of all equipment.
- C. Submit a digital copy of submittal data and shop drawings to the Engineer for review prior to ordering or fabrication of the equipment. Prior to submitting, the Contractor shall check all documents for accuracy.
- D. The Engineer will make corrections, if required, and return to the Contractor. The Contractor shall then resubmit with the corrected or additional data. This procedure shall be repeated until all corrections are made to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the submittals are fully approved.
- E. Each point in the system shall be tested for both hardware and software functionality. In addition, each mechanical and electrical system under control of the BAS shall be tested against the appropriate sequence of operation specified herein. Successful completion of the system test shall constitute the beginning of the warranty period. A written report shall be submitted to the owner indicating that the installed system functions in accordance with the plans and specifications.
- F. The BAS contractor shall commission and set in operating condition all major equipment and systems, such as the hot water and all air handling systems, in the presence of the equipment manufacturer's representatives, as applicable, and the Owner and Architect's representatives. See Section 3.6 for detail required in Commissioning the system.

- G. The BAS Contractor shall provide all manpower and engineering services required to assist the HVAC Contractor and Balancing Contractor in testing, adjusting, and balancing all systems in the building. The BAS Contractor shall have a trained technician available on request during the balancing of the systems. The BAS Contractor shall coordinate all requirements to provide a complete air balance with the Balancing Contractor and shall include all labor and materials in his contract.

1.12 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. The operation and maintenance manuals shall contain all information necessary for the operation, maintenance, replacement, installation, and parts procurement for the entire BAS. This documentation shall include specific part numbers and software versions and dates. A complete list of recommended spare parts shall be included with the lead-time and expected frequency of use of each part clearly identified.
- B. Following project completion and testing, the BAS contractor shall submit as-built drawings reflecting the exact installation of the system.

1.13 OWNERSHIP

- A. The Owner shall retain licenses to software for this project.
- B. The Owner shall sign a copy of the manufacturer's standard software and firmware licensing agreement as a condition off this contractor. Such license shall grant use of all programs and application software to the Owner as defined by the manufacturer's license agreement but shall protect the manufacturer's rights to disclosure of Trade Secrets contained within such software.
- C. The licensing agreement shall not preclude the use of the software by individuals under contract to the owner for commissioning, servicing or altering the system in the future. Use of the software by individuals under contract to the owner shall be restricted to use on the owner's computers and only for the purpose of commissioning, servicing, or altering the installed system.
- D. All project developed software, files and documentation shall become the property of the Owner. These include but are not limited to:
 - 1. Server and workstation software
 - 2. Application programming tools
 - 3. Configuration tools
 - 4. Network diagnostic tools
 - 5. Addressing tools
 - 6. Application files
 - 7. Configuration files
 - 8. Graphic files
 - 9. Report files
 - 10. Graphic symbol libraries
 - 11. All documentation

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer - Provide the following microprocessor control system:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Schneider Electric EcoStruxure, provided and installed by Day Automation systems.
 - 2. No substitutions are acceptable.

2.2 SYSTEM ARCHITCTURE

- A. General

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall consist of Network Server/Controllers (NSCs), a family of Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs), Administration and Programming Workstations (APWs), and Web-based Operator Workstations (WOWs). The BAS shall provide control, alarm detection, scheduling, reporting and information management for the entire facility, and Wide Area Network (WAN) if applicable.
 2. An Enterprise Level BAS shall consist of an Enterprise Server, which enables multiple NSCs (including all graphics, alarms, schedules, trends, programming, and configuration) to be accessible from a single Workstation simultaneously for operations and engineering tasks.
 3. The Enterprise Level BAS shall be able to host up to 250 servers, or NSCs, beneath it.
 4. For Enterprise reporting capability and robust reporting capability outside of the trend chart and listing ability of the Workstation, a Reports Server shall be installed on a Microsoft Windows SQL based computer. The Reports Server can be installed on the same computer as the Enterprise Server.
 5. The system shall be designed with a top-level 10/100bT Ethernet network, using the BACnet/IP and/or Modbus TCP protocol.
- B. Modbus RTU/ASCII (and J-bus), Modbus TCP, BACnet MS/TP, BACnet IP and WebServices shall be native to the NSCs. There shall not be a need to provide multiple NSCs to support all the network protocols, nor should there be a need to supply additional software to allow all three protocols to be natively supported.
- C. A sub-network of SDCUs using the BACnet IP protocol shall connect the local, stand-alone controllers with Ethernet-level Network Server Controllers/IP Routers.
- D. TCP/IP Level
1. The TCP/IP layer connects all of the buildings on a single Wide Area Network (WAN) isolated behind the campus firewall. Fixed IP addresses for connections to the campus WAN shall be used for each device that connects to the WAN.
- E. Fieldbus Level with Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs)
1. The fieldbus layer shall support all of the following types of SDCUs:
 - a. BACnet IP SDCU requirements: The system shall consist of one or more BACnet/IP field buses managed by the Network Server Controller. The field bus layer shall consist of up to 50 IP SDCUs in daisy chain topology, or 36 if using RSTP, per layer, with a max of 5 sub networks in daisy chain for a total of 250 SDCUs or 6 sub networks in RSTP for a total of 234 SDCUs. The field bus layer shall consist ONLY of BACnet IP SDCUs. No other protocols, including BACnet MS/TP, shall be acceptable.
- F. BAS LAN Segmentation
1. The BAS shall be capable of being segmented, through software, into multiple local area networks (LANs) distributed over a wide area network (WAN). Workstations can manage a single LAN (or building), and/or the entire system with all portions of that LAN maintaining its own, current database.
- G. Standard Network Support
1. All NSCs, Workstation(s) and Servers shall be capable of residing directly on the owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN with no required gateways. Furthermore, the NSC's, Workstation(s), and Server(s) shall be capable of using standard, commercially available, off-the-shelf Ethernet infrastructure components such as routers, switches and hubs. With this design the owner may utilize the investment of an existing or new enterprise network or structured cabling system. This also allows the option of the maintenance of the LAN/WAN to be performed by the owner's Information Systems Department as all devices utilize standard TCP/IP components.
- H. System Expansion
1. The BAS system shall be scalable and expandable at all levels of the system using the same software interface, and the same TCP/IP level and fieldbus level controllers. Systems that require replacement of either the workstation software or field controllers in order to expand the system shall not be acceptable.
 2. Web-based operation shall be supported directly by the NSCs and require no additional software.

3. The system shall be capable of using graphical and/or line application programming language for the Network Server Controllers.
- I. Support For Open Systems Protocols
 1. All Network Server Controllers must natively support the BACnet IP, BACnet MS/TP, Modbus TCP, Modbus RTU (RS-485 and RS-232), and Modbus ASCII protocols.

2.3 OPERATOR WORKSTATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. General
 1. The operator workstation portion of the BAS shall consist of one or more full-powered configuration and programming workstations, and one or more web-based operator workstations. For this site provide a minimum 4 concurrent engineering users within the enterprise server.
 2. The programming and configuration workstation software shall allow any user with adequate permission to create and/or modify any or all parts of the NSC and/or Enterprise Server database.
 3. Web-based workstations (webstations) shall have a minimum of 20 concurrent operator users.
 4. All configuration workstations shall be personal computers operating under the Microsoft Windows operating system. The application software shall be capable of communication to all Network Server Controllers and shall feature high-resolution color graphics, alarming, trend charting. It shall be user configurable for all data collection and data presentation functions.
 5. A minimum of 1 physical Workstations shall be allowed on the Ethernet network. In this client/server configuration, any changes or additions made from one workstation will automatically appear on all other workstations since the changes are accomplished to the databases within the NSC. Systems with a central database will not be acceptable.
- B. Administration/Programming Workstation, Enterprise Server, and Enterprise Central Requirements:
 1. The Enterprise Central shall consist of the following:
 - a. Processor
 - 1) Minimum: Intel Xeon E5-2407 2.20 GHz, 10M Cache
 - b. Memory
 - 1) Minimum: 16GB
 - c. Operating systems:
 - 1) Microsoft Windows 8.1 32-bit (Pro, Pro N, Enterprise, or Enterprise N)
 - 2) Microsoft Windows 8.1 64-bit (Pro, Pro N, Enterprise, or Enterprise N)
 - 3) Microsoft Windows 10 64-bit (Pro or Enterprise)
 - 4) Microsoft Windows Server 2012 64-bit (Standard, Datacenter, Essentials, or Foundation)
 - 5) Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 64-bit (Standard, Datacenter, Essentials, or Foundation)
 - 6) Microsoft Windows Server 2016 R2 64-bit (Standard, Datacenter, Essentials, or Foundation)
 - d. 10/100MBPS Ethernet NIC
 - e. 2-1Tb 7200 RPM SATA 3 RAID 1 Drive
 - f. Required additional software:
 - 1) Microsoft .Net 4.5
 - g. License agreement for all applicable software
 2. The workstation shall consist of the following:
 - a. Processor
 - 1) Intel Core i3-7500 3.4GHz
 - b. Memory
 - 1) 8 GB RAM, 1TB HDD
 - c. Operating systems:
 - 1) Microsoft Windows 10 64-bit (Pro or Enterprise)
 - d. Serial port, parallel port, USB port
 - e. 10/100MBPS Ethernet NIC
 - f. 1 TB HDD
 - g. DVD drive
 - h. High resolution (minimum 1920 x 1080), 22" flat panel display

- i. Optical mouse and full function keyboard
 - j. Audio sound card and speakers
 - k. UPS Back-Up
 - l. License agreement for all applicable software.
- C. Web-Based Operator PC Requirements
 - 1. Any user on the network can access the system, using the following software:
 - a. Internet Explorer 11
 - b. Mozilla Firefox
 - c. Google Chrome
- D. General Administration and Programming Workstation Software:
 - 1. System architecture shall be truly client server in that the Workstation shall operate as the client while the NSCs shall operate as the servers. The client is responsible for the data presentation and validation of inputs while the server is responsible for data gathering and delivery.
 - 2. The workstation functions shall include monitoring and programming of all DDC controllers. Monitoring consists of alarming, reporting, graphic displays, long term data storage, automatic data collection, and operator-initiated control actions such as schedule and setpoint adjustments.
 - 3. Programming of SDCUs shall be capable of being done either off-line or on-line from any operator workstation. All information will be available in graphic or text displays stored at the NSC. Graphic displays will feature animation effects to enhance the presentation of the data, to alert operators of problems, and to facilitate location of information throughout the DDC system. All operator functions shall be selectable through a mouse.
- E. User Interface:
 - 1. The BAS workstation software shall allow the creation of a custom, browser-style interface linked to the user when logging into any workstation. Additionally, it shall be possible to create customized workspaces that can be assigned to user groups. This interface shall support the creation of "hot-spots" that the user may link to view/edit any object in the system or run any object editor or configuration tool contained in the software. Furthermore, this interface must be able to be configured to become a user's "PC Desktop" – with all the links that a user needs to run other applications. This, along with the Windows user security capabilities, will enable a system administrator to setup workstation accounts that not only limit the capabilities of the user within the BAS software, but may also limit what a user can do on the PC and/or LAN/WAN. This might be used to ensure, for example, that the user of an alarm monitoring workstation is unable to shutdown the active alarm viewer and/or unable to load software onto the PC.
 - 2. System shall be able to automatically switch between displayed metric vs. imperial units based on the workstation/webstations localization.
 - 3. The BMS workstation/webstations shall be capable of multiple language display, including English, Spanish, German, French, Japanese, Italian, Finnish, Portuguese, Swedish, Russian, and traditional and simplified Chinese. The multiple languages shall not require additional add on software from the standard workstation installer and shall be selectable within said workstation.
 - 4. Webstations shall have the capability to automatically re-direct to an HTTPS connection to ensure more secure communications.
 - 5. Personalized layouts and panels within workstations shall be extended to webstations to ensure consistent user experiences between the two user interfaces.
 - 6. Servers and clients shall have the ability to be located in different time zones, which are then synchronized via the NTP server.
 - 7. Workstation shall indicate at all times the communication status between it and the server.
- F. User Security:
 - 1. The software shall be designed so that each user of the software can have a unique username and password. The system must allow a minimum of 256 users to be configured per workstation. Additionally, the software shall enable the ability to add/remove users based upon Microsoft Windows Security Domains that enable the customer IT department to assist in user access.
 - 2. Additional requirements include mandatory change of passwords:
 - a. At first logon with default credentials.
 - b. Of admin passwords before deploying.

3. No general accounts, one account per user.
4. Capability to integrate and use Windows Active Directory for user log on credentials.
5. Include a timed auto log off feature.
6. Use TLS 1.2 encryption or higher.
7. Capability to use blacklisted and whitelisted IPs/MAC addresses to gate access.
8. All devices and software that support HTTP shall allow disabling the HTTP access and require access via HTTPS.
9. All devices that have web portals for the configuration of IP addresses and other configuration attributes shall have the ability, through commands issued, to disable this service upon completion. A direct connection method with ASCII commands shall enable this service again if changes need to be applied. Loss of power or cycling the device shall not reverse this command. Disabling this web portal eliminates the security risk and the need for updating security patches.
10. All devices shall support SNMP V3 monitoring of network performance and stack statistics for the purpose of managing denial of service attacks
11. The Integrated Control Platform shall support the feature to alarm on a predetermined period of time until the default password for each device is changed from the default factory setting.
12. The Integrated Control Platform shall support encrypted password authentication for all web services whether serving or consuming.

G. Configuration Interface

1. The workstation software shall use a familiar Windows Explorer style interface for an operator or programmer to view and/or edit any object (controller, point, alarm, report, schedule, etc.) in the entire system. In addition, this interface shall present a "network map" of all controllers and their associated points, programs, graphics, alarms, and reports in an easy to understand structure. All object names shall be alphanumeric and use Windows long filename conventions.
2. The configuration interface shall also include support for user defined object types. These object types shall be used as building blocks for the creation of the BAS database. They shall be created from the base object types within the system input, output, string variables, setpoints, etc., alarm algorithms, alarm notification objects, reports, graphics displays, schedules, and programs. Groups of user defined object types shall be able to be set up as a predefined aggregate of subsystems and systems. The configuration interface shall support copying/pasting and exporting/importing portions of the database for additional efficiency. The system shall also maintain a link to all "child" objects created. If a user wishes to make a change to a parent object, the software shall ask the user if he/she wants to update all of the child objects with the change.

H. Color Graphic Displays

1. The system shall allow for the creation of user defined, color graphic displays for the viewing of mechanical and electrical systems, or building schematics. These graphics shall contain point information from the database including any attributes associated with the point (engineering units, etc.). In addition operators shall be able to command equipment or change setpoints from a graphic through the use of the mouse.
2. Requirements of the color graphic subsystem include:
 - a. At a minimum, the user shall have the ability to import .gif, .png, .bmp, .jpeg, .tif, and CAD generated picture files as background displays, and layering shall be possible.
 - b. The system shall support HTML5 enabled graphics.
 - c. It shall be possible for the user to use JavaScript to customize the behavior of each graphic.
 - d. The editor shall use Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) technology.
 - e. A built-in library of animated objects such as dampers, fans, pumps, buttons, knobs, gauges, and graphs which can be "dropped" on a graphic through the use of a software configuration "wizard". These objects shall enable operators to interact with the graphic displays in a manner that mimics their mechanical equivalents found on field installed control panels.
 - f. Support for high DPI icons shall be included and automatically chosen if viewing on a high definition display such as Retina or 4K displays.
 - g. Using the mouse, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints, start or stop equipment, modify PID loop parameters, or change schedules.
 - h. Status changes or alarm conditions must be able to be highlighted by objects changing screen location, size, color, text, blinking or changing from one display to another.

- i. Ability to link graphic displays through user defined objects, alarm testing, or the result of a mathematical expression. Operators must be able to change from one graphic to another by selecting an object with a mouse - no menus will be required.
 - j. It shall be possible to create and save graphical components and JavaScript code in reusable and transferrable, customized libraries.
 - k. Graphics should rescale based on whatever monitor or viewing device is being used.
 - l. Be able to create graphics on varying layers that can be moved and repeated.
 - m. Be able to create graphics within varying window panes that can be moved and/or re-referenced. For example, creating the graphical menu within a pane and referencing it on every graphics page, therefore not rebuilding thus allowing for a single spot for updates that get pushed to all the pages that reference it.
 - n. The ability to create re-usable cascading menus.
 - o. The ability to have multiple instances of a graphic and edit one instance to change all.
- 3. Additionally, the Graphics Editor portion of the Engineering Software shall provide the following capabilities:
 - a. Create and save pages.
 - b. Group and ungroup symbols.
 - c. Modify an existing symbol.
 - d. Modify an existing graphic page.
 - e. Rotate and mirror a symbol.
 - f. Place a symbol on a page.
 - g. Place analog dynamic data in decimal format on a page.
 - h. Place binary dynamic data using state descriptors on a page.
 - i. Create motion through the use of animated .gif files or JavaScript.
 - j. Place test mode indication on a page.
 - k. Place manual mode indication on a page.
 - l. Place links using a fixed symbol or flyover on a page.
 - m. Links to other graphics.
 - n. Links to web sites.
 - o. Links to notes.
 - p. Links to time schedules.
 - q. Links to any .exe file on the operator work station.
 - r. Links to .doc files.
 - s. Assign a background color.
 - t. Assign a foreground color.
 - u. Place alarm indicators on a page.
 - v. Change symbol/text/value color as a function of an analog variable.
 - w. Change a symbol/text/value color as a function of a binary state.
 - x. Change symbol/text/value as a function of a binary state.
 - y. All symbols used by Schneider Electric EcoBuilding Business in the creation of graphic pages shall be saved to a library file for use by the owner.
- I. Automatic monitoring
 - 1. The software shall allow for the automatic collection of data and reporting from any controller or NSC. The frequency of data collection shall be user-configurable.
- J. Alarm Management
 - 1. The software shall be capable of accepting alarms directly from NSCs or controllers, or generating alarms based on evaluation of data in controllers and comparing to limits or conditional equations configured through the software. Any alarm (regardless of its origination) will be integrated into the overall alarm management system and will appear in all standard alarm reports, be available for operator acknowledgment, and have the option for displaying graphics, or reports.
 - 2. Alarm management features shall include:
 - a. A minimum of 1000 alarm notification levels at the NSC, workstation, and webstation levels. At the Enterprise level the minimum number of active and viewable alarms shall be 10,000. Each notification level will establish a unique set of parameters for controlling alarm display, distribution, acknowledgment, keyboard annunciation, and record keeping.

- b. Automatic logging in the database of the alarm message, point name, point value, source device, timestamp of alarm, username and time of acknowledgement, username and time of alarm silence (soft acknowledgement).
 - c. Playing an audible sound on alarm initiation or return to normal.
 - d. Sending an email page to anyone specifically listed on the initial occurrence of an alarm. The ability to utilize email paging of alarms shall be a standard feature of the software using Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) with support for secure email using Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Secure (SMTPS) No special software interfaces shall be required and no email client software must be running in order for email to be distributed. The email notification shall be able to be sent to an individual user or a user group.
 - e. Individual alarms shall be able to be re-routed to a user at user-specified times and dates. For example, a critical high temp alarm can be configured to be routed to a Facilities Dept. workstation during normal working hours (7am-6pm, Mon-Fri) and to a Central Alarming workstation at all other times.
 - f. An active alarm viewer shall be included which can be customized for each user or user type to hide or display any alarm attributes.
 - g. The active alarm viewer can be configured such that an operator must type in text in an alarm entry and/or pick from a drop-down list of user actions for certain alarms.
 - h. The active alarm viewer can be configured such that an operator must type in text in an alarm entry and/or pick from a drop-down list of causes for certain alarms. This ensures accountability (audit trail) for the response to critical alarms.
 - i. The active alarm viewer can be configured such that an operator must confirm that all of the steps in a check list have been accomplished prior to acknowledging the alarm.
 - j. The active alarm viewer shall, if filtered, show the quantity of visible and total number of alarms that are not equal to 'normal' and the quantity of disabled and hidden alarms.
 - k. The alarm viewer can be configured to auto hide alarms when triggered.
 - l. An operator shall have the capability to assign an alarm to another user of the system.
 - m. Time schedules shall be able to be used to set control notifications to users.
 - n. An operator shall have the capability to save and apply alarm favorites.
 - o. Alarm notifications must support multiple distribution methods within one notification.
- K. Report Generation
- 1. The Reports Server shall be able to process large amounts of data and produce meaningful reports to facilitate analysis and optimization of each installation.
 - 2. Reports shall be possible to generate and view from the operator Workstation, and/or Webstation, and/or directly from a reports-only web interface.
 - 3. A library of predefined automatically generated reports that prompt users for input prior to generation shall be available. The properties and configurations made to these reports shall be possible to save as Dashboard reports, so that the configurations are saved for future used.
 - 4. It shall be possible to create reports standard tools, such as Microsoft Report Builder 2.0 or Visual Studio, shall be used for customized reports.
 - 5. Additional reports or sets of reports shall be downloadable, transferrable, and importable
 - 6. All reports shall be able to be set up to automatically run or be generated on demand.
 - 7. Each report shall be capable of being automatically emailed to a recipient in Microsoft Word, Excel, and/or Adobe .pdf format.
 - 8. Reports can be of any length and contain any point attributes from any controller on the network.
 - 9. Image management functionality shall be possible to enable the system administrators to easily upload new logos or images to the system.
 - 10. It shall be possible to run other executable programs whenever a report is initiated.
 - 11. Report Generator activity can be tied to the alarm management system, so that any of the configured reports can be displayed in response to an alarm condition.
 - 12. Minimum supplied reports shall include:
 - a. Activities Per Server Report
 - b. Activities Per User Report
 - c. Alarm Amount by Category Report
 - d. Alarm Amount by Type Report
 - e. Alarms Per Sever Report

- f. Current Alarm Report
 - g. Most Active Alarm Report
 - h. System Errors Per Server Report
 - i. Top Activities Report
 - j. Top Alarms Report
 - k. Top System Errors Report
 - l. Trend Log Comparison Report
 - m. User Logins Report
 - n. Users and Groups Reports
13. Minimum Energy Reports shall include:
- a. Energy Monitoring Calendar Consumption Report: Shall provide an interactive report that shows the energy usage on one or multiple selected days.
 - b. Energy Monitoring Consumption Breakdown Report: Shall provide a report on energy consumption broken down using sub-metering.
 - c. Energy Monitoring Consumption Report: Shall show the energy consumption against a specified target value.
14. Reports Server Hardware Requirements
- a. Processor
 - 1) Minimum: 2.0 GHz
 - 2) Recommended: 2.0 GHz or higher
 - b. Memory
 - 1) Minimum: 6 GB
 - 2) Recommended: 8GB or higher
 - c. Hard Disk: 500 GB
15. Reports Server Software Requirements
- a. Operating System:
 - 1) Microsoft Windows 8.1 32-bit (Pro or Enterprise)
 - 2) Microsoft Windows 8.1 64-bit (Pro or Enterprise)
 - 3) Microsoft Windows 10 64-bit (Pro or Enterprise)
 - 4) Microsoft Windows Server 2012 64-bit (Standard)
 - 5) Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 64-bit (Standard, Datacenter)
 - b. SQL Versions:
 - 1) Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 64-bit SP2 (Standard and Express with Advanced Services)
 - 2) Microsoft SQL Server 2012 64-bit (Standard and Express with Advanced Services)
 - c. Additional required software"
 - 1) Microsoft .Net 4.5
- L. Scheduling
- 1. From the workstation or webstation, it shall be possible to configure and download schedules for any of the controllers on the network.
 - 2. Time of day schedules shall be in a calendar style and viewable in both a graphical and tabular view.
 - 3. Schedules shall be programmable for a minimum of one year in advance.
 - 4. To change the schedule for a particular day, a user shall simply select the day and make the desired modifications.
 - 5. Additionally, from the operator webstations, each schedule will appear on the screen viewable as the entire year, monthly, week and day. A simple mouse click shall allow switching between views. It shall also be possible to scroll from one month to the next and view or alter any of the schedule times.
 - 6. Schedules will be assigned to specific controllers and stored in their local RAM memory. Any changes made at the workstation will be automatically updated to the corresponding schedule in the controller.
 - 7. It shall be possible to assign a lead schedule such that shadow/local schedules are updated based upon changes in the Lead.
 - 8. It shall be possible to assign a list(s) of exception event days, dates, date ranges to a schedule.

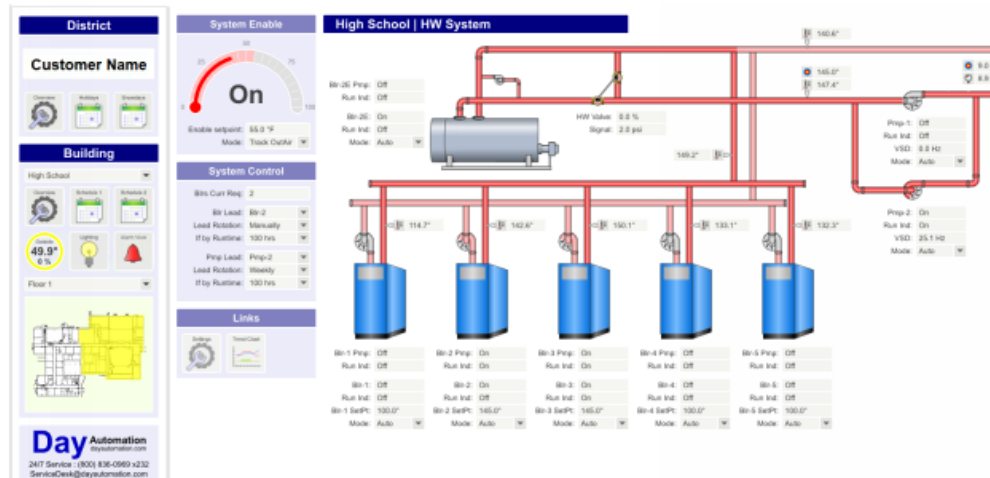
9. It shall be possible to view combined views showing the calendar and all prioritized exemptions on one screen.
 10. It should accommodate a minimum of 16 priority levels.
 11. Values should be able to be controlled directly from a schedule, without the need for special program logic.
- M. Programmer's Environment
1. Programming in the NSC shall be either in graphical block format or line-programming format or both.
 2. Programming of the NSC shall be available offline from system prior to deployment into the field. All engineering tasks shall be possible, except, of course, the viewing of live tasks or values.
 3. The programmer's environment will include access to a superset of the same programming language supported in the SDCUs.
 4. NSC devices will support both script programming language as well as the graphical function block programming language. For both languages, the programmer will be able to configure application software for custom program development, and write global control programs. Both languages will have debugging capabilities in their editors.
 5. It shall be possible to save custom programs as libraries for reuse throughout the system. A wizard tool shall be available for loading programs from a library file in the program editor.
 6. It shall be possible to view graphical programming live and real-time from the Workstation.
 7. The system shall be capable of creating 'binding templates' allowing the user to bind multiple points to multiple objects all at once.
 8. Key terms should appear when typing (IntelliType).
 9. Applications should be able to be assigned different priorities and cycle times for a prioritized execution of different function.
 10. The system shall be able to create objects that allow common objects such as power meters, VFD drives, etc. to be integrated into the system with simple import actions without the need of complicated programming or configuration setups.
- N. Saving/Reloading
1. The workstation software shall have an application to save and restore NSC and field controller memory files.
 2. For the NSC, this application shall not be limited to saving and reloading an entire controller – it must also be able to save/reload individual objects in the controller. This allows off-line debugging of control programs, for example, and then reloading of just the modified information.
- O. Audit Trail
1. The workstation software shall automatically log and timestamp every operation that a user performs at a workstation, from logging on and off a workstation to changing a point value, modifying a program, enabling/disabling an object, viewing a graphic display, running a report, modifying a schedule, etc.
 2. It shall be possible to view a history of alarms, user actions, and commands for any system object individually or at least the last 5000 records of all events for the entire system from Workstation.
 3. The Enterprise server shall be able to store up to 5 million events.
 4. The event view shall support viewing of up to 100,000 events.
 5. It shall be possible to save custom filtered views of event information that are viewable and configurable in Workstation.
 6. It shall be capable to search and view all forced values within the system.
- P. Fault Tolerant Enterprise Server Operation (Top level NSC)
1. A single component failure in the system shall not cause the entire system to fail. All system users shall be informed of any detectable component failure via an alarm event. System users shall not be logged off as a result of a system failure or switchover.
- Q. Web-based Operator Software
1. General:
 - a. Day-to-day operation of the system shall be accessible through a standard web browser interface, allowing technicians and operators to view any part of the system from anywhere on the network.

- b. The system shall be able to be accessed on site via a mobile device environment with, at a minimum, access to overwrite and view system values.
 - 2. Graphic Displays
 - a. The browser-based interface must share the same graphical displays as the Administration and Programming Workstations, presenting dynamic data on site layouts, floor plans, and equipment graphics. The browser's graphics shall support commands to change setpoints, enable/disable equipment and start/stop equipment.
 - b. Through the browser-based interface, operators must be able to navigate through the entire system, and change the value or status of any point in any controller. Changes are effective immediately to the controller, with a record of the change stored in the system database.
 - 3. Alarm Management
 - a. Systems requiring additional client software to be installed on a PC for viewing the webstation from that PC will not be considered.
 - b. Through the browser interface, a live alarm viewer identical to the alarm viewer on the Administration and Programming workstation shall be presented, if the user's password allows it. Users must be able to receive alarms, silence alarms, and acknowledge alarms through a browser. If desired, specific operator text must be able to be added to the alarm record before acknowledgement, attachments shall be viewable, and alarm checklists shall be available.
- R. Groups and Schedules
 - 1. Through the browser interface, operators must be able to view pre-defined groups of points, with their values updated automatically.
 - 2. Through the browser interface, operators must be able to change schedules – change start and stop times, add new times to a schedule, and modify calendars.
- S. User Accounts and Audit Trail
 - 1. The same user accounts shall be used for the browser interface and for the operator workstations. Operators must not be forced to memorize multiple passwords.
 - 2. All commands and user activity through the browser interface shall be recorded in the system's activity log, which can be later searched and retrieved by user, date, or both.
- T. Web Services
 - 1. The installed system shall be able to use web services to "consume" information within the Network Server/Controllers (NSCs) with other products and systems. Inability to perform web services within the NSCs will be unacceptable.
 - a. Shall be able to "consume" data into the system via SOAP and REST web services.

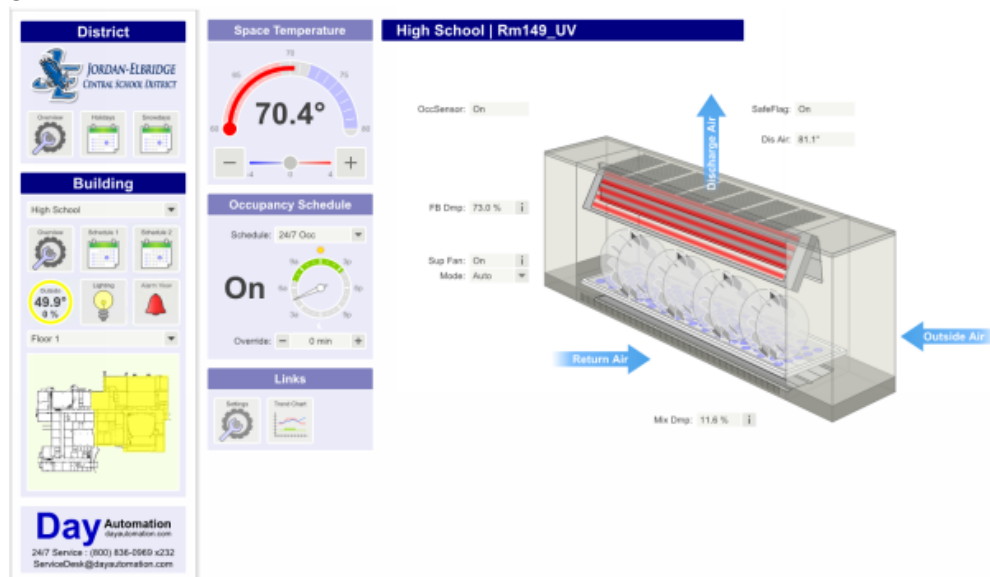
U. Sample Graphics
1. Air Handling Unit:



2. Boiler Plant:



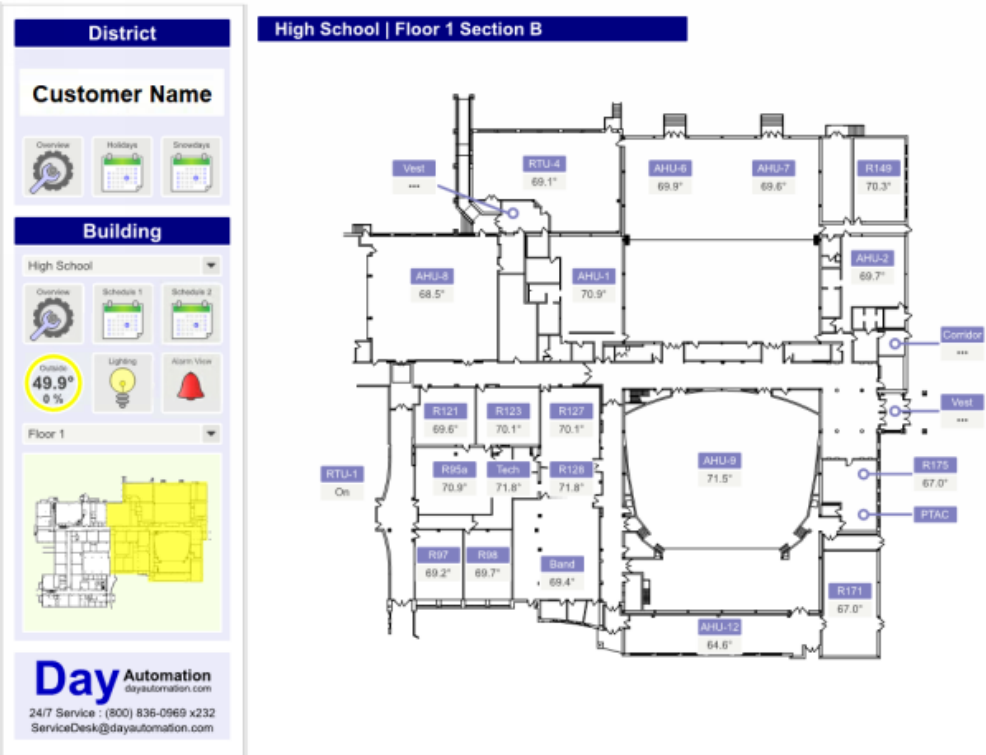
3. Unit Ventilator:



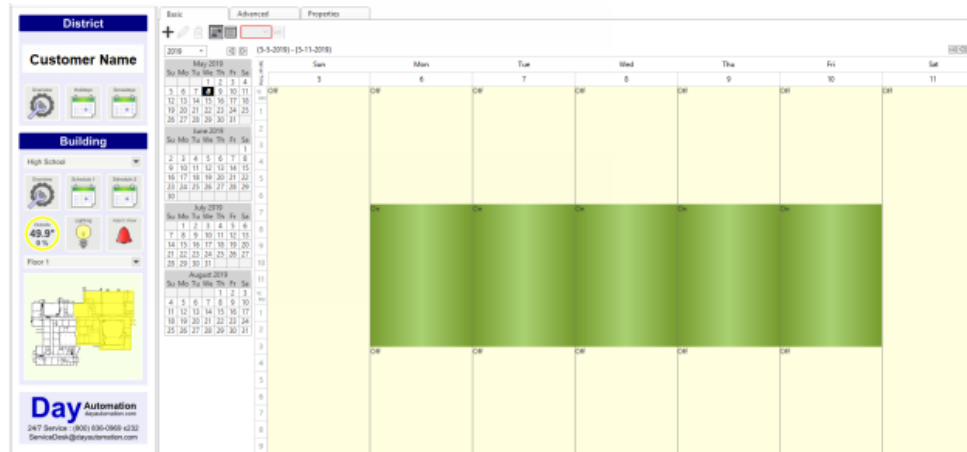
4. Variable Air Volume Box:



V. Sample Floor Plan:



W. Sample Schedule:



2.4 BACNET FIELDBUS CONTROLLERS

A. Controllers – BACnet/IP Protocol

1. All BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall be BACnet Testing Laboratory listed (v12 or later) as specified BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC)
2. All BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall use the following communication specifications and achieve performance as specified herein:
 - a. All controllers shall be able to communicate peer-to-peer without the need for an NSC.
 - b. Any BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers on the Ethernet Data Link/Physical layer shall be able to act as a Master to allow for the exchange and sharing of data variables and messages with any other controller connected on the same communication cabling. Slave controllers are not acceptable.

B. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall be equipped with 2x 10/100bT Ethernet communication ports with active switch and will support BACnet/IP communication protocols with the following configurations:

1. Supporting IPv4 addressing.
2. Supporting Static IP setting, DHCP client and Auto-IP address acquisition.
3. It shall be possible to disable Ethernet port 2.

C. Topologies

1. BACnet/IP Fieldbus Controllers shall support RSTP loop whereby up to 36 controllers are supported.
2. In case of any disruption there shall be no communication interruption.
3. In case of any disruption there shall be system alarms that will inform the operator of the disruption.

D. Performance

1. Each BACnet/IP Fieldbus Controllers shall have a 32-bit microprocessor operating at 500 MHz and support a BACnet protocol stack in accordance with the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-2008 and the BACnet Device Profile supported.
2. They shall be multi-tasking, real-time digital control processors consisting of communication controllers, controls processing, power supplies with built-in inputs and outputs.

E. Programmability

1. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall support both script programming language and graphical that will be consistent with the NSC.
2. The control program will reside within the same enclosure as the input/output circuitry, that reads inputs and controls outputs.

3. All control sequences programmed into the BACnet/IP Fieldbus Controllers shall be stored in non-volatile memory, which is not dependent upon the presence of a battery, to be retained.
4. BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall communicate with the Network Server Controller (NSC) via a BACnet/IP connection at a baud rate of not less than 100 Mbps.
5. BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall support a dedicated communications port for connecting and supplying power to a matching room temperature and/or humidity sensor and/or CO2 and/or presence detector that does not utilize any of the I/O points of the controller.
6. BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers (Excluding VAV) shall support an add-on display to supply and provide access in real-time for monitoring inputs and overriding of outputs.
7. The override functionality must be supported by a dedicated processor to assure reliable operation (overriding of output).
8. Each BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall have sufficient memory, to support its own operating system and databases, including:
 - a. Control processes
 - b. Energy management applications
 - c. Alarm management
 - d. Historical/trend data
 - e. Maintenance support applications
 - f. Custom processes
 - g. Manual override monitoring
9. Each BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall support local trend data up to 2x the built-in I/O and at a minimum be capable of holding 5 days @ 15 min intervals locally.
10. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller analog or universal input shall use a 16 bit A/D converter.
11. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller analog or universal output shall use a 10 bit D/A converter.
12. Built-in I/O: each BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall support:
 - a. At minimum 8 and up to 20 configurable IO channels to monitor and to control the following types of inputs and outputs without the addition of equipment inside or outside the DDC Controller cabinet.
 - 1) Universal Inputs – the following thermistors for use in the system without any external converters needed.
 - (a) 10 kohm Type I (Continuum)
 - (b) 10 kohm Type II (I/NET)
 - (c) 10 kohm Type III (Satchwell)
 - (d) 10 kohm Type IV (FD)
 - (e) Linearized 10 kohm Type V (FD w/11k shunt)
 - (f) Linearized 10 kohm (Satchwell)
 - (g) 1.8 kohm (Xenta)
 - (h) 1 kohm (Balco)
 - (i) 20 kohm (Honeywell)
 - (j) 2.2 kohm (Johnson)
 - (k) PT100 (Siemens)
 - (l) PT1000 (Sauter)
 - (m) Ni1000 (Danfoss)
 - b. Analog inputs
 - 1) Current Input - 0-20 mA
 - 2) Voltage Input 0-10 Vdc
 - c. Digital inputs from dry contact closure, pulse accumulators, voltage sensing.
 - d. Digital outputs
 - e. Analog outputs of 4-20 mA and/or 0-10 Vdc
13. Real Time Clock (RTC):
 - a. Each BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall include a real time clock, accurate to +/-1 minute per month. The RTC shall provide the following: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week.
 - b. The RTC date and time shall also be accurate, up to 7 days, when the BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller is powerless.
 - c. No batteries may be used to for the backup of the RTC.
14. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller for Variable Air Volume (VAV) applications

- a. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller for VAV applications shall include a built-in 'flow thru' differential pressure transducer.
- b. The VAV differential pressure transducer shall have a measurement range of 0 to 1 in. W.C. and measurement accuracy of $\pm 5\%$ at 0.001 to 1 in. W.C. and a minimum resolution of 0.001 in. W.C., ensuring primary air flow conditions shall be controlled and maintained to within $\pm 5\%$ of setpoint at the specified minimum and maximum air flow parameters.
- c. The BACnet/IP FieldBus controller for VAV applications shall support a dedicated commissioning tool for air flow balancing
- d. The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller for VAV applications shall require no programming for air balancing algorithm.
- e. All balancing parameters shall be synchronized in NSC.
15. Each BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall have a minimum of 10% spare capacity for each point type represented on the controller for future point connection.
16. Power Requirements.: 24VDC (21 to 33 VDC) and 24 VAC $\pm 20\%$ with local transformer power.
- F. Commissioning Tool - The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall be supported via a dedicate mobile based commissioning tool for configuration, programming, air balancing and I/O checkout
 1. The Commissioning Tool shall be supported across: iOS, Android and Windows 10 platforms
 2. The Commissioning Tool shall be available for download on App Store, Google Store and Windows Store
 3. Commissioning Tool Interface to BACnet/IP Fieldbus controllers shall be via a Bluetooth adapter interface through the Intelligent Space Sensor or via a Wi-Fi access point on the LAN
 4. Functionality
 - a. Device Configuration – the Commissioning Tool shall be able to set or edit all Network configurations associated with the BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller
 - b. Programming – The Commissioning Tool shall be able to load offline engineered applications directly into the controller directly
 - c. Air Balancing:
 - 1) The Commissioning Tool shall allow the air balancer to manually control the action of the actuator including the following function: open VAV damper, close VAV damper, open all VAV dampers, and close all VAV dampers.
 - 2) The Commissioning Tool shall be able to generate Air Balancing report
 - d. IO Checkout
 - 1) The Commissioning Tool shall be able to support overriding of the outputs and reading value of inputs live
 - 2) The Commissioning Tool shall be able to support generation of I/O checkout report
 - e. There shall be no limit to the number of Commissioning Tools that can be used on a network segment, however, one connection per controller is recommended
- G. Intelligent Space Sensors - The BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller shall support a dedicated RJ45 communication port to communicate and power up to 4 intelligent wall mount sensors without the use of on-board inputs or outputs
 1. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall communicate with the BACnet/IP Fieldbus controller through the sensor port and via category 5 or category 6 cable
 2. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall provide 2 RJ45 communication ports that will allow communication with parent BACnet/IP Field controller upstream and additional Intelligent Space Sensors downstream
 3. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall provide ambient space condition sensing without the use of hardware I/O
- H. Each Intelligent Space Sensor shall provide a color touch display with:
 1. Minimum 61 mm (2.4") by 61 mm (2.4") display
 2. Backlit
- I. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall be capable of displaying measured space temperature from 0 to 50 °C (32 to 122 °F) with accuracy of ± 0.2 °C (± 0.4 °F) selectable for 0.1 or 1 degree display resolution of °F or °C
 1. Sensing Element: 10k Type 3 Thermistor

2. Accuracy of $\pm 0.2^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 0.4^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 3. Resolution: 0.1 or 1 degree display resolution
 4. Range: 0 to 50°C (32 to 122°F)
- J. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall have the option for humidity sensor support sensing humidity from 0 % RH to 100 % RH Digital humidity indication (selectable for 0.1 or 1% RH with selectable display resolution of 0.1 or 1 % RH)
1. Accuracy: $\pm 2\%$ RH
 2. Resolution: 0.1 or 1 % RH
 3. Range: 0 % RH to 100 % RH
- K. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall have the option for support of CO2 sensor with display resolution with 0 to 2000 ppm resolution
1. Accuracy: $\pm 30\text{ ppm} \pm 2\%$ of measured value
 2. Range: 0 to 2,000 ppm
 3. Operating elevation: 0 to 16,000 ft.
 4. Temperature dependence: 0.11% FS per $^{\circ}\text{F}$
 5. Stability: $< 2\%$ of FS over life of sensor (15 years)
 6. Sensing method: Non-dispersive infrared (NDIR), diffusion sampling
- L. The Intelligent Space Sensor shall have the option for motion sensor
- M. Display options: The Intelligent Space Sensor shall be capable of displaying the following elements:
1. Space temperature
 2. Cooling space temperature set point
 3. Heating space temperature set point
 4. Current heating or cooling mode
 5. Current occupancy mode
 6. Fan speed
 7. Current time
- N. Commissioning Tool Interface – the Intelligent Space Sensor shall support a Bluetooth adaptor interface to allow connectivity of a commissioning tool.

2.5 DDC SENSORS AND POINT HARDWARE

- A. General: Where indicated on the drawings, schedules or sequence of operations, provide equipment that conforms to the following specifications:
- B. Temperature Sensors:
1. All temperature devices shall use precision thermistors accurate to $\pm 0.36^{\circ}\text{F}$ over a range of -30 to 230°F .
 2. Standard space sensors shall be provided in an off-white enclosure for mounting on a standard electrical box.
 3. Where manual override of unoccupied mode of control is indicated on the drawings or sequence of operation, provide a push button for selecting after hours operation.
 4. Where manual adjustment to the setpoint is indicated on the drawings or sequence of operation, provide slider with $\pm$ programmable scale
 5. Where a local display is indicated on the drawings or sequence of operation, the sensor shall incorporate LCD display for viewing the space temperature.
 6. Where digital setpoint adjustment and/or other operator selectable parameters are indicated on the drawings or sequence of operation, provide a sensor with built in buttons and digital display. The sensor shall be programmable to provide custom function as specified.
 7. Duct temperature sensors shall incorporate a thermistor bead embedded at the tip of a stainless-steel tube. Probe style duct sensors shall be used in air handling applications where the air stream temperature is consistent and is not stratified.
 8. Averaging sensors shall be employed in all mixing plenum applications and in any other application where the temperature might otherwise be stratified. The averaging sensor tube shall contain at least four thermistor sensors.

9. Immersion sensors shall be employed for measurement of temperature in all chilled water, hot water and glycol applications. Thermal wells shall be brass or stainless steel for non-corrosive fluids below 250 degrees F and 300 series stainless steel for all other applications.
- C. Humidity Sensors:
1. Humidity sensors shall be polymer resistance type.
 2. Space humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 05 to 95% with accuracy of +/- 2% RH.
 3. Duct sensors and Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 05 to 95% RH with accuracy of +/- 3% RH. Sensors shall be suitable for ambient temperature conditions of -40 to 212°F.
 4. Equipment shall be able to demonstrate that accuracy is NIST traceable calibration.
- D. Pressure Sensors:
1. Air pressure or differential air pressure measurements in the range of 0 to 10" water column shall be accurate to +/- 1% of range using a solid-state sensing element. The range of the instrument selected shall be 2 times the operating pressure of the sensed variable. Acceptable manufacturer shall be Schneider model EPU305.
 2. Liquid pressure or differential liquid pressure measurements shall be accurate to +/- 0.25% of range using a solid-state sensing element. The range of the instrument selected shall be 2 times the operating pressure of the sensed variable. Unit shall be provided with isolation and bypass manifold for start-up and maintenance operations. Acceptable manufacturer shall be Schneider model EPWR420-LCD.
 3. Steam pressure measurements shall be accurate to +/- 0.13% of range using a solid-state sensing element. The range of the instrument selected shall be 2 times the operating pressure of the sensed variable. Unit shall be provided with isolation and bypass manifold for start-up and maintenance operations. Acceptable manufacturer shall be Setra model C-207.
- E. Airflow Probes:
1. Provide an array of airflow traverse probes where indicated, capable of continuously monitoring the fan or duct capacities (CFM) they serve. Each airflow traverse probe shall contain multiple total and static pressure sensors located along the exterior surface of the cylindrical probe and internally connected to their respective averaging manifolds. The flow sensors shall not protrude beyond the surface of the probe(s) and shall be the offset type for static pressure and the chamfered impact type for total pressure measurement. The airflow sensing probe's measurement accuracy shall not be affected by directional flow having pitch and/or yaw angles up to 30°. Each airflow traverse probe shall be of extruded aluminum construction and furnished with mounting plate(s), gasket and signal fittings suitable for HVAC duct installation.
 2. The airflow traverse probe shall not induce a pressure drop in excess of 0.03" w.c. at 2000 FPM, nor measurably contribute to sound levels within the duct. Total and static pressure sensors shall be located at the centers of equal areas (for rectangular duct) or at equal concentric area centers (for circular ducts) along the probe length. The airflow traverse probe shall be capable of producing steady, non-pulsating signals of total and static pressure without need for flow corrections or factors, with an accuracy of 2-3% of actual flow, over a velocity range of 400 to 4000 FPM.
 3. Provide the minimum number of probes indicated: Duct height 8 – 12", 1 probe; 13 – 30", 2 probes; 31 – 54", 3 probes; 55 – 84", 4 probes; 85 – 120", 5 probes; 121 – 180", 6 probes.
 4. The airflow traverse probe shall be the VOLU-probe as manufactured by Air Monitor Corporation, or equivalent.
- F. Liquid Flow Measurement:
1. Hi Liquid flow measurement devices shall be accurate to +/- 0.75% over a turn down ratio of 10:1. Insertion probe sensing element shall be made of 316l stainless steel. The sensing element shall have an elliptical shape that eliminates the separation point at a fixed or variable location ahead of the static pressure pick up point. Device shall only require one welded insert to mounted to piping system. Acceptable manufacturer shall be Preso, model BAR.
- G. High Limit Thermostats:

1. High limit thermostats shall be located as directed and shall be manual reset type set at 120°F in the return and 180°F in the discharge. Thermostats shall be double pole so as to provide input capability for alarm at the BAS.
- H. Low Limit Thermostats:
 1. Safety low limit thermostats shall be vapor pressure type with a 20-foot minimum element. Element shall respond to the lowest temperature sensed by any one-foot section. Provide one thermostat for each 25 square foot of coil area.
 2. Low limit thermostat shall be manual reset and shall be double pole so as to provide input capability for alarm at the BAS.
- I. Current Sensing Status Switches:
 1. Current status switches shall be used to monitor the run status of fans, pumps, motors and electrical loads. Acceptable manufacturer is Veris or approved equal.
- J. Current Measurement Devices:
 1. Measurement of three-phase power shall be accomplished with a kW/kWh transducer. The instrument shall utilize direct current transformer inputs to calculate the instantaneous value (kW) and a pulsed output proportional to the energy usage (kWh). Provide Veris Model 6000 Power Transducer or approved equal.
- K. Carbon Monoxide and Carbon Dioxide Sensing Devices:
 1. Space or duct mounted carbon dioxide (CO₂) sensor shall be a dual element thermally compensated Lithium Tantalate IR detector and shall contain an on board relay with field adjustable trip point and adjustable time delay. The sensor shall monitor CO₂ over a range of 0 – 3000 PPM, have an accuracy of +/-3% and operate within the range of 32-104°F and 0-95% RH. The sensor shall have a calibration accuracy of 0.5%, a repeatability of no more than +/-20 PPM and a drift of no more than +/-2%. The sensor shall have a green LED for normal operation, and a red LED for relay, and a reset button. Where required by the drawings or specifications, provide an LCD display for displaying PPM level and field adjustable settings. Veris Product # CWE or equivalent.
 2. Wall mounted carbon monoxide (CO) sensor shall be microprocessor based (12-bit accuracy) and shall monitor CO over a range of 0-300 PPM (optional 200-500 PPM). The device shall have an accuracy of +/-3% (electrochemical type) or +/-5% (solid state type) and operate within the range of 32-122°F and 0-95% RH. The sensor shall have a calibration accuracy of 0.5%. Where required by the drawings or specifications, provide an LCD display for displaying PPM level and system configuration information and/or audible alarm with programmable trip point and disable jumper. Dwyer Product # GSTA-C-Dor equivalent.
- L. Refrigerant Loss Monitor
 1. Provide infrared refrigerant loss monitor to allow compliance with ASHRAE 15. Monitor shall detect all halogen based refrigerants, and refrigerant types shall be field changeable without recalibration. Monitor shall provide continuous digital display of system status and shall provide analog output for remote monitoring. Provide system malfunction detection and indication, and visual alarm indication. SenTech Series IR-SNIF or equivalent.
- M. Pneumatic Digital Transducers:
 1. Device shall provide a pneumatic output proportional to an analog output signal generated by the computer controller. Software algorithms shall compute the position of the actuator and the actuator shall be adjusted to that position. "Bleed Feed" Transducers that do not respond proportionally to a computed proportional output of the computer are not acceptable.
 2. Device shall fail to Zero PSI on power or signal failure
 3. Device shall use no air at steady state output position
 4. Device shall be provided with Zero and Span adjustment and Manual override positioning capability.
 5. Device shall be capable of generating a 0 to 10Vdc analog output proportional to pneumatic output
- N. Control Valves:

1. Provide automatic control valves suitable for the specified controlled media (steam, water or glycol). Provide valves that mate and match the material of the connected piping.
 2. Control valves shall meet the heating and cooling loads specified, and close off against the differential pressure conditions within the application. Valves should be sized to operate accurately and with stability from 10 to 100% of the maximum design flow. Valves shall be selected to provide an initial pressure drop of not more than 4 psig for water applications. For low pressure steam application, the pressure drop shall be equal to the supply pressure minus the heating element design inlet pressure.
 3. Trim material shall be stainless steel.
 4. Actuators on all control valves shall be spring return to normal position pneumatic unless specifically stated otherwise. Actuators shall be sized to retain offset between nominal and actual spring range to 1.5 PSI.
 5. Normal position of both heating and cooling valves shall be open. Three Way valves shall be piped to fail open to both heating and cooling.
 6. Pneumatic actuators for two position radiation control, isolation of unit heaters or cabinet heaters shall be 2" diameter.
 7. For all other control valves, the pneumatic actuator shall be nominal 4" in diameter or larger as required to conform with nominal to actual spring range shift tolerance specified.
 8. Electric Bi-Directional actuators are acceptable on VAV Terminal Units and Reheat coil valve control if so noted.
 9. All electric actuators for applications other than VAV terminal units and Reheat Coil valve Control shall be Proportional analog 4-20Ma or 0-10Vdc input and shall be positioned to reflect the output value of the computer control system and shall be spring return to normal position.
- O. Dampers:
1. Automatic dampers furnished by the Building Automation Contractor shall be single or multiple blade as required. Dampers shall be installed by the HVAC Contractor under the supervision of the BAS Contractor. All blank-off plates and conversions necessary to install smaller than duct size dampers are the responsibility of the Sheet Metal Contractor.
 2. Damper frames shall be hat shaped channel, 4" deep constructed of 16-gauge galvanized steel. Stainless steel side seals, and sintered bronze, oil-impregnated bearings shall also be provided.
 3. Damper blades shall be 16-gauge galvanized steel and shall be 6" on center. Provide vinyl-grip seals on blades.
 4. Provide damper linkage that consists of 0.50" diameter steel, cadmium plated, and chromate treated pivots. Provide a 1/4-20 set-screw with a locking-patch to lock the pivots to a 0.31 diameter aluminum rod. Pivots shall rotate in a Celcon bearing. Blade brackets shall be 12-gauge cadmium plated steel. Blades shall be individually factory adjusted for maximum shut off.
 5. Provide axles that are steel, 0.350" diameter cadmium plated and driveshafts that are 1/2" diameter cadmium plated steel, extendable 6".
 6. For high performance applications, control dampers shall meet or exceed the UL Class I leakage rating.
 7. Control dampers shall be Ruskin, Arrow or approved equal.
 8. Unless otherwise noted, provide opposed blade dampers for modulating applications and parallel blade for two-position control.
- P. Electric Thermostats: Provide a low voltage thermostat for control of single zone heating and air conditioning unit as specified in the sequence of operation. Electric thermostats shall include a display of the current space temperature as well as a mechanism for adjusting the setpoint locally. Aquastats on unit heaters shall stop the fan when the water temperature is below 100°F. The control contractor may provide full DDC control of the unit heaters in lieu of electric thermostats and use the global water temperature for low temperature interlock if it is offered at no change in price.
- Q. Steam Flow Measuring- Yokagawa Vortex Shedding Flow Meter per application.
- R. Hot or Chilled Water Flow Measuring- Onicon Electromagnetic Meters, F-3500 series.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. General: Installation of the building automation system shall be performed by the Temperature Controls Contractor or a Subcontractor. However, all installation shall be under the personal supervision of the Temperature Controls Contractor. The Temperature Controls Contractor shall certify all work is proper and complete. The design, scheduling, coordination, programming, training, and warranty requirements for the project be performed by the Temperature Controls Contractor.
- B. Demolition: Remove controls which do not remain as part of the building automation system, including all associated abandoned wiring, conduit, and pneumatic tubing. The Owner will inform the Contractor of any equipment that is to be removed that will remain the property of the Owner. This equipment shall be handled with care so as not to damage it. All other equipment that is removed shall be disposed of by the Contractor.
- C. Cleanup: At the completion of the work, all equipment pertinent to this section shall be checked and thoroughly cleaned, and all other areas shall be cleaned around equipment provided under this section. Clean the exposed surfaces of tubing, hangers, and other exposed metal of grease, plaster, or other foreign materials.

3.2 WIRING, CONDUIT AND CABLE

- A. ALL wiring (high voltage, 50 volts and greater) and conduit is to be installed in accordance with local and national electrical codes and Division 26 (Electrical division) specification.
 - 1. All temperature control cable less than 50 volts is to be considered low voltage.
 - 2. All low voltage cable is to be run in conduit in any non-accessible concealed space and within mechanical rooms. Wiring above 10 ft or within accessible areas (ceilings, crawl spaces) may be run exposed with proper support with bridle rings. Wiring is to be run parallel and perpendicular to building lines in a neat and workmanlike manner and bundled with nylon tie wraps.
 - 3. Conduit sleeves shall be run through any concrete or block walls for low voltage cable to be run through such walls.
 - 4. All low voltage cable shall be run separate from high voltage cable. All microprocessor communications cable shall be run separate from any low or high voltage cable.
 - 5. All runs of multi-conductor low voltage wiring shall have at least one pair of spare conductors.
 - 6. Any cable running in plenum rated areas shall be plenum rated cable.
 - 7. Infinet and BacNET communication wiring shall be Cardinal Supply PN F2401-L120 or Connect Air PN W241P-2050FRIB.
 - 8. BacNET IP communication wiring shall be Schneider PN ACT4P6UCP1ARXGR.
 - 9. Sensor wiring shall be 300 Volt 18 Ga. Min., Twisted, Stranded, 2-Conductor Plenum Rated Wiring. Cardinal Supply PN D1801 or equivalent.
 - 10. All communications cable shall be plenum rated. Refer to Section 27 10 05 cabling requirements.
 - 11. Wires and tubing shall be installed a minimum of three (3) inches from hot water, steam, or condensate piping.
 - 12. A true earth ground shall be available in the building. Ground shall be run from the source electrical panel ground to each temperature control panel or controller.
 - 13. Metallic surface raceway may be used in finished areas on non accessible masonry walls AS APPROVED BY OWNER AND/OR ARCHITECT/ENGINEER. All surface raceway in finished areas shall be color matched to the existing finish within the limitations of standard manufacturer's colors.

3.3 SENSOR AND ENCLOSURE LOCATIONS

- A. The location of sensors is per mechanical and architectural drawings.
- B. Space humidity or temperature sensors will be mounted away from machinery generating heat, direct light and diffuser air streams.
- C. Outdoor air sensors will be mounted on the north building face directly in the outside air. Install these sensors such that the effects of heat radiated from the building or sunlight is minimized.

- D. Field enclosures shall be located immediately adjacent to the controller panel(s) to which it is being interfaced.

3.4 HARDWARE INSTALLATION

A. Installation Practices for Field Devices:

1. Actuators shall be firmly mounted to give positive movement, and linkage shall be adjusted to give smooth continuous movement throughout 100 percent of the actuator stroke.
2. Actuators shall be stroked ~5%, tightened and returned to normal position to give a positive seal.
3. Relay outputs shall include transient suppression across all coils. Suppression devices shall limit transients to 150% of the rated coil voltage.
4. Water line mounted sensors shall be removable without shutting down the system in which they are installed.
5. For duct static pressure sensors, the high-pressure port shall be connected to a metal static pressure probe inserted into the duct pointing upstream. The low-pressure port shall be left open to the plenum area at the point that the high-pressure port is tapped into the ductwork.
6. For building static pressure sensors, the high-pressure port shall be inserted into the space via a metal tube. The low-pressure port shall be piped to the outside of the building.

B. Enclosures:

1. For all I/O requiring field interface devices, these devices where practical shall be mounted in a field interface panel (FIP). The Contractor shall provide an enclosure that protects the device(s) from dust and moisture and conceals integral wiring and moving parts.
2. FIPs shall contain power supplies for sensors, interface relays and contactors, safety circuits, and I/P transducers.
3. The FIP enclosure shall be of steel construction with baked enamel finish, NEMA 1 rated with a hinged door and keyed lock. All locks shall be keyed identically.
4. All outside mounted enclosures shall meet the NEMA-4 rating.
5. Provide all FIP locations on as built drawings. Drawings shall indicate FIP location, panel number and where power is being supplied from.
6. Provide adhesive label on all FIP panels indicating where source power panel originates from and number of circuit breaker.
7. FIP enclosure shall have Arc Flash covers on all circuits over 120 volts.
8. All FIPs located above and in concealed accessible locations shall have a marking sticker indicating a panel is above the acoustical dropped ceiling or access panel.
9. Mount FIPs in locations where door on FIP can be opened completely to allow access to panel components.

3.5 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION

- A. General: The Contractor shall provide all labor necessary to install, initialize, start-up and debug all system software as described in this section. This includes any operating system software or other third-party software necessary for successful operation of the system.
- B. Database Configuration: The Contractor shall provide all labor to configure those portions of the database that are required by the point list and sequence of operation.
- C. Graphic user interface: Unless otherwise directed by the owner, the Contractor shall provide color graphic displays as depicted in the schematic drawings for each system and floor plan. For each system or floor plan, the display shall contain the associated points identified in the point list and allow for setpoint changes as required by the owner.

3.6 EXISTING CONTROL DEVICES

- A. The bid for the control work shall be based on the premise that existing control devices (i.e. valves & damper operators) are operational and are not in need of repair or replacement, unless otherwise noted.

1. This contractor shall notify the Owner's Representative of existing control devices that need to be replaced or repaired that may be noticed in the process of installation of new work.

3.7 COMMISSIONING AND SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Point to Point Checkout: Each I/O device (both field mounted and those located in FIPs) shall be inspected and verified for proper installation and functionality. A checkout sheet itemizing each device shall be filled out, dated and approved by the Project Manager for submission to the owner or owner's representative.
- B. Controller and Workstation Checkout: A field checkout of all controllers and front-end equipment (computers, printers, modems, etc.) shall be conducted to verify proper operation of both hardware and software. A checkout sheet itemizing each device and a description of the associated tests shall be prepared and submitted to the owner or owner's representative by the completion of the project.
- C. System Acceptance Testing:
 1. Perform an operational test of each unique graphic display and report to verify that the item exists, that the appearance and content are correct, and that any special features work as intended. Submit a Test Results Sheet to the owner.
 2. Perform an operational test of each third-party interface that has been included as part of the automation system. Verify that all points are properly polled, that alarms have been configured, and that any associated graphics and reports have been completed. If the interface involves a file transfer over Ethernet, test any logic that controls the transmission of the file, and verify the content of the specified information.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 09 34
VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Variable-frequency motor controllers for low-voltage (600 V and less) AC motor applications.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- B. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEC 60529 - Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures (IP Code); 1989 (Corrigendum 2019).
- B. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- C. NEMA IA 10030 - Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures; 2024.
- D. NEMA IS 10033 - Industrial Control and Systems: Adjustable-Speed Drives; 2026.
- E. NEMA IS 10034 - Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Adjustable Speed Drive Systems; 2022 (Reapproved 2025).
- F. NEMA IS 10035 - Application Guide for AC Adjustable Speed Drive Systems; 2021 (Reaffirmed 2025).
- G. NEMA ICS 61800-2 - Adjustable Speed Electrical Power Drive Systems, Part 2: General Requirements-Rating Specifications for Low Voltage Adjustable Frequency AC Power Drive Systems; 2005.
- H. NEMA MG 00001 - Motors and Generators; 2024.
- I. NETA ATS - Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2025.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. UL 508A - Industrial Control Panels; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 61800-5-1 - Standard for Adjustable Speed Electrical Power Drive Systems - Part 5-1: Safety Requirements – Electrical, Thermal, and Energy (Ed. 2); Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate work to provide motor controllers suitable for use with actual motors to be installed.
 - 2. Coordinate work to provide controllers and associated wiring suitable for interface with control devices to be installed.
 - 3. Coordinate arrangement with dimensions and clearance requirements of actual equipment to be installed.
 - 4. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with conductors to be installed.

5. Notify Architect of conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for motor controllers, enclosures, overcurrent protective devices, and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, voltage, controller sizes, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
- D. Derating Calculations: Indicate ratings adjusted for applicable service conditions.
- E. Specimen Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty.
- F. Manufacturer qualification statement.
- G. Installer qualification statement.
- H. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- I. Field quality control test reports.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on system operation, equipment programming and setup, replacement parts, and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- K. Executed Warranty: Submit documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- L. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of controllers and final equipment settings.
 1. Include nameplate data of actual installed motors and associated overload relay selections and settings.
 2. Motor Circuit Protectors: Include magnetic instantaneous trip settings.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements at project site.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company with minimum three years documented experience with variable-frequency motor control systems of similar size, type, and complexity; manufacturer's authorized installer.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.

- B. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to internal components, enclosure, and finish.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within required service conditions during and after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide minimum 18 month manufacturer warranty covering repair or replacement due to defective materials or workmanship.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Provide variable-frequency motor control system consisting of required controller assemblies, operator interfaces, control power transformers, instrumentation and control wiring, sensors, accessories, system programming, etc. as necessary for complete operating system.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended.
- C. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller:
 - 1. Configuration: Packaged controller, nonbypass.
 - 2. Power Conversion System: Diode-based, 6-pulse type.
 - 3. Control Method: Vector; open-loop, without feedback.
 - 4. Filtering: Provide input/line reactor and output/load reactor.
- D. Controller Assemblies: Comply with NEMA IS 10033, NEMA IS 10034, and NEMA ICS 61800-2; list and label as complying with UL 61800-5-1 or UL 508A as applicable.
- E. Provide controllers selected for actual installed motors and coupled mechanical loads in accordance with NEMA IS 10035, NEMA MG 00001 Part 30, and recommendations of manufacturers of both controller and load, where not in conflict with specified requirements; considerations include, but are not limited to:
 - 1. Motor type (e.g., induction, reluctance, and permanent magnet); consider NEMA MG 00001 design letter or inverter duty rating for induction motors.
 - 2. Motor load type (e.g., constant torque, variable torque, and constant horsepower); consider duty cycle, impact loads, and high inertia loads.
 - 3. Motor nameplate data.
 - 4. Requirements for speed control range, speed regulation, and braking.
 - 5. Motor suitability for bypass starting method, where applicable.
- F. Devices on Load Side of Controller: Suitable for application across full controller output frequency range.
- G. Operating Requirements:
 - 1. Input Voltage Tolerance: Plus/minus 10 percent of nominal.
 - 2. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus/minus 5 percent of nominal.
 - 3. Efficiency: Minimum of 96 percent at full speed and load.
 - 4. Input Displacement Power Factor: Minimum of 0.96 throughout speed and load range.
 - 5. Overload Rating:
 - a. Variable Torque Loads: Minimum of 110 percent of nominal for 60 seconds.
 - b. Constant Torque Loads: Minimum of 150 percent of nominal for 60 seconds.
- H. Power Conversion System: Microprocessor-based, pulse width modulation type.

VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS FOR HVAC

- I. Control System:
 - 1. Provide microprocessor-based control system for automatic control, monitoring, and protection of motors. Include sensors, wiring, and connections necessary for functions and status/alarm indications specified.
 - 2. Provide integral operator interface for controller programming, display of status/alarm indications, fault reset, and local control functions including motor run/stop, motor forward/reverse selection, motor speed increase/decrease, and local/remote control selection.
 - 3. Control Functions:
 - a. Control Method: Selectable vector and scalar/volts per hertz unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1) Scalar/Volts per Hertz Control: Provide IR compensation for improved low-speed torque.
 - 2) Vector Control: Provide selectable autotuning function.
 - b. Adjustable acceleration and deceleration time; linear and S-curve ramps; selectable coast to stop.
 - c. Selectable braking control; DC injection or flux braking.
 - d. Adjustable minimum/maximum speed limits.
 - e. Adjustable pulse width modulation switching carrier frequency.
 - f. Adjustable motor slip compensation.
 - g. Selectable autorestart after noncritical fault; programmable number of time delay between restart attempts.
 - 4. Status Indications:
 - a. Motor run/stop status.
 - b. Motor forward/reverse status.
 - c. Local/remote control status.
 - d. Output voltage.
 - e. Output current.
 - f. Output frequency.
 - g. DC bus voltage.
 - h. Motor speed.
 - 5. Protective Functions/Alarm Indications:
 - a. Overcurrent.
 - b. Motor overload.
 - c. Undervoltage.
 - d. Overvoltage.
 - e. Controller overtemperature.
 - f. Input/output phase loss.
 - g. Output short circuit protection.
 - h. Output ground fault protection.
 - 6. Inputs:
 - a. Digital Input(s): Three.
 - b. Analog Input(s): Two.
 - 7. Outputs:
 - 8. Features:
 - a. Password-protected security access.
 - b. Event log.
- J. Power Conditioning/Filtering:
 - 1. Provide DC link choke or input/line reactor for each controller unless otherwise indicated or required.
 - 2. Reactor Impedance: 3 percent, unless otherwise indicated or required.
- K. Packaged Controllers: Controllers factory-mounted in separate enclosure with externally operable disconnect and specified accessories.
 - 1. Disconnects: Circuit breaker or disconnect switch type.
 - a. Disconnect Switches: Fusible type or nonfusible type with separate input fuses.
 - b. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in OFF position. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening cover with disconnect in ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.

- c. Provide auxiliary interlock for disconnection of external control power sources where applicable.
- 2. Provide door-mounted remote operator interface.
- L. Service Conditions:
 - 1. Provide controllers and associated components suitable for operation under following service conditions without derating:
 - a. Altitude: Less than 3,300 feet.
 - b. Ambient Temperature: Between 32 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
 - 2. Provide controllers and associated components suitable for operation at indicated ratings under service conditions at installed location.
- M. Short Circuit Current Rating:
 - 1. Provide line/input reactors where specified by manufacturer for required short circuit current rating.
- N. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with conductors to be installed.
- O. Enclosures:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA IA 10030.
 - 2. NEMA EN 10250 Environment Type or Equivalent IEC 60529 Rating: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for following installation locations:
 - 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Cooling: Forced air or natural convection as determined by manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that ratings of controllers are consistent with indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to accept controllers.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NEMA IS 10034 and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum cable length between controller and motor.
- D. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- E. Install controllers plumb and level.
- F. Install field-installed devices, components, and accessories.
- G. Where accessories are not self-powered, provide control power source as indicated or as required to complete installation.
- H. Set field-adjustable settings of controllers and associated components according to installed motor requirements, in accordance with recommendations of manufacturers of controller and load.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- B. Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.17. Insulation-resistance test on control wiring listed as optional is not required.
- C. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective controllers or associated components.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from controller enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

3.6 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training, for additional requirements.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed controllers from subsequent construction operations.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 93
SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This section defines the manner and method by which controls function.
- B. Sequence of operation for:
 - 1. Air terminal units.
 - 2. Time Schedule Programs
 - 3. Alarm Points.
 - 4. Optimum start-stop.
 - 5. Setbacks
 - 6. Maintenance Management
 - 7. Scheduling
 - 8. Chiller Plant (AC-1)
 - 9. Chiller Plant (AC-2)
 - 10. Constant Volume Air Handling Unit (Heating, Cooling, Ventilating)
 - 11. Variable Volume Air Handling Unit (Cooling, Reheat, Ventilating)
 - 12. Constant Volume Blower Coil Unit (Heating, Cooling, Ventilating)
 - 13. Unit Ventilator (Heating, Cooling, Ventilating)
 - 14. Dehumidification Mode (Rooftop Units)
 - 15. Rooftop Unit (Heating, Cooling, Ventilating)
 - 16. Rooftop Unit (Heating, Cooling, Ventilating) RTU-3
 - 17. Rooftop Unit (Dedicated Outdoor Air System)
 - 18. Active Chilled Beams
 - 19. Exhaust Fan Control
 - 20. Induction units.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 09 23 - Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Sequence of Operation Documentation: Submit written sequence of operation for entire HVAC system and each piece of equipment.
 - 1. Preface: 1 or 2 paragraph overview narrative of the system describing its purpose, components and function.
 - 2. State each sequence in small segments and give each segment a unique number for referencing in Functional Test procedures; provide a complete description regardless of the completeness and clarity of the sequences specified in Contract Documents.
 - 3. Include at least the following sequences:
 - a. Start-up.
 - b. Warm-up mode.
 - c. Normal operating mode.
 - d. Unoccupied mode.
 - e. Shutdown.
 - f. Capacity control sequences and equipment staging.
 - g. Temperature and pressure control, such as setbacks, setups, resets, etc.

- h. Detailed sequences for all control strategies, such as economizer control, optimum start/stop, staging, optimization, demand limiting, etc.
 - i. Effects of power or equipment failure with all standby component functions.
 - j. Sequences for all alarms and emergency shut downs.
 - k. Seasonal operational differences and recommendations.
 - l. Interactions and interlocks with other systems.
- 4. Include initial and recommended values for all adjustable settings, setpoints and parameters that are typically set or adjusted by operating staff; and any other control settings or fixed values, delays, etc. that will be useful during testing and operating the equipment.
- 5. For packaged controlled equipment, include manufacturer's furnished sequence of operation amplified as required to describe the relationship between the packaged controls and the control system, indicating which points are adjustable control points and which points are only monitored.
- 6. Include schedules, if known.
- C. Control System Diagrams: Submit graphic schematic of the control system showing each control component and each component controlled, monitored, or enabled.
 - 1. Label with settings, adjustable range of control and limits.
 - 2. Include flow diagrams for each control system, graphically depicting control logic.
 - 3. Include the system and component layout of all equipment that the control system monitors, enables or controls, even if the equipment is primarily controlled by packaged or integral controls.
 - 4. Include draft copies of graphic displays indicating mechanical system components, control system components, and controlled function status and value.
 - 5. Include all monitoring, control and virtual points specified in elsewhere.
 - 6. Include a key to all abbreviations.
- D. Points List: Submit list of all control points indicating at least the following for each point.
 - 1. Name of controlled system.
 - 2. Point abbreviation.
 - 3. Point description; such as dry bulb temperature, airflow, etc.
 - 4. Display unit.
 - 5. Control point or setpoint (Yes / No); i.e. a point that controls equipment and can have its setpoint changed.
 - 6. Monitoring point (Yes / No); i.e. a point that does not control or contribute to the control of equipment but is used for operation, maintenance, or performance verification.
 - 7. Intermediate point (Yes / No); i.e. a point whose value is used to make a calculation which then controls equipment, such as space temperatures that are averaged to a virtual point to control reset.
 - 8. Calculated point (Yes / No); i.e. a "virtual" point generated from calculations of other point values.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and setpoints of controls, including changes to sequences made after submission of shop drawings.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design system under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed at the State of New York.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 TIME SCHEDULE PROGRAMS

- A. The programs for the EMS shall schedule each systems operation on an hourly basis controlled through daily, weekly and/or monthly schedules. Schedules for each individual system, room or area shall be easily programmed and modified by the user on a calendar-like display at the host computer.
- B. The programs shall store 60 months of schedules.
- C. An internal time clocks shall automatically compensate for daylight savings time and calendars generated by software shall automatically compensate for leap years.

3.2 ALARM POINTS

- A. All temperature inputs to the DDC system (space, return air, mixed air, discharge air) shall be alarmed at the host computer if the temperature is out of range 10° F. (adj.) above or below setpoint.
- B. Fan status shall be monitored by a current sensing switch or differential pressure switch. If the fan is scheduled to run and the status is not proven, an alarm condition shall be shown at the host computer.
- C. Other alarm points are specifically addressed per individual sequences of operation.
- D. All points can be individually alarmed as required by owner's staff.

3.3 OPTIMUM START PROGRAM

- A. Each system shall have independent modular program.
- B. The program shall minimize the total energy consumption during daily start-up of each heating/cooling system.
- C. A control algorithm shall compare the outside air temperature to space temperature to calculate start time for each air handling system.
- D. The start time for each system shall bring its respective zone to occupied setpoint at the time of occupied mode start.
- E. The optimum start program shall be adjustable to the rate structure of the local energy company.

3.4 OPTIMUM STOP PROGRAM

- A. Each system shall have independent modular program.
- B. The program shall minimize the total energy consumption during daily shut-down of each heating/cooling system. A control algorithm shall compare the outside air temperature to space temperature to calculate a stop time for each air handling system. At no time shall the unit be shut down while a space is occupied.
- C. The stop time for each system shall shut-down its respective zone as early as possible without letting the temperature drift out of the specified comfort range.

3.5 DAY/NIGHT SETBACK

- A. The day/night setback will consist of lowering the space heating setpoint and raising the space cooling setpoint during the unoccupied mode, thereby reducing the heating and cooling energy requirements. The occupied and unoccupied areas will be specified by the owner, and will be coordinated with the control system. The setback shall be 55 degrees F in the heating mode and 85 degrees F in the cooling mode per the applicable Energy Code of the State of New York. The occupied heating set point shall be 70 and the occupied cooling setpoint will be 76.

3.6 MAINTENANCE MANAGEMENT

- A. The control system will continuously totalize hours for selected equipment controlled and/or monitored for use by the maintenance management program.

3.7 EQUIPMENT SCHEDULING

- A. Equipment shall be 7 days, 24 hours schedules with separate holiday hours.
- B. There shall be capability for five different holiday schedules which can be selected from the occupancy schedule graphic.
- C. Holidays shall be programmed so that they shall need a minimum of manual adjustment year to year, and can easily be modified at front end if necessary.
- D. All schedule programming shall reside in local controllers, but shall be configurable from the front end.

3.8 CHILLER PLANT (AC-1)

- A. The loop set point shall be set by the DDC based on a reset schedule header loop. The DDC shall interface with the chiller control module to enable and disable the plant. The DDC shall schedule and monitor loop head temperature and shall monitor chiller functions and alarm failers.
- B. Chiller Plant Enable/Disable
 - 1. The chiller plant will be enabled at an outdoor air temperature above 70° F (adjustable).
- C. Chilled Water Pump Control
 - 1. Anytime the chiller plant is enabled the chilled water pump shall be enabled.
 - 2. If after one minute, proof of flow fails disable the chiller plant and generate an alarm at the operator interface.
 - 3. Modulate system VFD as required to maintain a constant downstream static pressure.

3.9 CHILLER PLANT (AC-2)

- A. The loop set point shall be set by the DDC based on a reset schedule header loop. The DDC shall interface with the chiller control module to enable and disable the plant. The DDC shall schedule and monitor loop head temperature and shall monitor chiller functions and alarm failers.
- B. The chiller loop has a 3-way control valve that shall modulate to maintain a 58 degrees in the dual temp loop. The chiller loop shall have a constant volume primary pump that shall be enabled anytime the chiller plant is enabled. The chiller loop shall maintain a tempature of 42 degrees.
- C. Chiller Plant Enable/Disable
 - 1. The chiller plant will be enabled at an outdoor air temperature above 70° F (adjustable).
- D. Chilled Water Pump Control
 - 1. Anytime the chiller plant is enabled the chilled water pump shall be enabled.If after one minute, proof of flow fails disable the chiller plant and generate an alarm at the operator interface.Modulate system VFD as required to maintain a constant downstream static pressure.

3.10 CONSTANT VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (HEATING, COOLING, VENTILATING):

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
- B. Demand Control Ventilation (If equipped with CO2 Sensors)
 - 1. 30 minutes prior to scheduled occupancy a preoccupancy purge cycle shall occur for 30 minutes with the outside air damper open to the ventilation rate as scheduled.
 - 2. The DDC system shall modulate the outdoor air and return air damper to maintain the preset CO2 level in the space. The CO2 level in the space shall be determined by averaging the CO2 sensor readings within the space.

3. The economizer function shall override the ventilation control when free cooling is available.
4. The outside air damper shall modulate open beyond the minimum setting starting at an interior CO2 concentration of not greater than 100 ppm over that of the outside air and be open for full occupancy when CO2 concentrations reach the upper limit of 500 ppm above ambient conditions.
5. Post purge cycle shall occur when the space goes from occupied to unoccupied. The occupied mode shall not change to unoccupied mode until the space CO2 level drops to ambient level.
6. In all cases the CO2 sensor with the highest ppm level shall control ventilation.
7. Upon a rise in CO2 level beyond setpoint the outdoor air damper shall modulate open until the setpoint is satisfied.
8. Upon a fall in CO2 level below the setpoint the outdoor air damper shall modulate closed.

C. Heating Mode:

1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the heating coil valve shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the duct mounted/heating control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under economizer control to satisfy the space setpoint. The unit return air damper shall modulate closed.
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain the desired minimum mixed air temperature.
2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, unit heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.

D. Cooling Mode:

1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The heating valve shall be closed.
 - c. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - d. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under control of the economizer control. The unit return air damper shall modulate closed.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature the unit mounted coil shall modulate to provide chilled water to the coil. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit shall be disabled.

- E. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air.

3.11 VARIABLE VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (COOLING, REHEAT, VENTILATING)

A. General:

1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
3. Blower speed shall be set from a 0-10V signal from the DDC system.

B. Heating Mode:

1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously under control of a unit mounted VFD.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air (scheduled value with all VAV's at min flow).

- c. On a fall in space temperature, the duct mounted heating coil valve associated with that zone shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under economizer control to satisfy the space setpoint.
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain desired minimum mixed air temperature.
 - g. A separate low limit sensor (discharge air) shall be installed with sensing element serpentine across the face of the coil, which shall assume control of the dampers and control valve. The outdoor air damper shall close and the return air damper shall open 100% open. The unit mounted control valve shall open 100% to the coil
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, duct mounted heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.
- C. Cooling Mode:
- 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously under control of the unit mounted VFD.
 - b. The heating valves shall be closed.
 - c. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air (scheduled value with all VAV's at full flow).
 - 2. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted refrigerant circuit shall be enabled. The VAV boxes shall modulate open and closed to maintain temperature. When VAV boxes modulate below the maximum CFM the unit outside air damper shall modulate open according to a critical space calculation per ASHRAE 62. Minimum ventilation rate indicated on the drawings are based on all boxes at full flow or all boxes at minimum flow.
 - 3. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit is inoperable.
- D. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When air fan coil unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air.

3.12 CONSTANT VOLUME BLOWER COIL UNIT (HEATING, COOLING, VENTILATING):

- A. General:
- 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
 - 3. Blower speed shall be set by a 0-10v signal from the DDC system. Blower speed shall be set at balancing and shall be fixed.
- B. Heating Mode:
- 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The BCU outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the unit heating coil valve shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the heating control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under economizer control to satisfy the space setpoint.
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain desired minimum mixed air temperature.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, unit heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.

- C. Cooling Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The heating valve shall be closed.
 - c. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - d. Upon a still further rise in space temperature the unit mounted coil shall modulate to provide chilled water to the coil. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit shall be disabled.
- D. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air.

3.13 UNIT VENTILATOR (HEATING, COOLING, VENTILATING)

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
 - 3. Blower speed will be set from a 0-10V signal from the DDC system.
- B. Heating Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the heating coil valve shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under economizer control to satisfy the space setpoint.
 - f. A separate low limit sensor (discharge air) shall be installed with sensing element serpentine across the face of the coil, which shall assume control of the dampers and control valve. The outdoor air damper shall close and the return air damper shall open 100% open. The unit mounted control valve shall open 100% to the coil
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.
- C. Cooling Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - c. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under control of the economizer control.
 - d. Upon a still further rise in space temperature the DX circuit shall energize..
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit is inoperable.
- D. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air.

3.14 DEHUMIDIFICATION MODE (ROOFTOP UNITS)

- A. Anytime the return air relative humidity is above 60% RH (adjustable) the unit shall go into dehumidification mode.
- B. Upon activation of dehumidification mode, the unit's dx circuit shall go to 100% capacity (adjustable) and the associated hot gas reheat shall modulate to maintain the desired discharge air temperature to satisfy the space setpoint. The outside air damper shall also be at the minimum required OA position.
- C. Once the return air relative humidity falls to 50% RH (adjustable) the unit shall return to normal occupied mode.

3.15 ROOFTOP UNIT (REHEAT, COOLING, VENTILATING)

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
- B. Heating Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The rooftop unit outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the unit heating coil valve shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the heating control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit shall enable.
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain desired minimum mixed air temperature.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.
- C. Cooling Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - c. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted dx coil shall energize.
 - d. Upon a fall in space temperature below set point the duct mounted electric coil shall energize.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit is inoperable.

3.16 ROOFTOP UNIT (REHEAT, COOLING, VENTILATING) RTU-3

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
 - 3. Cafeteria and Kitchen in Occupied Mode:
 - a. The cafeteria associated AAD shall open to allow for 5700 cfm to the cafeteria and the kitchen associated AAD shall open to allow for 2800 cfm to the kitchen.
 - b. The associated unit exhaust fan shall operate at 900 cfm less than the minimum outside air quantity
 - c. During economizing mode the associated unit exhaust shall operate at 900 cfm than the outside air quantity.
 - 4. Cafeteria in Occupied Mode and Kitchen in Unoccupied Mode:
 - a. The cafeteria associated AAD shall open to allow for 8500 cfm to the cafeteria and the kitchen associated AAD shall close.
 - b. The associated unit exhaust fan shall operate at the same cfm as the outside air quantity.

5. Cafeteria in Unoccupied Mode and Kitchen in Occupied Mode:
 - a. The cafeteria AAD shall close and the kitchen associated AAD shall open to 2800 cfm.
 - b. The unit supply fan shall be set at 2800 CFM, the outdoor air shall be set to 2800 cfm and the unit exhaust fan shall operate 900 cfm less than the outdoor air quantity.

B. Heating Mode:

1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The rooftop unit outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the unit heating coil valve shall modulate open.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the heating control valve shall close.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit shall enable .
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain desired minimum mixed air temperature.
2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.

C. Cooling Mode:

1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. Supply air fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - c. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted dx coil shall energize.
 - d. Upon a fall in space temperature below set point the duct mounted electric coil shall energize.
2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit is inoperable.

3.17 ROOFTOP UNIT (DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM)

A. General:

1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.

B. Heating Mode:

1. Occupied mode
 - a. Supply and return fan shall run continuously. The DDC shall modulate the VFD on the supply and return fans to maintain constant downstream static pressure.
 - b. The rooftop unit outdoor air damper shall fully open, the return air damper shall fully close and the exhaust air damper shall fully open.
 - c. The heat recovery wheel shall start.
 - d. The unit shall modulate the heating coil valve to produce a constant discharge air temperature of 65 degrees (adjustable).
2. Unoccupied mode
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, exhaust air damper fully closed, the heating valve fully open and the supply fan shall run intermittently at the demand of the room sensors to maintain reduced space temperature.

C. Cooling Mode

1. Occupied mode
 - a. Supply and return fan shall run continuously.
 - b. The rooftop unit outdoor air damper shall fully open, the return air damper shall fully close and the exhaust air damper shall fully open.
 - c. The heat recovery wheel shall start.

- d. The unit shall modulate the cooling coil valve to produce a constant discharge air temperature of 52 degrees (adjustable).
- 2. Unoccupied mode
 - a. The unit is inoperable
- D. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air.

3.18 ACTIVE CHILLED BEAMS/INDUCTION UNITS

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
 - 3. The duct mounted two position damper shall modulate open whenever occupancy is sensed by the DDC system from the room mounted occupancy sensor or when the space is calling for heating or cooling.
- B. Heating Mode:
 - 1. Occupied mode:
 - a. Upon a fall in space temperature the associated control valve shall open.
 - b. Upon a rise in space temperature the associated control valve shall close.
 - 2. Unoccupied mode:
 - a. The associated control valve shall open to maintain reduced space temperature
- C. Cooling Mode:
 - 1. Occupied mode:
 - a. Upon a rise in space temperature the associated control valve shall open.
 - b. Upon a fall in space temperature the associated control valve shall close
 - 2. Unoccupied mode:
 - a. The unit is inoperable.

3.19 EXHAUST FAN CONTROL

- A. Exhaust fans shall be controlled by wall mounted starters/switches, thermostats or shall be started and stopped by the DDC system. Refer to notes on equipment schedule for related control schemes.
 - 1. If the fan to run by the DDC system and run indication is not met after 2 minutes or fan run indication fails after being proven, an alarm shall be generated at the operator workstation. The call to run shall be turned off.
 - 2. All fans over 1000 CFM and serving more than one space shall be provided with fire shut downs provided by the EC via the fire alarm system. All fans under DDC control shall also shut-down. When the exhaust fan is shut down from fire alarm, the automatic air dampers shall close.

3.20 VARIABLE VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (COOLING, HEATING, VENTILATING)

- A. General:
 - 1. Unit automatically indexed to "occupied" or "unoccupied" cycle by the DDC.
 - 2. Unit automatically switches from heating to cooling modes.
- B. Heating Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. The supply air fan shall start at the minimum preset speed of 50% total flow.
 - b. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - c. On a fall in space temperature, the heating coil valve shall modulate open. Upon a further fall in space temperature, the supply fan shall speed up.
 - d. Upon a rise in space temperature the heating control valve shall close and the supply fan shall slow down.

- e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open under economizer control to satisfy the space setpoint. The unit return air damper shall modulate closed
 - f. A mixed air low limit controller shall assume control of dampers and valves as required to maintain the desired minimum mixed air temperature.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The outdoor air damper shall remain fully-closed, return air damper fully-open, unit heating coil valve fully-open, and the supply air fan shall run intermittently at demand of room sensor to maintain reduced space temperature.
- C. Cooling Mode:
 - 1. Occupied cycle:
 - a. The supply air fan shall start at the minimum preset speed of 50 of total flow.
 - b. The heating valve shall be closed.
 - c. The outdoor air damper shall fully open to admit preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall close correspondingly.
 - d. On a rise in space temperature, the unit mounted outdoor air damper shall modulate open and the supply fan shall speed up under control of the economizer control. The unit return air damper shall modulate closed.
 - e. Upon a still further rise in space temperature the unit mounted coil shall modulate to provide chilled water to the coil and the supply fan shall slow down to the minimum speed. The outdoor air damper shall modulate closed to the minimum preset minimum quantity of outdoor air; return air damper shall modulate correspondingly.
 - f. Upon a still further rise in space temperature the supply fan shall speed up.
 - 2. Unoccupied cycle:
 - a. The unit shall be disabled.
- D. Ventilation Control
 - 1. 30 minutes prior to scheduled occupancy a preoccupancy purge cycle shall occur for 30 minutes with the outside air damper open to the ventilation rate as scheduled.
 - 2. The DDC system shall modulate the outdoor air and return air damper to maintain the preset CO2 level in the space. The CO2 level in the space shall be determined by averaging the CO2 sensor readings within the space.
 - 3. The economizer function shall override the ventilation control when free cooling is available.
 - 4. The outside air damper shall modulate open beyond the minimum setting starting at an interior CO2 concentration of not greater than 100 ppm over that of the outside air and be open for full occupancy when CO2 concentrations reach the upper limit of 500 ppm above ambient conditions.
 - 5. Post purge cycle shall occur when the space goes from occupied to unoccupied. The occupied mode shall not change to unoccupied mode until the space CO2 level drops to ambient level.
 - 6. In all cases the CO2 sensor with the highest ppm level shall control ventilation.
- E. Fire shut down shall be provided by the EC via the fire alarm system and by the DDC. When unit is shut down, the outside air dampers shall close and the mixing dampers shall position to 100% return air."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 21 13
HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hydronic system requirements.
- B. Heating water piping, above grade.
- C. Chilled water piping, above grade.
- D. Equipment drains and overflows.
- E. Pipe hangers and supports.
- F. Unions, flanges, mechanical couplings, and dielectric connections.
- G. Valves:
 - 1. Ball valves.
 - 2. Butterfly valves.
 - 3. Check valves.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 05 16 - Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping.
- B. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- D. Section 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation.
- E. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.
- F. Section 23 25 00 - HVAC Water Treatment: Pipe cleaning.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Qualification Standard for Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Procedures; Welders; Brazers; and Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Operators; 2025, with Errata.
- B. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2021.
- C. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- D. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- E. ASME B16.51 - Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- F. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2025.
- G. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2024.
- H. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.

- I. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2025.
- J. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2020.
- K. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2022.
- L. ASTM B88M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric); 2020.
- M. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers; 2024.
- N. ASTM F1476 - Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications; 2007 (Reapproved 2024).
- O. ASTM F3226/F3226M - Standard Specification for Metallic Press-Connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems; 2019 (Reaffirmed 2024).
- P. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2019.
- Q. AWS D10.12M/D10.12 - Guide for Welding Mild Steel Pipe; 2000.
- R. AWWA C606 - Grooved and Shouldered Joints; 2022.
- S. IAPMO (UMC) - 2024 Uniform Mechanical Code; 2024.
- T. IAPMO/ANSI/CAN Z1117 - Standard for Press Connections; 2022.
- U. ICC (IMC) - International Mechanical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- V. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2025.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Welders Certificate: Include welders certification of compliance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- C. Product Data:
 - 1. Include data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, and accessories.
 - 2. Provide manufacturers catalog information.
 - 3. Indicate valve data and ratings.
 - 4. Show grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties on drawings and product submittals, specifically identified with the manufacturer's style or series designation.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate hanging and support methods, joining procedures.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of valves.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include installation instructions, spare parts lists, exploded assembly views.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Valve Repacking Kits: One for each type and size of valve.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section with minimum five years of experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.
- B. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- C. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

1.9 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Requirements for coordination.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for valves excluding packing.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish two packing kits for each size and valve type.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME B31.9 and applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
- B. Piping: Provide piping, fittings, hangers, and supports as required, as indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Where more than one piping system material is specified, provide joining fittings that are compatible with piping materials and ensure that the integrity of the system is not jeopardized.
 - 2. Use non-conducting dielectric connections whenever joining dissimilar metals.
 - 3. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with ASME B31.9 or MSS SP-58 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Pipe-to-Valve and Pipe-to-Equipment Connections: Use flanges, unions, or grooved couplings to allow disconnection of components for servicing; do not use direct welded, soldered, or threaded connections.
- D. Valves: Provide valves where indicated:

1. Provide drain valves where indicated, and if not indicated, provide at least at main shut-off, low points of piping, bases of vertical risers, and at equipment. Use 3/4 inch gate valves with cap; pipe to nearest floor drain.
2. Isolate equipment using butterfly valves with lug end flanges or grooved mechanical couplings.
3. For throttling, bypass, or manual flow control services, use globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
4. In heating water, chilled water, or condenser water systems, butterfly valves may be used interchangeably with gate and globe valves.
5. For shut-off and to isolate parts of systems or vertical risers, use gate, ball, or butterfly valves.

E. Welding Materials and Procedures: Comply with ASME BPVC-IX.

2.2 HEATING WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black, using one of the following joint types:
1. Welded Joints: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type fittings; AWS D10.12M/D10.12 welded.
 2. Threaded Joints: ASME B16.3, malleable iron fittings.
 3. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
 4. Mechanical Press Sealed Fittings: ASTM F3226/F3226M, ICC (IMC), and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with EPDM seals.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), drawn, using one of the following joint types:
1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper fittings.
 - a. Solder: ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.
 - b. Braze: AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP copper/silver alloy.
 2. Mechanical Press Sealed Fittings: ASME B16.51 or IAPMO/ANSI/CAN Z1117, ICC (IMC), and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with EPDM seals.

2.3 CHILLED WATER/DUAL TEMP PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black; using one of the following joint types:
1. Welded Joints: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type fittings; AWS D10.12M/D10.12 welded.
 2. Threaded Joints: ASME B16.3, malleable iron fittings.
 3. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
 4. Mechanical Press Sealed Fittings: ASTM F3226/F3226M, ICC (IMC), and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with EPDM seals.
- B. Steel Pipe Sizes 12 Inches and Greater: ASTM A53/A53M, 3/8 inch wall, black; using one of the following joint types:
1. Welded Joints: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type fittings; AWS D10.12M/D10.12 welded.
 2. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
- C. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L, drawn temper.
1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22, solder wrought copper fittings.
 - a. Solder: ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.
 - b. Braze: AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP copper/silver alloy.
 2. Mechanical Press Sealed Fittings: ASME B16.51 or IAPMO/ANSI/CAN Z1117, ICC (IMC), and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with EPDM seals.

2.4 EQUIPMENT DRAINS AND OVERFLOWS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40 galvanized; using one of the following joint types:
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), drawn; using one of the following joint types:
1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper fittings; ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.

2.5 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
 - 1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
 - 2. All hangers shall be oversized to allow for continuous insulation thru hanger.
- B. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Greater: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
- C. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 to 4 Inches: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
- D. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Greater: Adjustable steel yoke, cast iron roll, double hanger.
- E. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
- F. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Greater: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.
- G. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Greater: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
- H. Wall Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Greater: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp with adjustable steel yoke and cast iron roll.
- I. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- J. Floor Support for Cold Pipe: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
- K. Floor Support for Hot Pipe Sizes to 4 Inches: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
- L. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
- M. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.
- N. In grooved installations, use rigid couplings with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads or with wedge-shaped grooves in header piping to permit support and hanging in accordance with ASME B31.9.
- O. Rooftop Supports for Low-Slope Roofs: Steel pedestals with bases that rest on top of roofing membrane, not requiring any attachment to the roof structure and not penetrating the roofing assembly, with support fixtures as specified; and as follows:
 - 1. Bases: High-density polypropylene.
 - 2. Base Sizes: As required to distribute load sufficiently to prevent indentation of roofing assembly.
 - 3. Steel Components: Stainless steel or carbon steel hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
 - 4. Attachment/Support Fixtures: As recommended by manufacturer, same type as indicated for equivalent indoor hangers and supports; corrosion-resistant material.
 - 5. Height: Provide minimum clearance of 6 inches under pipe to top of roofing.

2.6 UNIONS, FLANGES, MECHANICAL COUPLINGS, AND DIELECTRIC CONNECTIONS

- A. Unions for Pipe of 2 Inches and Less:
 - 1. Ferrous Piping: 150 psi brass or malleable iron, threaded.
 - 2. Copper Pipe: Bronze, soldered joints.
- B. Flanges for Pipe 2 Inches and Greater:
 - 1. Ferrous Piping: 150 psig forged steel, slip-on.
 - 2. Copper Piping: Bronze.
 - 3. Gaskets: 1/16 inch thick, preformed neoprene.

- C. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved and Shouldered Joints: Two or more curved housing segments with continuous key to engage pipe groove, circular C-profile gasket, and bolts to secure and compress gasket.
 - 1. Dimensions and Testing: In accordance with AWWA C606.
 - 2. Mechanical Couplings: Comply with ASTM F1476.
 - 3. Bolts and Nuts: Hot dipped galvanized or zinc-electroplated steel.
 - 4. When pipe is field grooved, provide coupling manufacturer's grooving tools.
- D. Dielectric Connections:
 - 1. Waterways:
 - a. Water impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to 1 percent of short circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint.
 - b. Dry insulation barrier able to withstand 600-volt breakdown test.
 - c. Construct of galvanized steel with threaded end connections to match connecting piping.
 - d. Suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures.
 - 2. Flanges:
 - a. Dielectric flanges with same pressure ratings as standard flanges.
 - b. Water impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to 1 percent of short circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint.
 - c. Dry insulation barrier able to withstand 600-volt breakdown test.
 - d. Construct of galvanized steel with threaded end connections to match connecting piping.
 - e. Suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures.
 - 3. Unions:
 - a. 1/2 to 1 Inches: Brass solder to galvanized FPT.
 - b. 1/2 to 2 Inches: Brass solder to galvanized FPT.
 - c. 1/2 to 1 Inches: Brass to galvanized FPT or FIP (Female Iron Pipe).
 - d. 3/4 to 1/2 Inch Reducer: Brass solder to galvanized FPT.
 - e. Service: 250 psi, minus 20 to 180 deg F.

2.7 BALL VALVES

- A. Up To and Including 2 Inches:
 - 1. Bronze one piece body, chrome plated brass ball, full port, teflon seats and stuffing box ring, lever handle with balancing stops, solder ends with union.
- B. Over 2 Inches:
 - 1. Ductile iron body, chrome plated stainless steel ball, teflon or Virgin TFE seat and stuffing box seals, full port, lever handle or gear operated, flanged ends, rated to 800 psi.

2.8 BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Body: Cast or ductile iron with resilient replaceable EPDM seat, wafer or lug ends, extended neck.
- B. Disc: Construct of aluminum bronze, chrome plated ductile iron, stainless steel, ductile iron with EPDM encapsulation, or Buna-N encapsulation.
- C. Stem: Stainless steel with stem offset from the centerline to provide full 360-degree circumferential setting.
- D. Operator: 10 position lever handle.

2.9 SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Up To and Including 2 Inches:
 - 1. Bronze body, bronze trim, bronze rotating swing disc, with composition disc, solder or threaded ends.
- B. Over 2 Inches:

1. Iron body, bronze trim, bronze or bronze faced rotating swing disc, renewable disc and seat, flanged ends.

2.10 SPRING LOADED CHECK VALVES

- A. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 80, Class 250, bronze body, in-line spring lift check, silent closing, Buna-N disc, integral seat, solder or threaded ends.
- B. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 71, Class 125, wafer style, cast iron body, bronze seat, center guided bronze disc, stainless steel spring and screws, flanged ends.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Prepare pipe for grooved mechanical joints as required by coupling manufacturer.
- C. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- D. Prepare piping connections to equipment using jointing system specified.
- E. Keep open ends of pipe free from scale and dirt. Protect open ends with temporary plugs or caps.
- F. After completion, fill, clean, and treat systems. See Section 23 25 00 for additional requirements.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and to avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- E. Sleeve pipe passing through partitions, walls, and floors.
- F. Slope piping and arrange to drain at low points.
- G. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment. See Section 23 05 16.
- H. Grooved Joints:
- I. Inserts:
 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
 4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
 5. Where inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through-bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut above slab.
- J. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9, ASTM F708, or MSS SP-58.
 2. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.
 3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2-inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
 4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.

5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inches minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
 6. Support vertical piping at every other floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
 7. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
 8. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
 9. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. See Section 09 9123. Hangers and supports located in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.
- K. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings. See Section 23 07 19.
- L. Use eccentric reducers to maintain top of pipe level.
- M. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc-rich primer to welds.
- N. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

3.3 TESTING

- A. All piping shall be tested in accordance with the applicable Mechanical Code.
- B. Hydronic piping shall be tested hydrostatically at one and one half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 psi. Test duration shall be no less than 15 minutes.

3.4 SCHEDULES

- A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.
1. 1/2 Inch and 3/4 inch: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 2. 1 Inch: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 3. 1-1/2 Inches and 2 Inches: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. 2-1/2 Inches: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 5. 3 Inches: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- B. Hanger Spacing for Steel Piping.
1. 2 Inches: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 2. 2-1/2 Inches: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 3. 3 Inches: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. 4 Inches: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 5. 6 Inches: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 21 14
HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Expansion tanks.
- B. Air vents.
- C. Air separators.
- D. Strainers.
- E. Suction diffusers.
- F. Automatic flow control valves.
- G. Flow meters.
- H. Relief valves.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- B. Section 23 25 00 - HVAC Water Treatment: Pipe cleaning.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME BPVC-VIII-1 - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1: Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; 2025, with Errata .

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
- B. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product data for manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Include component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes. Include product description and model.
- C. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate hanging and support methods, joining procedures.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include installation instructions, assembly views, lubrication instructions, and replacement parts list.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.
- B. Convene minimum week prior to commencing work of this section.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Do not install instruments when areas are under construction, except rough in, taps, supports and test plugs.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for piping specialties.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish two bottles of red gage oil for static pressure gages.
- C. Furnish two pressure gages with pulsation damper and two thermometers .

1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.12 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.
- B. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- C. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPANSION TANKS

- A. Construction: Welded steel, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC-VIII-1; supplied with National Board Form U-1, adjustable flexible EPDM diaphragm or bladder seal factory precharged to 12 psi, and steel support stand.
- B. Automatic Cold Water Fill Assembly: Pressure reducing valve, reduced pressure double check backflow preventer, test cocks, strainer, vacuum breaker, and valved by-pass.
- C. Accessories: Provide air-charging fitting, pressure gauge, and tank drain ball valve.

2.2 AIR VENTS

- A. Manual Air Vent: Short vertical sections of 2-inch diameter pipe to form air chamber, with 1/8 inch brass needle valve at top of chamber.
- B. Float Air Vent:
 - 1. Cast iron body and cover, float, bronze pilot valve mechanism suitable for system operating temperature and pressure; with isolating valve.
- C. Maximum Fluid Pressure: 150 psi.
- D. Maximum Fluid Temperature: 250 degrees F.

2.3 AIR SEPARATORS

- A. Centrifugal Air Separators/Strainers:
 - 1. Primed steel body, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC-VIII-1 with integral bronze strainer, tangential flanged inlet and outlet connections, and internal stainless steel air collector tube.
 - 2. Maximum Service Flow and Pressure: 16 gpm at 125 psi.
 - 3. Accessories: Provide removable strainer and tank-bottom magnets.

2.4 STRAINERS

- A. Size 2 inch and Under:
 - 1. Provide threaded, grooved, or sweat brass or iron body for up to 175 psi working pressure, Y-pattern strainer with 1/32 inch stainless steel perforated screen.
- B. Size 2-1/2 inch to 4 inch:
 - 1. Provide flanged or grooved iron body for 175 psi working pressure, Y pattern with 1/16 inch or 3/64 inch stainless steel perforated screen.
- C. Size 5 inch and Larger:
 - 1. Provide flanged or grooved iron body for 175 psi working pressure, basket pattern with 1/8 inch stainless steel perforated screen.

2.5 SUCTION DIFFUSERS

- A. Fitting: Angle pattern, cast-iron body, threaded for 2 inch and smaller, flanged for 2-1/2 inch and larger, rated for 175 psi working pressure, with inlet vanes, cylinder strainer with 3/16 inch diameter openings, disposable 5/32 inch mesh strainer to fit over cylinder strainer, 20 mesh startup screen, and permanent magnet located in flow stream and removable for cleaning.
- B. Class 125:
 - 1. Horizontally or vertically mounted angle-pattern fitting with integral-cast vanes, fine particle mesh screen and magnetic drain plugs for particle removal without disassembly.
 - 2. Maximum Operating Service: 175 psi and 300 degrees F.
 - 3. Sizes, Material, and Connection:
 - a. 2 inch and Smaller: Cast iron body, threaded.
 - b. 2-1/2 to 12 inch: Ductile iron body, flanged.
- C. Accessories: Adjustable foot support, blowdown tapping in bottom, gauge tapping in side.

2.6 AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Bell & Gossett, a brand of Xylem, Inc; Circuit Sentry Flo-Setter II: www.bellgossett.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Construction:
 - 1. Valve shall be capable of Class IV shut off without the use of an additional shut-off valve.
 - 2. Valve Body:

- a. 1/2 inch through 1-1/4 inch: DZR brass.
 - b. 1-1/2 inch through 2 inch: Ductile iron.
3. Valve Diaphragm: HNBR.
4. Two integral pressure/temperature ports.
5. Dial indicating setting in gallons per minute.
6. Stainless steel stem with field adjustable locking handle.
- C. Valve Ratings:
 1. Working Pressure: 375 PSIG.
 2. Temperature Range: 14 to 250 degrees F.
 3. Differential Pressure Control Range: 60 psi.
- D. Calibration: Control flow within 5 percent of selected rating, over operating pressure range of 10 times minimum pressure required for control, minimum pressure 2 psi.
- E. Control Mechanism: Provide stainless steel or nickel-plated, brass piston or regulator cup, operating against stainless steel helical or wave formed spring or elastomeric diaphragm and polyphenylsulfone orifice plate.
- F. Size: Match system flow capacity.
- G. Accessories: Provide hanging tag, inlet in-line strainer, outlet ball valve, and PT test plug extension.

2.7 FLOW METERS

- A. Basis of Design: Onicon F-1100 Measuring Station and D-1201 Display Module
- B. Measuring Station: F-100 Meter
 1. Type 316 stainless steel single turbine insertion flow meter
 2. Pressure Rating: 400 psi max.
 3. Maximum Temperature: 180 degrees F. continuous; 200 degrees F peak.
 4. Accuracy:
 - a. Plus or minus 0.5% of reading at calibrated velocity.
 - b. Plus or minus 1% of reading from 3 to 30 ft/s (10:1 range)
 - c. Plus or minus 2% of reading from .4 to 20ft/s (50:1 range)
 5. Sensing method: Electronic impedance sensing. (non-magnetic and non-photoelectric)
 6. Ambient temperature range: -5 to 160 degrees F.
- C. Display Module: D-1201
 1. Construction: 6"x6"x4" NEMA 4 steel enclosure; wall mount.
 2. Indicators:
 - a. Multi-function LCD with two buttons mode selection, total reset, and programming.
 - b. Six digit rate; eight digit totalization.
 3. Programming: Factory set for particular flow meter and pipe size.
 4. Memory: Nonvolatile EEPROM memory retains all programming parameters in the event of power loss
 5. Flow signal:
 - a. Input: 0-15V pulse output from flow meter
 - b. Output: Provide display module terminal strip for connection to DDC system.

2.8 RELIEF VALVES

- A. Bronze body, teflon seat, stainless steel stem and springs, automatic, direct pressure actuated, capacities ASME certified and labelled.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Refer to drawing for required specialties.
- B. Locate test plugs adjacent to thermometers and thermometer sockets and adjacent to pressure gages and pressure gage
- C. Where large air quantities accumulate, provide enlarged air collection standpipes.
- D. Install manual air vents at system high points.
- E. For automatic air vents in ceiling spaces or other concealed locations, install vent tubing to nearest drain.
- F. Provide air separator on suction side of system circulation pump
- G. Connect to expansion tank to system by pipe connected of the bottom of the pump suction line.
- H. Provide drain and hose connection with valve on strainer blow down connection.
- I. Provide pump suction fitting on suction side of base mounted centrifugal pumps. Remove temporary strainers after cleaning systems.
- J. Support pump fittings with floor mounted pipe and flange supports.
- K. Provide relief valves on pressure tanks, low-pressure side of reducing valves, heat exchangers, and expansion tanks.
- L. Select system relief valve capacity greater than make-up pressure reducing valve capacity. Select equipment relief valve capacity to exceed rating of connected equipment.
- M. Pipe relief valve outlet to nearest floor drain.
- N. Where one line vents several relief valves, make cross sectional area equal to sum of individual vent areas.
- O. Feed glycol solution to system through make-up line with pressure regulator, venting system high points. Set to fill at 15 psig.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Field inspecting, testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Test for strength of glycol and water solution and submit written test results.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.
- B. Clean and flush glycol system before adding glycol solution.

3.4 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting installed construction.
- B. Do not install hydronic pressure gauges until after systems are pressure tested.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 21 23
HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. In-line pumps.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 09 23 - Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC.
- D. Section 23 09 34 - Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers for HVAC.
- E. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- F. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- B. UL 778 - Standard for Motor-Operated Water Pumps; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide certified pump curves showing performance characteristics with pump and system operating point plotted. Include NPSH curve when applicable. Include electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate hanging and support requirements and recommendations.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include installation instructions, assembly views, lubrication instructions, and replacement parts list.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit installation instructions, servicing requirements, assembly views, lubrication instructions, and replacement parts list.
- C. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years experience .

- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years experience .

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Product storage and handling requirements.
- B. Protect systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

1.9 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for pump motors.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish one set of mechanical seals for each pump.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Armstrong Fluid Technology, Inc: www.armstrongfluidtechnology.com/#sle.
- B. Bell & Gossett, a Xylem Inc. brand: www.bellgossett.com/#sle.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Provide pumps that operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, and operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.
- B. Electrical Requirements:
 - 1. Listed and classified by UL or testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
 - 2. Variable Frequency Drives (VFDs): Provide in accordance with Section 23 09 34, except for integral-VFDs.
 - 3. Enclosures: Provide unspecified product(s) required to fit motor:

2.3 VERTICAL IN-LINE PUMPS

- A. Components

1. The pumps shall be split-coupled, inline for vertical or horizontal installation, in cast iron bronze fitted (or all bronze) construction specifically designed for quiet operation. Suitable standard operations at 250°F and 175 PSIG working pressure. The pump internals shall be capable of being serviced without disturbing piping connections.
2. As an option, an EPR/Graphite loaded Silicon-Carbide/Graphite loaded Silicon-Carbide or FKM/Carbon/Silicon-Carbide seal (225°F maximum operating temperature) should be used in lieu of the standard EPR/Carbon/Silicon-Carbide seal (250°F maximum operating temperature).
3. The pumps shall have a solid stainless steel shaft that is integral to the motor.
4. The motor bearings shall support the shaft via heavy-duty permanently lubricated ball bearings.
5. Pump shall be equipped with an internally-flushed mechanical seal assembly installed in an enlarged tapered seal chamber. Seal assembly shall be the unitized type with stainless steel drive tabs, EPR bellows and seat gasket, stainless steel spring, and be of a carbon silicon-carbide design with the carbon face rotating against a stationary silicon-carbide face.
6. Pump shaft shall connect to a brass impeller. Impeller shall be hydraulically and dynamically balanced, threaded onto the motor shaft.
7. Pump should be designed to allow for true back pull-out access to the pump's working components for ease of maintenance.
8. Pump volute shall be of a cast iron design for heating systems or cast brass for domestic water systems. The connection style on the cast iron and bronze pumps shall be flanged. Volute shall include gauge ports at nozzles.
9. Motors shall meet scheduled horsepower, speed, voltage, and enclosure design. Motors shall have permanently lubricated ball bearings sized to offset the additional bearing loads associated with the closed-coupled pump design. Motors shall be non-overloading at any point on the pump curve and shall meet NEMA specifications.
10. Pumps shall conform to ANSI/HI 9.6.3.1 standard for Preferred Operating Region (POR) unless otherwise approved by the engineer.
11. Pump shall be of a maintainable design and for ease of maintenance should use machine fit parts and not press fit components.
12. Pump manufacturer shall be ISO-9001 certified.
13. Each pump shall be factory tested and name-plated before shipment.

B. Accessories:

1. Provide one spare mechanical seal for each model type for primary pump.
2. Where noted on schedule an EPR/Graphite loaded Silicon-Carbide/Graphite loaded Silicon-Carbide or FKM/Carbon/Silicon-Carbide seal (225°F maximum operating temperature) should be used in lieu of the standard EPR/Carbon/Silicon-Carbide seal (250°F maximum operating temperature).
3. Where noted on schedule pumping equipment may require one of all of the following tests: Certified Lab tests (unwitnessed), Hydraulic Institute Level B tests, or Witnessed Tests.
4. Where noted on the schedule provide an external mechanical seal flush line (-F).
 - a. Split-Coupled, Single-Stage Pump: Vertical pump with radially- or horizontally-split casing; rated for discharge pressures up to 175 psi.
 - b. Seal: Mechanical seal, 225 degrees F maximum continuous duty temperature.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide access space around pumps for service. Provide no less than minimum space recommended by manufacturer.

- C. Decrease from line size with long radius reducing elbows or reducers. Support piping adjacent to pump such that no weight is carried on pump casings. For close-coupled or base-mounted pumps, provide supports under elbows on pump suction and discharge line sizes 4 inches and over.
- D. Provide line sized shut-off valve and strainer on pump suction, and line sized soft seat check valve and balancing valve on pump discharge.
- E. Provide air cock and drain connection on horizontal pump casings.
- F. Check, align, and certify alignment of base-mounted pumps prior to start-up.
- G. Lubricate pumps before start-up.
- H. Controls: Interface each pump starter or VFD with HVAC controller; see Section 23 09 23.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 23 00
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping.
- B. Moisture and liquid indicators.
- C. Valves.
- D. Strainers.
- E. Check valves.
- F. Pressure relief valves.
- G. Filter-driers.
- H. Solenoid valves.
- I. Expansion valves.
- J. Receivers.
- K. Flexible connections.
- L. Engineered wall seals and insulation protection.
- M. Exterior penetration accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 31 00 - Access Doors and Panels.
- B. Section 23 07 16 - HVAC Equipment Insulation.
- C. Section 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation.
- D. Section 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 495 - Performance Rating of Refrigerant Liquid Receivers; 2005.
- B. AHRI 730 (I-P) - Flow Capacity Rating of Suction Line Filters and Suction Line Filter Driers; 2013 (Reapproved 2014).
- C. AHRI 760 (I-P) - Performance Rating of Solenoid Valves for Use with Volatile Refrigerants; 2014.
- D. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2024, with Addendum (2025).
- E. ASHRAE Std 34 - Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants; 2024, with Addendum (2025).
- F. ASME BPVC-VIII-1 - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1: Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; 2025, with Errata .

- G. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Qualification Standard for Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Procedures; Welders; Brazers; and Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Operators; 2025, with Errata.
- H. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- I. ASME B16.26 - Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes; 2024.
- J. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; 2022.
- K. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2025.
- L. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.
- M. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2022.
- N. ASTM B88M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric); 2020.
- O. ASTM B280 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service; 2023.
- P. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- Q. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2024a.
- R. ASTM E283/E283M - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen; 2019.
- S. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2000 (Reapproved 2023).
- T. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate and Calculation of Air Permeance of Building Materials; 2021a.
- U. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- V. ASTM G153 - Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials; 2013 (Reapproved 2021).
- W. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2019.
- X. IAPMO (UMC) - 2024 Uniform Mechanical Code; 2024.
- Y. ICC (IMC) - International Mechanical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- Z. UL 207 - Standard for Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- AA. UL 429 - Electrically Operated Valves; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide general assembly of specialties, including manufacturers catalogue information. Provide manufacturers catalog data including load capacity.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate schematic layout of system, including equipment, critical dimensions, and sizes.

- D. Design Data: Submit design data indicating pipe sizing. Indicate load carrying capacity of trapeze, multiple pipe, and riser support hangers.
- E. Test Reports: Indicate results of leak test, acid test.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate support, connection requirements, and isolation for servicing.
- G. Project Record Documents: Record exact locations of equipment and refrigeration accessories on record drawings.
- H. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for changing cartridges, assembly views, spare parts lists.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum 5 years of documented experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Protect piping and specialties from entry of contaminating material by leaving end caps and plugs in place until installation.
- C. Dehydrate and charge components such as piping and receivers, seal prior to shipment, until connected into system.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

1.9 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for valves excluding packing.

1.11 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish two refrigerant oil test kits each containing everything required for conducting one test.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish two refrigerant filter-dryer cartridges of each type.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Where more than one piping system material is specified ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure integrity of system is not jeopardized. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- B. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with ASME B31.5 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Liquid Indicators:
 - 1. Use line size liquid indicators in main liquid line leaving condenser.
 - 2. If receiver is provided, install in liquid line leaving receiver.
 - 3. Use line size on leaving side of liquid solenoid valves.
- D. Valves:
 - 1. Use service valves on suction and discharge of compressors.
 - 2. Use gauge taps at compressor inlet and outlet.
 - 3. Use gauge taps at hot gas bypass regulators, inlet and outlet.
 - 4. Use check valves on compressor discharge.
 - 5. Use check valves on condenser liquid lines on multiple condenser systems.
- E. Refrigerant Charging (Packed Angle) Valve: Use in liquid line between receiver shut-off valve and expansion valve.
- F. Strainers:
 - 1. Use line size strainer upstream of each automatic valve.
 - 2. Where multiple expansion valves with integral strainers are used, use single main liquid line strainer.
 - 3. Use shut-off valve on each side of strainer.
- G. Pressure Relief Valves: Use on ASME receivers and pipe to outdoors.
- H. Filter-Driers:
 - 1. Use a filter-drier immediately ahead of liquid-line controls, such as thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and moisture indicators.
 - 2. Use a filter-drier on suction line just ahead of compressor.
- I. Solenoid Valves:
 - 1. Use in liquid line of systems operating with single pump-out or pump-down compressor control.
 - 2. Use in liquid line of single or multiple evaporator systems.
 - 3. Use in oil bleeder lines from flooded evaporators to stop flow of oil and refrigerant into the suction line when system shuts down.
- J. Flexible Connectors: Utilize at or near compressors where piping configuration does not absorb vibration.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME B31.9 for installation of piping system.
- B. Welding Materials and Procedures: Comply with ASME BPVC-IX and applicable state labor regulations.
- C. Welders Certification: In accordance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- D. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL, as suitable for the purpose indicated.

2.3 PIPING

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, H58 hard drawn or O60 soft annealed.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper.
 - 2. Joints: Braze, AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy.
 - 3. Push-to-Connect Fittings: Complying with UL 207.
 - 4. Mechanical Press Fittings: UL 207 listed, ICC (IMC) and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with HNBR seals.
- B. Copper Tube to 7/8-inch OD: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type K (A), annealed.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.26 cast copper.
 - 2. Joints: Flared.
 - 3. Push-to-Connect Fittings: Complying with UL 207.
 - 4. Mechanical Press Sealed Fittings: UL 207 listed, ICC (IMC) and IAPMO (UMC) approved, with HNBR seals.
- C. Pipe Supports and Anchors:
 - 1. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 Inch: Malleable iron adjustable swivel, split ring.
 - 2. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
 - 3. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
 - 4. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
 - 5. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.
 - 6. Rooftop Supports for Low-Slope Roofs: Steel pedestals with bases that rest on top of roofing membrane, not requiring any attachment to the roof structure and not penetrating the roofing assembly, with support fixtures as specified; and as follows:
 - a. Bases: High density, UV tolerant, polypropylene or reinforced PVC.
 - b. Base Sizes: As required to distribute load sufficiently to prevent indentation of roofing assembly.
 - c. Steel Components: Stainless steel, or carbon steel hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
 - d. Attachment/Support Fixtures: As recommended by manufacturer, same type as indicated for equivalent indoor hangers and supports; corrosion resistant material.
 - e. Height: Provide minimum clearance of 6 inches under pipe to top of roofing.

2.4 MOISTURE AND LIQUID INDICATORS

- A. Indicators: Single port type, UL listed, with copper or brass body, flared or soldered ends, sight glass, color coded paper moisture indicator with removable element cartridge and plastic cap; for maximum temperature of 200 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

2.5 VALVES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. UL listed, globe or angle pattern, forged brass body and bonnet, phosphor bronze and stainless steel diaphragms, rising stem and handwheel, stainless steel spring, nylon seat disc, soldered or flared ends, with positive backseating; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- B. Packed Angle Valves:
 - 1. Forged brass or nickel plated forged steel, forged brass seal caps with copper gasket, rising stem and seat with backseating, molded stem packing, soldered or flared ends; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- C. Ball Valves:
 - 1. Two piece bolted forged brass body with teflon ball seals and copper tube extensions, brass bonnet and seal cap, chrome plated ball, stem with neoprene ring stem seals; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 300 degrees F.
- D. Service Valves:

1. Forged brass body with copper stubs, brass caps, removable valve core, integral ball check valve, flared or soldered ends, for maximum pressure of 500 psi.

2.6 STRAINERS

- A. Straight Line or Angle Line Type:
 1. Brass or steel shell, steel cap and flange, and replaceable cartridge, with screen of stainless steel wire or monel reinforced with brass; for maximum working pressure of 430 psi.

2.7 CHECK VALVES

- A. Globe Type:
 1. Cast bronze or forged brass body, forged brass cap with neoprene seal, brass guide and disc holder, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, teflon seat disc; for maximum temperature of 300 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 500 psi.
- B. Straight Through Type:
 1. Brass body and disc, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, neoprene seat; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 250 degrees F.

2.8 PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

- A. Straight Through or Angle Type: Brass body and disc, neoprene seat, factory sealed and stamped with ASME UV and National Board Certification NB, selected to ASHRAE Std 15, with standard setting of 450 psi.

2.9 FILTER-DRIERS

- A. Performance:
 1. Design Working Pressure: 500 psi, minimum.
- B. Cores: Molded or loose-fill molecular sieve desiccant compatible with refrigerant, activated alumina, activated charcoal, and filtration to 40 microns, with secondary filtration to 20 microns; of construction that will not pass into refrigerant lines.
- C. Construction: UL listed.
 1. Connections: As specified for applicable pipe type.

2.10 SOLENOID VALVES

- A. Valve: AHRI 760 (I-P), pilot operated, copper, brass or steel body and internal parts, synthetic seat, stainless steel stem and plunger assembly (permitting manual operation in case of coil failure), integral strainer, with flared, soldered, or threaded ends; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

2.11 EXPANSION VALVES

- A. Angle or Straight Through Type: AHRI 760 (I-P); design suitable for refrigerant, brass body, internal or external equalizer, bleed hole, adjustable superheat setting, replaceable inlet strainer, with nonreplaceable capillary tube and remote sensing bulb and remote bulb well.
- B. Selection: Evaluate refrigerant pressure drop through system to determine available pressure drop across valve. Select valve for maximum load at design operating pressure and minimum 10 degrees F superheat. Select to avoid being undersized at full load and excessively oversized at part load.

2.12 ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVES

- A. Valve:

1. Brass body with flared or soldered connection, needle valve with floating needle and machined seat, stepper motor drive.
- B. Evaporation Control System:
 1. Electronic microprocessor based unit in enclosed case, proportional integral control with adaptive superheat, maximum operating pressure function, preselection allowance for electrical defrost and hot gas bypass.
- C. Refrigeration System Control: Electronic microprocessor based unit in enclosed case, with proportional integral control of valve, on/off thermostat, air temperature alarm (high and low), solenoid valve control, liquid injection adaptive superheat control, maximum operating pressure function, night setback thermostat, timer for defrost control.

2.13 RECEIVERS

- A. Internal Diameter 6 inch and Smaller:
 1. AHRI 495, UL listed, steel, brazed; 400 psi maximum pressure rating, with tappings for inlet, outlet, and pressure relief valve.
- B. Internal Diameter Over 6 inch:
 1. AHRI 495, welded steel, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC-VIII-1; 400 psi with tappings for liquid inlet and outlet valves, pressure relief valve, and magnetic liquid level indicator.

2.14 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Corrugated stainless steel hose with single layer of stainless steel exterior braiding, minimum 9 inches long with copper tube ends; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

2.15 ENGINEERED WALL SEALS AND INSULATION PROTECTION

- A. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Seals HVAC piping wall penetrations with compression gasket wall mounted rigid plastic outlet cover.
 1. Wall Outlet Size, Stucco and Masonry Applications: 7-1/2 inch wide by 10 inch high.
 - a. Elastomeric Sleeve Diameter: 1-11/16 inch.
 2. Wall Outlet Size, Siding and Compact Applications: 6-7/8 inch wide by 3-7/8 inch high.
 - a. Elastomeric Sleeve Diameter: 1-11/16 inch.
 3. Outlet Cover Color: Gray.
 4. Water Penetration: Comply with ASTM E331.
 5. Air Leakage: Comply with ASTM E283/E283M.
 6. Air Permeance: Comply with ASTM E2178.
- B. Insulation Protection System: Mechanical line insulation and PVC cover.
 1. PVC Insulation Cover Color: Black with full-length velcro fastener.
 2. Weatherization and Ultraviolet Exposure Protection: Comply with ASTM G153.
 3. Water/Vapor Permeability: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M.
 4. Anti-Fungal and Anti-Microbial Resistance: Comply with ASTM G21.
 5. Flame Spread and Smoke Development Rating of 25/450: Comply with ASTM E84.
 6. Adhesive free.

2.16 EXTERIOR PENETRATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Flashing Panels for Exterior Wall Penetrations: Premanufactured components and accessories as required to preserve integrity of building envelope; suitable for conduits and facade materials to be installed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigeration specialties in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, with plumbing parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- E. Inserts:
 - 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
 - 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
 - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
 - 4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
 - 5. Where inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through-bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut above slab.
- F. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.5.
 - 2. Support horizontal piping as indicated.
 - 3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
 - 4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
 - 5. Support vertical piping at every other floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
 - 6. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
 - 7. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
- G. Arrange piping to return oil to compressor. Provide traps and loops in piping, and provide double risers as required. Slope horizontal piping 0.40 percent in direction of flow.
- H. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- I. Provide access to concealed valves and fittings. Coordinate size and location of access doors with Section 08 31 00.
- J. Flood piping system with nitrogen when brazing.
- K. Insulate piping and equipment.
- L. Follow ASHRAE Std 15 procedures for charging and purging of systems and for disposal of refrigerant.
- M. Provide replaceable cartridge filter-driers, with isolation valves and valved bypass.
- N. Locate expansion valve sensing bulb immediately downstream of evaporator on suction line.
- O. Provide external equalizer piping on expansion valves with refrigerant distributor connected to evaporator.
- P. Install flexible connectors at right angles to axial movement of compressor, parallel to crankshaft.

- Q. Fully charge completed system with refrigerant after testing.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Test refrigeration system piping following requirements of manufacturer of connected equipment, in accordance with procedures outlined in ASME B31.5 and meeting minimum pressures provided therein, or manufacturer's documentation, whichever is greater.
- C. Test and repair to no leakage.

3.4 SCHEDULES

- A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.
 - 1. 1/2 inch, 5/8 inch, and 7/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. 1-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. 1-3/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. 1-5/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. 2-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 25 00
HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Materials.
 - 1. System cleaner.
 - 2. Closed system treatment (water).
- B. By-pass (pot) feeder.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Owner furnished treatment equipment.
- B. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- C. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; Current Edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide chemical treatment materials, chemicals, and equipment including electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system schematic, equipment locations, and controls schematics, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate placement of equipment in systems, piping configuration, and connection requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Indicate start-up of treatment systems when completed and operating properly. Indicate analysis of system water after cleaning and after treatment.
- F. Certificate: Submit certificate of compliance from Authority Having Jurisdiction indicating approval of chemicals and their proposed disposal.
- G. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of equipment and piping, including sampling points and location of chemical injectors.
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include data on chemical feed pumps, agitators, and other equipment including spare parts lists, procedures, and treatment programs. Include step by step instructions on test procedures including target concentrations.
- I. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Sufficient chemicals for treatment and testing during required maintenance period.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout products.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.

1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Maintenance service.
- B. Furnish regular technical service visits, for one years starting at Date of Substantial Completion, to perform field inspections and make water analysis on site. Detail findings in writing on proper practices, chemical treating requirements and corrective actions needed. Submit two copies of field service report after each visit.
- C. Furnish laboratory and technical assistance services during this maintenance period.
- D. Furnish on site inspections of equipment during scheduled or emergency shutdown to properly evaluate success of water treatment program, and make recommendations in writing based upon these inspections.

1.10 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish chemicals for treatment and testing during warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable codes for addition of non-potable chemicals to building mechanical systems and to public sewage systems.
- B. Comply with UL (DIR) requirements.
- C. Perform work in accordance with local health department regulations.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. System Cleaner:
 - 1. Liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products; sodiumtripoly phosphate and sodium molybdate.
 - 2. Biocide chlorine release agents such as sodium hypochlorite or calcium hypochlorite or microbiocides such as quarternary ammonia compounds, tributyltin oxide, methylene bis (thiocyanate).
- B. Closed System Treatment (Water):
 - 1. Sequestering agent to reduce deposits and adjust pH; polyphosphate.
 - 2. Corrosion inhibitors; boron-nitrite, sodium nitrite and borax, sodium totyltriazole, low molecular weight polymers, phosphonates, sodium molybdate, or sulphites.
 - 3. Conductivity enhancers; phosphates or phosphonates.

2.3 BY-PASS (POT) FEEDER

- A. 2 quart quick opening cap for working pressure of 175 psi.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Systems shall be operational, filled, started, and vented prior to cleaning. Use water meter to record capacity in each system.
- B. Place terminal control valves in open position during cleaning.
- C. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.

3.2 CLEANING SEQUENCE

- A. Concentration:
 - 1. As recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. One pound per 100 gallons of water contained in the system.
 - 3. One pound per 100 gallons of water for hot systems and one pound per 50 gallons of water for cold systems.
- B. Hot Water Heating/Dual Temp Systems:
 - 1. Apply heat while circulating, slowly raising temperature to 160 degrees F and maintain for 12 hours minimum.
 - 2. Remove heat and circulate to 100 degrees F or less; drain systems as quickly as possible and refill with clean water.
 - 3. Circulate for 6 hours at design temperatures, then drain.
 - 4. Refill with clean water and repeat until system cleaner is removed.
- C. Chilled Water Systems:
 - 1. Circulate for 48 hours, then drain systems as quickly as possible.
 - 2. Refill with clean water, circulate for 24 hours, then drain.
 - 3. Refill with clean water and repeat until system cleaner is removed.
- D. Use neutralizer agents on recommendation of system cleaner supplier and approval of Architect.
- E. Flush open systems with clean water for one hour minimum. Drain completely and refill.
- F. Remove, clean, and replace strainer screens.
- G. Inspect, remove sludge, and flush low points with clean water after cleaning process is completed. Include disassembly of components as required.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 CLOSED SYSTEM TREATMENT

- A. Provide one bypass feeder on each system. Install isolating and drain valves and necessary piping. Install around balancing valve downstream of circulating pumps unless indicated otherwise.
- B. Introduce closed system treatment through bypass feeder when required or indicated by test.
- C. Provide 3/4 inch water coupon rack around circulating pumps with space for 4 test specimens.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

- A. Perform maintenance work using competent and qualified personnel under the supervision and in the direct employ of the equipment manufacturer or original installer.
- B. Provide service and maintenance of treatment systems for one year from Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide monthly technical service visits to perform field inspections and make water analysis on-site. Detail findings in writing on proper practices, chemical treating requirements, and corrective actions needed. Submit two copies of field service report after each visit.
- D. Provide laboratory and technical assistance services during this maintenance period.
- E. Provide on-site inspections of equipment during scheduled or emergency shutdown to properly evaluate success of water treatment program, and make recommendations in writing based upon these inspections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 31 00
HVAC DUCTS AND CASINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal ducts.
- B. Flexible ducts.
- C. Air plenums and casings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 23 07 13 - Duct Insulation: External insulation and duct liner.
- C. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories.
- D. Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE (FUND) - ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- B. ASHRAE Std 126 - Method of Testing HVAC Air Ducts; 2020.
- C. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2019.
- D. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2025a.
- E. ASTM A666/A666M - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2024.
- F. ASTM B209/B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2021a.
- G. ASTM D7803 - Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Powder Coating; 2012 (Reapproved 2019).
- H. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- I. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2018, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- J. ICC-ES AC106 - Acceptance Criteria for Predrilled Fasteners (Screw Anchors) in Masonry; 2018, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- K. ICC-ES AC193 - Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2017, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- L. ICC-ES AC308 - Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2023.
- M. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- N. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2024.

- O. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2024.
- P. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2020.
- Q. SMACNA (KVS) - Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines; 2001.
- R. SMACNA (LEAK) - HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual; 2012.
- S. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for duct materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate duct fittings, particulars such as gages, sizes, welds, and configuration prior to start of work for all modifications / systems. Contractor will be responsible for any rework of shop drawings due to field conditions prior to approval of drawings. Contractor shall field verify field conditions prior to submitting shop drawings.
- D. Samples: Submit RAL color charts for powder coat selection and verification prior to fabrication.
- E. Test Reports: Indicate pressure tests performed. Include date, section tested, test pressure, and leakage rate per appropriate seal class, following SMACNA (LEAK).
- F. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of ducts and duct fittings. Record changes in fitting location and type. Show additional fittings used.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for closeout procedures.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience, and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum five years of documented experience.
- C. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install duct sealants when temperatures are less than those recommended by sealant manufacturers.
- B. Maintain temperatures within acceptable range during and after installation of duct sealants.
- C. Provide offsets as required for installation of ductwork due to field conditions.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

1.9 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements of all duct installations prior to fabrication.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide UL Class 1 ductwork, fittings, hangers, supports, and appurtenances in accordance with NFPA 90A and SMACNA (DCS) guidelines unless stated otherwise.
- B. Provide metal duct unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Duct Shape and Material in accordance with Allowed Static Pressure Range:
- D. Duct Sealing and Leakage in accordance with Static Pressure Class:
 - 1. Duct Pressure Class and Material for Common Mechanical Ventilation Applications:
 - a. Supply Air: 4 in-wc pressure class, galvanized steel.
 - b. Outside Air Intake: 4 in-wc pressure class, galvanized steel.
 - c. Return and Relief Air: 4 in-wc pressure class, galvanized steel.
 - d. General Exhaust Air: 4 in-wc pressure class, galvanized steel.
 - e. Transfer-air and Sound Booths: 1/2 in-wc pressure class, fibrous glass.
 - 2. Medium and High Pressure Service: Above 3 in-wc:
 - a. Seal: Class A, apply sealing of transverse joints, longitudinal seams, and duct wall penetrations.
 - b. Leakage:
 - 1) Rectangular: Class 6 or 6 cfm/100 sq ft.
 - 2) Round: Class 3 or 3 cfm/100 sq ft.
- E. Duct Fabrication Requirements:
 - 1. Duct and Fitting Fabrication and Support: SMACNA (DCS) including specifics for continuously welded round and oval duct fittings.
 - 2. No variation of duct configuration or size permitted except by written permission. Size round duct installed in place of rectangular ducts in accordance with ASHRAE (FUND) Handbook - Fundamentals.
 - 3. Use reinforced and sealed sheet-metal materials at recommended gauges for indicated operating pressures or pressure class.
 - 4. Construct tees, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows must be used, provide airfoil turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.
 - 5. Provide turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation when acoustical lining is indicated.
 - 6. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
 - 7. Provide turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation when an acoustical lining is required.
 - 8. Where ducts are connected to exterior wall louvers and duct outlet is smaller than louver frame, provide blank-out panels sealing louver area around duct. Use same material as duct, painted black on exterior side; seal to louver frame and duct.

2.2 PAINTED FINISHES:

- A. All exposed metal ducts within finished spaces shall be finished as described below:
 - 1. Shop Powder Coated Finishes:
 - a. Base metal shall be galvanized steel to promote adhesion, with flanged construction for field assembly, length of 10 feet maximum.
 - b. Surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with ASTM D7803, including but not limited to pre-treatment cleaning, application of corrosion inhibitors, and pre-bake.

- c. Powder coating to be applied at 3 - 6 mils thick prior to baking for proper cure.
- d. Color: As selected by Architect/Engineer from full RAL spectrum.

2.3 METAL DUCTS

- A. Material Requirements:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M FS Type B, with G60/Z180 coating.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209/B209M, aluminum sheet, alloy 3003-H14.
 - 3. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- B. Rectangular Metal Duct:
 - 1. Rectangular Single Wall: Rectangular, longitudinal lock seam duct with galvanized steel wall.
- C. Round Metal Ducts:
 - 1. Round Single Wall Duct: Round lock seam duct with galvanized steel outer wall.
 - 2. Round Double Wall Insulated Duct: Round spiral lock seam duct with galvanized steel outer wall, perforated galvanized steel inner wall; fitting with the solid inner wall.
 - a. Insulation:
 - 1) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 2) Material: Fiberglass.
 - 3. Round Connection System: Interlocking duct connection system in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
- D. Round Spiral Duct:
 - 1. Round spiral lock seam duct with galvanized steel outer wall.
- E. Connectors, Fittings, Sealants, and Miscellaneous:
 - 1. Fittings: Manufacture with solid inner wall of perforated galvanized steel.
 - 2. Transverse Duct Connection System: SMACNA "E" rated rigid class connection, interlocking angle and duct edge connection system with sealant, gasket, cleats, and corner clips in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
 - 3. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.
 - a. Type: Heavy mastic or liquid used alone or with tape, suitable for joint configuration and compatible with substrates, and recommended by manufacturer for pressure class of ducts.
 - b. VOC Content: Not more than 250 g/L, excluding water.
 - c. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of zero and smoke developed index of zero, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - d. For Use with Flexible Ducts: UL labeled.
 - 4. Gasket Tape:
 - a. Provide butyl rubber gasket tape for a flexible seal between transfer duct connector (TDC), transverse duct flange (TDF), applied flange connections, and angle ring connections.
 - 5. Hanger Rod: ASTM A36/A36M; steel, galvanized; threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuously threaded.
 - 6. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners as follows:
 - a. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
 - b. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
 - c. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
 - d. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC106.
 - e. Concrete Adhesive Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC308.

2.4 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Flexible Ducts: UL 181, Class 1, polyethylene film, mechanically fastened and rolled using galvanized steel to form spiral helix.
 - 1. Insulation: R6 insulation with polyethylene vapor barrier film.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 10 in-wc positive and 5 in-wc negative.
 - 3. Maximum Velocity: 5500 fpm.

4. Temperature Range: Minus 20 degrees F to 250 degrees F.

2.5 AIR PLENUMS AND CASINGS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA (DCS) for indicated operating pressures indicated.
- B. Minimum Fabrication Requirements:
 1. Fabricate acoustic plenum or casing with reinforcing turned inward.
 2. Provide 16-gauge, 0.059-inch sheet steel back facing and 22-gauge, 0.029-inch perforated sheet steel front facing with 3/32 inch diameter holes on 5/32 inch centers.
 3. Construct panels 3 inches thick, packed with 4.5 pcf minimum glass fiber insulation media, on inverted channel of 16-gauge, 0.059-inch sheet steel.
 4. Mount floor-mounted plenum or casings on 4-inch high concrete curbs. At floor, rivet panels on 8-inch centers to angles. Where floors are acoustically insulated, provide liner of galvanized 18-gauge, 0.052-inch expanded metal mesh supported at 12-inch centers, turned up 12 inches at sides with sheet metal shields.
- C. Access Doors:
 1. Install hinged access doors where indicated or required for access to equipment for cleaning and inspection.
 2. Reinforce door frames with steel angles tied to horizontal and vertical plenum supporting angles.
 3. Provide clear wire glass observation ports, minimum 6 by 6 inch size.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products following the manufacturer's instructions.
- B. During construction, provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering the ductwork system.
- C. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
- D. Duct sizes indicated are precise inside dimensions. For lined ducts, maintain sizes inside lining.
- E. Provide openings in ductwork as indicated to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings as indicated for testing of systems, complete with metal can with spring device or screw to insure against air leakage. For openings, insulate ductwork and install insulation material inside a metal ring.
- F. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.
- G. Use crimp joints with or without bead for joining round duct sizes 8 inch and smaller with a crimp in the direction of airflow.
- H. Use double nuts and lock washers on threaded rod supports.
- I. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with one foot maximum length of flexible duct. Do not use flexible duct to change direction.
- J. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low-pressure ducts directly or with 5 feet maximum length of flexible duct held in place with strap or clamp.
- K. Set plenum doors at 6 to 12 inches above floor. Arrange door swings so that fan static pressure holds door in closed position.

- L. At exterior wall louvers, seal duct to louver frame and transition to louver frame size.
- M. Louver Fit-out:
 - 1. Provide blank-out panels sealing available area of wall-mounted exterior-faced louver when connected ductwork is smaller than actual louver free area, and duct outlet is smaller than the louver frame.
 - 2. Use the same duct material painted black on the exterior side, then seal louver frame and duct.
- N. Duct Insulation: Provide duct insulation. See Section 23 07 13.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for additional requirements.
- B. Clean duct systems with high-power vacuum machines. Protect equipment that could be harmed by excessive dirt with filters or bypass during cleaning. Provide adequate access to the ductwork for cleaning purposes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 00
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Backdraft dampers - metal.
- B. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
- C. Duct test holes.
- D. Fire dampers.
- E. Flexible duct connectors.
- F. Volume control dampers.
- G. Low leakage (Class 1A) control dampers.
- H. Miscellaneous Products:
 - 1. Airflow meters, thermal-dispersion type.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- D. Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units: Pressure regulating damper assemblies.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 135 - BACnet - A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks; 2024, with Errata (2025).
- B. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- C. ICC (IMC)-2015 - International Mechanical Code; 2015.
- D. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- E. NFPA 92 - Standard for Smoke Control Systems; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2020.
- G. UL 33 - Safety Heat Responsive Links for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 555 - Standard for Fire Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 555S - Standard for Smoke Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide for shop-fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers, duct access doors, duct test holes, and hardware used. Include electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate for shop fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers, duct access doors, and duct test holes.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Provide instructions for fire dampers and combination fire and smoke dampers.
- E. Project Record Drawings: Record actual locations of access doors and test holes.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.
 - 2. Extra Fusible Links: One of each type and size.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit for Fire Dampers.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Dampers tested, rated and labeled in accordance with the latest UL requirements.
- C. Damper pressure drop ratings based on tests and procedures performed in accordance with AMCA 500.
- D. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect dampers from damage to operating linkages and blades.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.
- C. Storage: Store materials in a dry area indoor, protected from damage.
- D. Handling: Handle and lift dampers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Coordination and project conditions.
- B. Coordinate Work where appropriate with building control Work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS - METAL

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Louvers & Dampers, Inc, a brand of Mestek, Inc: www.louvers-dampers.com/#sle.
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc: www.nailor.com/#sle.
- B. Multi-Blade, Parallel Action Motorized Balanced Backdraft Dampers: Galvanized steel, with center pivoted blades of maximum 6 inch width, with felt or flexible vinyl sealed edges, linked together in rattle-free manner with 90 degree stop, steel ball bearings, and plated steel pivot pin; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.

2.2 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Nailor Industries, Inc: www.nailor.com/#sle.
 - 2. PCI Industries, Inc; Pottorff Brand : www.portorff.com.
 - 3. Ruskin Company, a brand of Johnson Controls: www.ruskin.com/#sle.
- B. Multiple Blade Dampers: Fabricate with 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, stainless steel jamb seals, 1/8 by 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock, and 1/2 inch actuator shaft.
- C. Operators: UL listed and labeled; spring-return, electric-type suitable for 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz. Provide end switches to indicate damper position. Locate damper operator on interior of duct and link to damper operating shaft.
- D. Normally Open Smoke Responsive Fire Dampers: Curtain type, closing upon actuation of electro thermal link, flexible stainless steel blade edge seals to provide constant sealing pressure, stainless steel springs with locking devices to ensure positive closure for units mounted horizontally.
- E. Electro Thermal Link: Fusible link melting at 165 degrees F; 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz; UL listed and labeled.

2.3 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS - CORRIDOR DAMPERS

- A. Multiple Blade Dampers: Fabricate with 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, stainless steel jamb seals, 1/8 by 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock, and 1/2 inch actuator shaft.
- B. Operators: UL listed and labeled; spring-return, electric type suitable for 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz. Provide end switches to indicate damper position. Locate damper operator on interior of duct and link to damper operating shaft.

2.4 DUCT TEST HOLES

- A. Temporary Test Holes: Cut or drill in ducts as required. Cap with neat patches, neoprene plugs, threaded plugs, or threaded or twist-on metal caps.
- B. Permanent Test Holes: Factory fabricated, air tight flanged fittings with screw cap. Provide extended neck fittings to clear insulation.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Nailor Industries, Inc: www.nailor.com/#sle.
 - 2. PCI Industries, Inc; Pottorff Brand : www.portorff.com.
 - 3. Ruskin Company, a brand of Johnson Controls: www.ruskin.com/#sle.

- B. Curtain Type Dampers: Galvanized steel with interlocking blades. Provide stainless steel closure springs and latches for horizontal installations. Configure with blades out of air stream except for 1-inch pressure-class ducts up to 12 inches in height.
- C. Multiple Blade Dampers: 16-gauge, 0.0598-inch galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, 1/8 by 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock.
- D. Fusible Links: UL 33, separate at 160 degrees F with adjustable link straps for combination fire/balancing dampers.

2.6 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA (DCS) and as indicated.
- B. Flexible Duct Connections: Fabric crimped into metal edging strip.
 - 1. Fabric: UL listed fire-retardant neoprene coated woven glass fiber fabric to NFPA 90A, minimum density 30 oz/sq yd.
 - a. Net Fabric Width: Approximately 2 inches wide.
 - 2. Metal: 3 inches wide, 24 gauge, 0.0239 inch thick galvanized steel.

2.7 VOLUME CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Single Blade Dampers:
- B. Multi-Blade Damper: Fabricate consisting of opposed blades with maximum blade sizes 8 by 72 inches. Assemble center- and edge-crimped blades in prime-coated or galvanized-channel frame with suitable hardware.
- C. End Bearings: Except in round ducts 12 inches and smaller, provide end bearings. On multiple blade dampers, provide oil-impregnated nylon, thermoplastic elastomer, or sintered bronze bearings.

2.8 LOW LEAKAGE (CLASS 1A) CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Maximum Leakage Allowed: 3 cfm/sq ft at 1 in-wc.
- B. Frame:
 - 1. Material: 20-gauge galvanized steel.
- C. Blade:
 - 1. Type: Single-blade rectangle shape.
 - 2. Operation: Opposed type.
 - 3. Material: 12-gauge galvanized steel.
- D. Insulation: Water-resistant sound absorbing material.
- E. Temperature Service Range: Minus 25 to 185 degrees F.
- F. Other Requirements:
 - 1. Paint Finish: Standard.
 - 2. Custom: Include bird screen and insect screen.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

- A. Airflow Meters, Thermal-Dispersion Type:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ebtron: www.ebtron.com/#sle.
 - 2. Configuration: Duct or plenum inserted assembly using up to eight water-resistant thermal dispersion sensors per metal probe wired into external access box holding self-diagnosing sensor interface electronics with respective field wire and cable landing terminals.

3. Monitoring Range:
 - a. Air Velocity: 0 to 5,000 fpm converted to airflow using section area.
 - b. Temperature: Minus 20 to 120 degrees F.
4. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent with a plus or minus 0.25 percent repeatability over listed range. Includes means to zero, adjust, and calibrate outputs.
5. Access Box: NEMA EN 10250, Type 4x with hinged cover housing and cable access ports.
6. Interface: Fitted with 16 character, 2-line, backlit, alphanumeric display and labeled pad-type surface membrane buttons.
7. Controller: Fitted with factory-installed module to handle up to 16 external ancillary probes to form an extended measuring probe array for custom duct or plenum sizes.
8. Outputs: Two-wire, 4 to 20 mA, for airflow and temperature signals, configurable.
9. BAS, SCADA, or other Integrated Automation Link: ASHRAE Std 135 BACnet MS/TP.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 90A, and follow SMACNA (DCS). See Section 23 31 00 for duct construction and pressure class.
- B. Provide backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- C. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide minimum 8 by 8 inch size access door for hand and shoulder access, or as indicated on drawings. Provide minimum 4 by 4 inch size access door for balancing dampers only. Review locations prior to fabrication.
- D. Provide duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.
- E. Provide fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and smoke dampers at locations indicated, where ducts and outlets pass through fire-rated components, and where required by authorities having jurisdiction. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.
- F. Install smoke dampers and combination smoke and fire dampers in accordance with NFPA 92.
- G. Demonstrate re-setting of fire dampers to Owner's representative.
- H. At fans and motorized equipment associated with ducts, provide flexible duct connections immediately adjacent to the equipment.
- I. At equipment supported by vibration isolators, provide flexible duct connections immediately adjacent to the equipment.
- J. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches are taken from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install minimum two duct widths from duct take-off.
- K. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, grilles, and registers, regardless of whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, grille, or register assembly.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 34 23
HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Roof exhausters.
- B. Upblast roof exhausters.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- B. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories: Backdraft dampers.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA (DIR) - (Directory of) Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; 2015.
- B. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; 2025.
- C. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2020.
- D. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating; 2025.
- E. AMCA 300 - Reverberation Room Methods of Sound Testing of Fans; 2024.
- F. AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; 2022.
- G. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate fan roof curbs and service utilities installation according to fan size.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
- C. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are completed in an orderly and expeditious manner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on fans and accessories, including fan curves with specified operating point plotted, power, rpm, sound power levels at rated capacity, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for lubrication, motor and drive replacement, spare parts list, and wiring diagrams.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Request Owner permission to use permanent ventilator(s) for ventilation during construction.
- B. Permanent ventilators may be used for ventilation during construction only after ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings have been lubricated, and fan has been test run under observation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Greenheck Fan Corporation: www.greenheck.com/#sle.
- B. Loren Cook Company: www.lorencook.com/#sle.
- C. PennBarry, Division of Air System Components: www.pennbarry.com/#sle.
- D. Twin City Fan & Blower: www.tcf.com/#sle.

2.2 POWER VENTILATORS - GENERAL

- A. Static and Dynamically Balanced: Comply with AMCA 204.
- B. Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 210, bearing certified rating seal.
- C. Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, tested to AMCA 300, bearing certified sound ratings seal.
- D. Fabrication: Comply with AMCA 99.
- E. Electrical Components: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

2.3 ROOF EXHAUSTERS

- A. Fan Unit: V-belt or direct driven as indicated, with spun aluminum housing; resilient mounted motor; 1/2 inch mesh, 0.62 inch thick aluminum wire birdscreen; square base to suit roof curb with continuous curb gaskets.
- B. Roof Curb: 18 inch high self-flashing of galvanized steel with continuously welded seams, built-in cant strips.
- C. Disconnect Switch: Factory wired, nonfusible, in housing for thermal overload protected motor and wall mounted multiple speed switch.
- D. Backdraft Damper: Power actuated, aluminum multiple blade construction, felt edged with offset hinge pin, nylon bearings, blades linked, and line voltage motor drive, power open, spring return.
- E. Sheaves: Cast iron or steel, dynamically balanced, bored to fit shafts and keyed; variable and adjustable pitch motor sheave selected so required rpm gets attained with sheaves set at mid-position; fan shaft with self-aligning pre-lubricated ball bearings.

2.4 UPBLAST ROOF EXHAUSTERS

- A. Direct Drive Fan:
 - 1. Fan Wheel:
 - a. Type: Non-overloading, backward inclined centrifugal.

- b. Material: Aluminum, statically and dynamically balanced.
- 2. Housing:
 - a. Construct of heavy gauge aluminum including curb cap, windband, and motor compartment.
 - b. Rigid internal support structure.
 - c. One-piece fabricated or fully welded curb-cap base to windband for leak proof construction.
 - d. Construct drive frame assembly of heavy gauge steel, mounted on vibration isolators.
 - e. Provide breather tube for fresh air motor cooling and wiring.
- B. Shafts and Bearings:
 - 1. Fan Shaft:
 - a. Ground and polished steel with anti-corrosive coating.
 - b. First critical speed at least 25 percent over maximum cataloged operating speed.
 - 2. Bearings:
 - a. Permanently sealed or pillow block type.
 - b. Minimum L10 life in excess of 100,000 hours (equivalent to L50 average life of 500,000 hours), at maximum cataloged operating speed.
 - c. 100 percent factory tested.
- C. Drive Assembly:
 - 1. Belts, pulleys, and keys oversized for a minimum of 150 percent of driven horsepower.
 - 2. Belts: Static free and oil resistant.
 - 3. Fully machined cast iron type, keyed and securely attached to the wheel and motor shafts.
 - 4. Motor pulley adjustable for final system balancing.
 - 5. Readily accessible for maintenance.
- D. Disconnect Switches:
 - 1. Factory mounted and wired.
 - 2. Environment Type per NEMA EN 10250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
 - 3. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Provide manufacturer's standard or factory applied gray unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Positive electrical shutoff.
 - 5. Wired from fan motor to junction box installed within motor compartment.
- E. Drain Trough: Allows for single-point drainage of water, grease, and other residues.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure roof exhausters with cadmium plated steel lag screws to roof curb.
- C. Extend ducts to roof exhausters into roof curb. Counterflash duct to roof opening.
- D. Provide sheaves required for final air balance.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 36 00
AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Single-duct terminal units.
 - 1. Variable-volume units.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- B. Section 23 09 23 - Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls.
- D. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping: Connections to heating coils.
- E. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties: Connections to heating coils.
- F. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- G. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories.
- H. Section 23 37 00 - Air Outlets and Inlets.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 410 - Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils; 2001, with Addenda (2011).
- B. AHRI 880 (I-P) - Performance Rating of Air Terminals; 2017 (Reaffirmed 2023).
- C. ASHRAE Std 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. ASHRAE Std 130 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Terminal Units; 2025.
- E. ASTM A492 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Rope Wire; 1995 (Reapproved 2019).
- F. ASTM A603 - Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Structural Wire Rope; 2019.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- H. SMACNA (SRM) - Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems; 2024.
- I. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week before to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication. Include catalog performance ratings that indicate airflow, static pressure, and NC designation. Include electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
 - 1. Include schedules listing discharge and radiated sound power level for each of the second through sixth-octave bands at inlet static pressures of 1 to 4 in-wc.
- D. Certificates: Certify that coils are tested and rated in accordance with AHRI 410.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate support and hanging details, installation instructions, recommendations, and service clearances required.
- F. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of units and locations of access doors required for access of valving.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts lists. Include directions for resetting constant-volume regulators.
- H. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for air terminal units.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-DUCT, VARIABLE-VOLUME UNITS

- A. General:
 - 1. Factory-assembled, AHRI 880 (I-P) rated and bearing the AHRI seal, air volume control terminal with damper assembly, flow sensor, externally mounted volume controller, duct collars, and all required features.
 - 2. Control box bearing identification, including but not necessarily limited to nominal cfm, maximum and minimum factory-set airflow limits, coil type and coil (right or left hand) connection, where applicable.
- B. Unit Casing:
 - 1. Minimum 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch galvanized steel.
 - 2. Air Inlet Collar: Provide round, suitable for standard flexible duct sizes.
 - 3. Unit Discharge: Rectangular, with slip-and-drive connections.
 - 4. Acceptable Liners:
 - a. 3/4 inch thick polyurethane foam adhesive complying with UL 181 erosion requirements in accordance with ASHRAE Std 62.1, and having a maximum smoke developed index of 50 for both insulation and adhesive, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

- b. Liner not to contain pentabrominated diphenyl ether (CAS #32534-81-9) or octabrominated diphenyl ether.
- C. Sound Attenuator:
 - 1. Provide if required to meet scheduled acoustical performance requirements.
 - 2. Construction to consist of a continuous extension of the casing and liner as required to achieve required attenuation.
 - 3. At 2000 fpm inlet velocity, the minimum operating pressure with attenuator added not to exceed 0.14 in-wc.
- D. Damper Assembly:
 - 1. Heavy-gauge, galvanized steel, or extruded aluminum construction with solid steel, nickel-plated shaft pivoting on HDPE, self-lubricating bearings.
 - 2. Provide integral position indicator or alternative method for indicating damper position over full range of 90 degrees.
 - 3. Incorporate low leak damper blades for tight airflow shutoff.
 - a. Air Leakage Past Closed Damper: Maximum two percent of unit maximum airflow at 3 in-wc inlet static pressure, tested in accordance with ASHRAE Std 130.
- E. Hot Water Heating Coil:
 - 1. Coil Casing: Minimum 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch galvanized steel, factory-installed on terminal discharge with rectangular outlet, duct connection type.
 - 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum or aluminum plated fins, mechanically-bonded to seamless 1/2 inch copper tubes.
 - a. Fins to be formed in a high heat transfer sine wave configuration.
 - b. One row with ten fins-per-inch heating capacity density.
 - 3. Coil leak tested to minimum 200 psig.
 - 4. Base performance data on tests run in accordance with AHRI 410 and units to bear AHRI 410 label.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install the inlets of air terminal units and air flow sensors a minimum of four duct diameters from elbows, transitions, and duct takeoffs.
- C. Provide ceiling access doors or locate units above easily removable ceiling components.
- D. Support units individually from structure with wire rope complying with ASTM A492 and ASTM A603 in accordance with SMACNA (SRM). See Section 23 0548.
- E. Do not support from ductwork.
- F. Connect to ductwork in accordance with Section 23 31 00.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Reset volume with damper operator attached to assembly allowing flow range modulation from 100 percent of design flow to zero percent full flow. Set units with heating coils for minimum 50 percent full flow.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum clean coils and inside of units.

- B. Install new filters.

3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 37 00
AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Diffusers
- B. Rectangular ceiling diffusers.
- C. Registers/grilles:
 - 1. Ceiling-mounted, egg crate exhaust and return register/grilles.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted, exhaust and return register/grilles.
 - 3. Ceiling-mounted, supply register/grilles.
- D. Louvers
- E. Roof hoods.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Painting of ducts visible behind outlets and inlets.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA 500-L - Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating; 2023.
- B. ASHRAE Std 70 - Method of Testing the Performance of Air Outlets and Air Inlets; 2023.
- C. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2020.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for equipment required for this project. Review outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submission. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets showing type, size, location, application, and noise level.
- C. Samples: Submit two physical color cards illustrating range of colors available for each finished surface of each product specified for selection purposes.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of air outlets and inlets.
- E. Test Reports: Rating of air outlet and inlet performance.
- F. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test and rate air outlet and inlet performance in accordance with ASHRAE Std 70.
- B. Test and rate louver performance in accordance with AMCA 500-L.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Price Industries: www.price-hvac.com/#sle.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 RECTANGULAR CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Type: Provide square and rectangular, adjustable pattern diffuser to discharge air in 360 degree pattern with sectorizing baffles where indicated.
- B. Connections: Round.
- C. Frame: Provide surface mount, snap-in, inverted T-bar, and spline type. In plaster ceilings, provide plaster frame and ceiling frame.
- D. Fabrication: Steel with baked enamel finish.
- E. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Accessories: Provide butterfly volume control damper; removable core, anti-smudging device, and gaskets for surface mounted diffusers with damper adjustable from diffuser face.

2.3 CEILING SUPPLY REGISTERS/GRILLES

- A. Type: Streamlined and individually adjustable curved blades to discharge air along face of grille, double deflection.
- B. Frame: 1-1/4 inch margin with countersunk screw mounting and gasket.
- C. Construction: Made of aluminum extrusions with factory enamel finish.
- D. Fabrication: Steel with 20 gage minimum frames and 22 gage minimum blades, steel and aluminum with 20 gage minimum frame, or aluminum extrusions, with factory off-white enamel finish.
- E. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Damper: Integral, gang-operated, opposed blade type with removable key operator, operable from face.
- G. Gymnasiums: Furnish front pivoted or welded in place blades, securely fastened to be immobile.

2.4 CEILING EXHAUST AND RETURN REGISTERS/GRILLES

- A. Type: Streamlined blades, 3/4 inch minimum depth, 3/4 inch maximum spacing, with blades set at 45 degrees, vertical face.
- B. Frame: 1 inch margin with Channel lay-in frame for suspended grid ceilings.
- C. Fabrication: Steel with 20 gauge, 0.0359 inch minimum frames and 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch minimum blades, steel and aluminum with 20 gauge, 0.0359 inch minimum frame, or aluminum extrusions, with factory baked enamel finish.
- D. Damper: Integral, gang-operated, opposed blade type with removable key operator, operable from face where not individually connected to exhaust fans.
- E. Gymnasiums: Provide front pivoted or welded in place blades, securely fastened to be immobile.

2.5 CEILING EGG CRATE EXHAUST AND RETURN GRILLES

- A. Type: Egg crate style face consisting of 1/2 by 1/2 by 1/2 inch grid core.
- B. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

- C. Frame: 1-1/4 inch margin with countersunk screw mounting.
- D. Frame: Channel lay-in frame for suspended grid ceilings.
- E. Accessories: Provide integral, gang & face operated opposed blade damper and 45 degree angled eggcrate or other similar provisions for visual blocking such as angled louver, 90 degree duct elbow, etc..

2.6 LOUVERS

- A. Type: 4 inch deep frame with blades on 45 degree slope with center baffle and return bend, heavy channel frame, 1/2 inch square mesh screen over intake or exhaust end.
- B. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Mounting: Furnish with interior flat flange for installation.

2.7 ROOF HOODS

- A. Fabricate air inlet or exhaust hoods in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
- B. Fabricate of galvanized steel, minimum 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch base and 20 gauge, 0.0359 inch hood, or aluminum, minimum 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch base and 18 gauge, 0.0598 inch hood; suitably reinforced; with removable hood; birdscreen with 1/2 inch square mesh for exhaust and 3/4 inch for intake, and factory prime coat finish.
- C. Fabricate louver penthouses with mitered corners and reinforce with structural angles.
- D. Mount unit on minimum 18" high wind rated curb base with insulation between duct and curb.
- E. Make hood outlet area minimum of twice throat area. Sizes indicated on Drawings are throat size.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Check location of outlets and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to comply with architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement.
- C. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connection.
- D. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers and grilles and registers, despite whether dampers are specified as part of diffuser, or grille and register assembly.
- E. Paint ductwork visible behind air outlets and inlets matte black, see Section 09 91 23.

3.2 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstrate operational system to Owner's representative.
- B. Instruct Owner's representative to maintain system and use occupant controls or interfaces, as required.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Replace, repair, or touch-up damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 64 23.13
AIR-COOLED SCROLL WATER CHILLERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air-Cooled Scroll Chiller.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 550/590 (I-P) - Performance Rating of Water-Chilling and Heat Pump Water-Heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle; 2023.
- B. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2024, with Addendum (2025).
- C. ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate physical size, weight and location of major pieces of equipment to be installed. Notify Architect of any major deviations from the equipment originally specified prior to ordering equipment.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide rated capacities, weights, specialties and accessories, electrical requirements and wiring diagrams.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate components, assembly, dimensions, weights and loadings, required clearances, and location and size of field connections. Indicate equipment, piping and connections, valves, strainers, and thermostatic valves required for complete system.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that components furnished but not produced by manufacturer meet or exceed manufacturer's requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Performance Data: Indicate energy input versus cooling load output from 0 to 100 percent of full load at specified and minimum condenser water temperature for water-cooled chillers and at specified and minimum outdoor air temperature for air-cooled chillers.
- F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit manufacturer's complete installation instructions.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include start-up instructions, maintenance data, parts lists, controls, and accessories; include trouble-shooting guide.
- H. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Unit shall be rated in accordance with AHRI 550/590 (I-P).
- B. Unit construction shall be designed to conform to AASHRAE Std 15 latest version safety standards, NFPA 70, and ASME (USA) applicable codes.
- C. Unit efficiency shall meet or exceed ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P.
- D. Unit shall be cETL approved.
- E. The unit shall be given a complete factory operating and control sequence test under load conditions and shall be shipped with full operating charge of R454B and full oil charge.

1.6 DELIVERY , STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the manufacturer's installation instruction for rigging, unloading, and handling.
- B. Deliver units to the job site completely assembled and charged with refrigerant and oil by manufacturer.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide minimum five year warranty to include coverage for materials and labor for compressor and complete assembly including refrigerant.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Dunham-Bush: www.dunham-bush.com.
- B. Or Approved equal.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for substitution procedures.
 - 1. The chilled water system has been designed based on specific capacities and characteristics of equipment specified in this section and other sections.
 - 2. When substitution of a different manufacturer or model number is desired, submit sufficient information to demonstrate to Architect that the substitute will have the same or better performance as that specified AND that the related equipment in the system will perform acceptably with the substitute.
 - 3. If the related equipment must be modified to perform acceptably with the substitute, the entity proposing the substitution is responsible for all additional costs due to re-design and provision of different related equipment.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Refrigerant: R-454B; use only refrigerants that have ozone depletion potential (ODP) of zero and global warming potential (GWP) of less than 50.
- B. Rating: in accordance with AHRI 550/590 (I-P).
- C. ACDS unit shall be designed to operate safely and stably to provide chilled fluid temperature 40~60°F, ambient temperature 45~115°F.

2.3 AIR-COOLED, SCROLL WATER CHILLER

- A. Factory assembled and wired in a single package complete with single scroll compressors, evaporator, condenser, starting control with safety and operating controls.

AIR-COOLED SCROLL WATER CHILLERS

- B. Enclosure:
 - 1. The unit shall be designed for maximum corrosion protection being of heavy gauge, galvanized steel construction with baked on powder coating.
- C. Evaporator:
 - 1. ACDS010-150 & ACDSV010-100 evaporator shall be brazed plate heat exchanger for compact foot print while ACDS165-180, evaporator shall be ASME shell & tube. Fluid side design working pressure shall be minimum 150psig and refrigerant side design working pressure shall be minimum 450psig. Evaporator shall be insulated with 1 inch closed-cell insulation.
- D. Condenser:
 - 1. Finned tube coil (Aluminum fin, Copper tubes) or Microchannel coil. Integral sub-cooling circuits shall be incorporated into the coil. Condenser divider baffles shall fully separate each condenser fan section to control the airflow to maintain proper head pressure control.
- E. Fans:
 - 1. Heavy duty, aluminum blade, direct drive propeller type. Motors shall be three phase type with internal overloads and EC respectively for ACDS and ACDSV. Fan blades shall be statically and dynamically balanced. Fan motor shall be rated minimum IP54 for outdoor application.
- F. Compressor:
 - 1. The compressors shall be single scroll. All compressors shall be direct drive with an integral two-pole hermetic motor. A dust-proof terminal box, located in an accessible location on the compressor, shall contain all connection terminals.
 - 2. The compressors shall be fitted with a crankcase heater or sump heater, and oil sight glass. Inverter compressor to equip with oil level switch and sometime accompanied by oil solenoid coil.
- G. Capacity Control:
 - 1. Compressor cycling shall be utilized to match the demand requirement of the system. The factory supplied temperature controller shall cycle compressors in response to leaving fluid temperature and maintain fluid temperature within 3.0°F of setpoint. This system is to provide precise and stable control of supply fluid temperature over the complete range of operating conditions. It shall be capable of maintaining a system capacity range from 100% to 20 % at specified conditions without hot gas bypass.
- H. Refrigerant Circuit:
 - 1. One compressor(s) shall be used with a direct expansion evaporator.
 - 2. Insulate evaporator and other cold surfaces as required to prevent condensation at ambient conditions of 75% RH of 90°F dry bulb with no air movement.
 - 3. Each refrigerant circuit shall include expansion valve, sight glass, moisture indicator, replaceable core filter-drier or in-line filter drier, liquid line shut off valves, and charging port.
- I. Control Center
 - 1. Control Center shall be fully enclosed in a steel, baked powder coated control panel with hinged access doors. Dual compartments, separating safety and operating controls from the power controls, are to be provided.
 - 2. Controls shall include:
 - a. Compressor protection, solid-state, thermal sensing overloads, with manual reset.
 - b. High refrigerant discharge pressure, manual reset.
 - c. Low refrigerant suction pressure protection.
 - d. Freeze protection, manual reset.
 - e. Chilled fluid flow switch interlock.
 - f. Separate power terminal blocks for main power and 115V AC chiller heater power.
 - g. Compressor starter including current sensing overload protection.
 - h. Factory installed controller including integral anti-recycle protection.
 - i. Complete labeling of all control components.
 - j. Numbered terminal strips and labeled components for easier wire tracing.
 - k. Condenser fan cycling control.

3. Intelligent microprocessor controller shall be provided for complete monitoring and control of the unit. The unit algorithm program and operating parameters shall be stored in FLASH-MEMORY that does not require a back-up battery.
4. The controller shall be equipped with a user friendly semi-graphical display panel. All description shall be spelled out in English. The display panel shall have dedicated keys for access to each individual menu/function, such as input status, compressor status, alarm history, real time clock, login and etc. The controller shall provide minimum three levels of access to prevent unauthorized access to control setpoints and parameters.
5. The microprocessor controller shall provide as a minimum the following features:
 - a. Control Functions:
 - 1) Staging of compressors to achieve precise control of leaving water. (ACDS)
 - 2) Staging and modulating of compressors to achieve precise control of leaving water. (ACDSV)
 - 3) Switching of condenser fans to control head pressure. (ACDS)
 - 4) Staging and modulating of condenser fans on the air cooled condenser to control head pressure. (ACDSV)
 - 5) Anti-recycle timer.
 - 6) 7 days weekly schedules for machine control.
 - 7) Automatic pump-down before unit shut down; and pump-out during unit start-up.
 - 8) Proactive control of compressor cycling to help prevent high pressure or low pressure trips.
 - 9) Proactive control providing safeties for high pressure, low pressure and freeze protection, to eliminate nuisance trips.
 - 10) Proactive compressor staging to eliminate overloading during start-up to reduce compressor cycling.
 - 11) Hot gas bypass control.
 - b. Unit Protection:
 - 1) Low pressure cutout with Proactive safety.
 - 2) High pressure cutout with Proactive safety.
 - 3) Automatic re-start from power outage with event posting.
 - 4) Evaporator freeze protection.
 - 5) Sensor error.
 - 6) Pump down -pump out failure.
 - 7) Compressor starter error lock off.
 - c. Readouts:
 - 1) Entering liquid temperature.
 - 2) Leaving liquid temperature.
 - 3) Evaporator suction pressure.
 - 4) Condenser discharge pressure.
 - 5) Unit control Status.
 - 6) Water flow switch status.
 - 7) Compressor status.
 - 8) Liquid line solenoid control status.
 - 9) Condenser fan control status.
 - 10) Unit alarm status.
 - d. Setpoints with proper authorization:
 - 1) Leaving chilled water temperature setpoint.
 - 2) Leaving chilled water temperature control zone.
 - 3) Evaporator freeze protection alarm setpoint.
 - 4) Fan staging control setpoints.
 - 5) Pump down control setpoints.
 - 6) Low suction pressure safety setpoints.
 - 7) High discharge pressure safety setpoints.
 - e. Alarm history
 - 1) 99 of most recent alarms shall be retained in Alarm History with below information:
 - (a) Date and time the alarm was triggered with description on the alarm triggered.
 - (b) Suction pressure.

- (c) Discharge pressure.
 - (d) Evaporator leaving chilled water temperature.
- f. Group Control and Remote monitoring capabilities:
 - 1) Building Management System (BMS) Interface.
 - (a) Controller shall be equipped with factory supplied and installed communication card option for interfacing with Building Management System (BMS).
 - 2) Various communication protocols as below shall be offered.
 - (a) Modbus RTU RS485.
 - (b) Modbus TCP/IP.
 - (c) BACnet TCP/IP.
 - (d) BACnet MS/TP.
 - (e) LonWorks.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Aluminum Fin Copper Tube Condenser Coil (AL) shall be supplied as ACDSV020-100 condenser coil. Coil constructed of seamless inner grooved copper tubes expanded into die-formed aluminum slit fins.
- B. Electronic Expansion Valve (EEV) shall be supplied for model ACDS010-090 to further optimize unit performance and efficiency.
- C. Suction Isolation Valve (SIV) shall be provided at suction refrigerant line for service convenience.
- D. Hot Gas Bypass (HGBP) – To maintain unit operation below minimum unloaded capacity.
- E. Pressure Gauges (GAG) – Pressure gauges shall be installed on the unit to display suction and discharge pressure readings.
- F. Low Noise Fan (LNF) – Low noise fans are incorporated to reduce ACDS unit sound level. Standard offered for ACDS-V.
- G. Protective Panels for Condenser Coil (LUV) – Wire-mesh panels to protect condenser coil faces and prevent unauthorized access to it.
- H. Hail Guard (HGRD) – Full casing height painted galvanized steel panels to provide hail protection, general mechanical security and aesthetics appeal to the unit.
- I. Spring Vibration Isolators (SPG) – Spring isolator with 1" deflection shall be supplied to reduce the transmission of vibration, produced by rotating mechanical equipment or water flow, into or within a building structure.
- J. Water Flow Switch (WFS4) – Water Flow Switch NEMA4 shall be shipped loose and installed at evaporator outlet piping at field as safety interlock to evaporator water flow status.
- K. Flanged Cooler Water Connectors (FCWC) shall be supplied in lieu of Victaulic coupling.
- L. Compressor Acoustic Jacket (LN2) – Compressor acoustic jackets shall be added to further reduce unit sound level.
- M. Double Thick Insulation (DPHE) – Plate heat exchanger evaporator shall be insulated with double thick 2" closed cell insulation for extra resistance to condensation.
- N. Pressure Differential Transducer (PDT) – Pressure Differential Transducer shall be supplied to detect fluid flow.
- O. Convenience Outlet (CON) – 115Vac GFCI convenience outlet with female receptacle shall be supplied.
- P. IP55 Control Panel (IP55) – Control panel with IP55 rating shall be supplied for harsh working environment.
- Q. Digital Power Meter (DPM) - for voltage / current indication, located inside the control panel.

- R. Soft-starter For Fixed Speed Compressor Motors (SST) – Solid State starter comes with bypass contactor shall be furnished to reduced mechanical stress and inrush current at compressor start-up.
- S. Ground Fault Interrupt (GFI) – Provides equipment with ground fault protection.
- T. Weather Proof Alarm (WPA) – Weather proof audible alarm shall be supplied for common alarm fault alert.
- U. Main Incoming Isolator (MII) – Non-fused disconnect switch with external lockable handle shall be furnished to isolate unit main incoming power supply for servicing.
- V. BMS Communication (BMS) – Communication protocol shall be provided with add-on communication card:
 - 1. Modbus RTU RS485.
 - 2. BACnet TCPIP.
- W. Chilled Water Reset (RFTR) – To allow controlled temperature setpoint to be reset by a 4-20Ma signal from BAS.
- X. Demand Limit (AMPL) – To limit maximum running compressors by a 4-20Ma signal from BAS.
- Y. ASME Brazed Plate Heat Exchanger (PHE-ASME) – ASME brazed plate heat exchanger shall be supplied as ACDS010-150 and ACDS010-100 evaporator in lieu of brazed plate heat exchanger.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install on a flat surface level within 1/16 inches and of sufficient strength to support concentrated loading. Place vibration isolators under the unit.
- B. Assemble and install all components as recommended by the manufacturer's literature.
- C. Complete all fluid and electrical connections to unit, fluid circuits and electrical circuits are serviceable.
- D. Provide valves in fluid piping upstream and downstream of the evaporator to provide means of isolating shells for maintenance and to balance and trim system.
- E. Provide soft sound and vibration eliminator connections to the evaporator fluid inlet and outlet as well as electrical connections to the unit.
- F. Interlock chillers through a flow switch in the chilled fluid line to the chilled fluid pump to ensure the unit can operate only when fluid flow is established.
- G. Furnish and install taps for thermometers and pressure gauges in fluid piping adjacent to inlet and outlet connections of the evaporator.
- H. Provide and install drain valves with capped hose ends to each fluid box.
- I. Install vent cocks to each fluid box.
- J. Provide all required refrigeration piping accessories required per manufacturers installation requirements

3.2 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. Perform factory startup of the chiller by factory trained and authorized servicing technicians confirming equipment has been correctly installed prior to equipment becoming operational and covered under the manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Supply initial charge of refrigerant and oil if not completely factory charged.

- C. Demonstrate system operations and verify specified performance.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 73 13
CENTRAL STATION AIR HANDLER

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SETION INCLUDES

- A. Applied Air Handling Units.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 09 23 -Direct-Digital Controls
- B. Section 23 07 13 Duct Insulation

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA Publication 99 - Standards Handbook.
- B. AMCA Publication 611 - Certified Ratings Program - Airflow Measurement Performance
- C. AMCA Standard 500-D - Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating.
- D. ANSI/ABMA Standard 9 -Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings.
- E. ANSI/AMCA Standard 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans.
- F. ANSI/AMCA Standard 610 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Airflow Measuring Stations for Rating
- G. ANSI/AHRI Standard 410 -Forced Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils.
- H. ANSI/AHRI Standard 430 -Central Station Air Handling Units.
- I. ANSI/AHRI Standard 1060 - Rating Air-To-Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment
- J. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size.
- K. ANSI/ASHARE Standard 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
- L. ANSI/ASHARE Standard 90.1 - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings
- M. ANSI/NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators.
- N. ANSI/UL 900 - Standard for Safety Air Filter Units.
- O. AHRI Standard 260 - Sound rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment.
- P. ASHRAE Standard 84 -Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers.
- Q. ASHRAE Standard 111 - Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC System
- R. ASTM B117 -Standard Practice for Operation Salt Spray Apparatus.
- S. ASTM C1071 - Thermal and Acoustic Insulation (Mineral Fiber, Duct Lining Material).
- T. ASTM C1338 - Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Material and Facings
- U. ASTM E477 - STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR MEASURE ACOUSTICAL AND AIRFLOW PERFORMANCE OF DUCTLINER MATERIALS AND PREFABRICATED SILENCERS.

CENTRAL STATION AIR HANDLER

- V. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code®.
- W. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.
- X. UL 1995 - Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Air Coils: Certify capacities, pressure drops and selection procedures in accordance with current AHRI Standard 410.
- B. Air handling units with fan sections utilizing multiple fans shall be rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 430 for airflow, static pressure, and fan speed performance.
- C. Airflow monitoring station: Certify airflow measurement station performance in accordance with AMCA 611
- D. ISO 9001 Certification.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. No equipment shall be fabricated or delivered until the receipt of approved shop drawings from the Owner or Owner's approved representative.
- B. AHU manufacturer shall provide the following information with each shop drawing/product data Submission
 - 1. Dimensioned arrangement drawings for each AHU including a plan and elevation view of the assembled unit with overall dimensions, lift points, unit shipping split locations and dimensions, installation and operating weights, and installation, operation and service clearances
 - 2. All electrical, piping, and ductwork requirements, including sizes, connection locations, and connection method recommendations.
 - 3. Each component of the unit shall be identified and mechanical specifications shall be provided for unit and accessories describing construction, components, and options.
 - 4. All performance data, including capacities and airside and waterside pressure drops, for components.
 - 5. Fan curves shall be provided for fans with the design operating points indicated. Data shall be corrected to actual operating conditions, temperatures, and altitudes.
 - 6. Sound data shall be provided using AHRI 260 test methods. Unit discharge, inlet, and radiated sound power levels in dB shall be provided for 63, 125, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, and 8000 Hz.
- C. The AHU manufacturer shall provide appropriate sets of submittals as referenced in the General Conditions and shall submit to the Owner electronic copies of the IOM.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Agency Listings/Certifications
 - 1. Unit shall be manufactured to conform to UL 1995 and shall be listed by either UL/CUL or ETL. Units shall be provided with listing agency label affixed to the unit. In the event the unit is not UL/CUL or ETL approved, the contractor shall, at his/her expense, provide for a field inspection by a UL/CUL or ETL representative to verify conformance. If necessary, directed by the representative, at no additional expense to the owner.
 - 2. Certify air handling units in accordance with AHRI Standard 430. Units shall be provided with certification label affixed to the unit. If air handling units are not certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 430, contractor shall be responsible for expenses incurred to adjust fans to meet scheduled capacities shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.

3. Certify air handling coils in accordance with AHRI Standard 410. Units shall be provided with certification label affixed to the unit. If air handling coils are not certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 410, contractor shall be responsible for expenses associated with testing of coils after installation to verify performance of coil(s). Any costs
4. Certify airflow monitoring stations are tested for differential pressure in accordance with AMCA 611 in an AMCA registered laboratory and comply with the requirements of the AMCA Certified Ratings Program. Airflow monitoring station shall be licensed to bear the AMCA Seal.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units
- B. Units shall ship fully assembled up to practical shipping and rigging limitations. Units not shipped fully assembled shall have tags and airflow arrows on each section to indicate location and orientation in direction of airflow. Shipping splits shall be clearly defined on submittal drawings. Cost associated with non-conformance to shop drawings shall be the responsibility of the manufacturer. Each section shall have lifting lugs for field rigging and final placement of AHU sections. Indoor AHUs less than 100 inches wide shall allow for forklift transport for maneuverability on jobsite.
- C. Deliver units to jobsite with fan motor(s), sheave(s), and belt(s) completely assembled and mounted in units.
- D. Indoor air handling units shall be shipped in a clear shrink-wrap or stretch-wrap to protect unit from in-transit rain and debris per ASHRAE 62.1 recommendations. See PART 2 for outdoor air handling unit requirements.
- E. Installing contractor shall be responsible for storing AHU in a clean, dry place and protect from weather and construction traffic. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosures, and finish.

1.8 START-UP AND OPERATING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not operate units for any purpose, temporary or permanent, until ductwork is clean, filters in place, bearings lubricated (if applicable), condensate properly trapped, piping connections verified and leak-tested, belts aligned and tensioned, all shipping braces removed, bearing set screws torqued, and fan has been test run under observation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. AHU manufacturer shall provide, at no additional cost, a standard parts warranty that covers a period of one year from unit start-up or 18 months from shipment, whichever occurs first. This warrants that all products are free from defects in material and workmanship and shall meet the capacities and ratings set forth in the equipment manufacturer's catalog and bulletins.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approved Manufacturers:
 1. Trane: Performance Climate Changer
 2. AAON: H3

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Unit layout and configuration shall be as defined in project plans and schedule.

- B. Unit manufacturer to provide an integral base frame to support all sections of unit and raise unit for proper trapping. Contractor will be responsible for providing a housekeeping pad when indoor air handling unit base frame is not of sufficient height to properly trap unit. Unit base frames not constructed of galvanized steel shall be chemically cleaned and coated with both a rust-inhibiting primer and finished coat of rust-inhibiting enamel.
- C. All units shall have single point power connection.

2.3 UNIT CASING

- A. Unit manufacturer shall ship separate segments so unit can be broken down for ease of installation in tight spaces. The entire air handler shall be constructed of galvanized steel. Indoor air handling unit casing finish to meet ASTM B117 250-hour salt-spray test. The removal of access panels or access doors shall not affect the structural integrity of the unit. All removable panels shall be gasketed. All doors shall have gasketing around full perimeter to prevent air leakage. Contractor shall be responsible to provide connection flanges and all other framework that is needed to properly support the unit.
- B. Casing performance - Casing air leakage shall not exceed leak class 6 (CL = 6) per ASHRAE 111 at specified casing pressure, where maximum casing leakage (cfm/100 ft² of casing surface area) = CL X P^{0.65}.
- C. Unit casing panels shall be 2" double-wall construction, with solid galvanized exterior and interior, to facilitate cleaning of unit interior.
- D. Unit casing panels (pressure bulkhead roof panels, walls, floor) and doors shall be provided with a minimum thermal resistance (R-value) of 13 Hr*Ft²*°F/BTU.
- E. Unit casing panels (pressure bulkhead roof panels, walls, floor) and external structural frame members shall be completely insulated filling the entire panel cavity in all directions so that no voids exist. Panel insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A.
- F. Structural frame must not extend from air-handling unit interior to exterior. All component and panel support structure must be internal to AHU. Casing panel inner liners must not extend to the exterior of the unit or contact the exterior frame. A mid-span, no-through-metal, internal thermal break shall be provided for all unit casing panels.
- G. Access panels and/or access doors shall be provided in all sections to allow easy access to drain pan, coil(s), motor, drive components and bearings for cleaning, inspection, and maintenance.

2.4 ACCESS DOORS

- A. Access doors shall be 2" double-wall construction. Interior and exterior shall be of the same construction as the interior and exterior wall panels.
- B. All doors downstream of cooling coils shall be provided with a thermal break construction of door panel and door frame.
- C. Gasketing shall be provided around the full perimeter of the doors to prevent air leakage.
- D. Door hardware shall be surface-mounted to prevent through-cabinet penetrations that could likely weaken the casing leakage and thermal performance.
- E. Handle hardware shall be designed to prevent unintended closure.
- F. Access doors shall be hinged and removable without the use of specialized tools to allow.
- G. Door handle hardware shall be adjustable and visually indicate locking position of door latch external to the section.

- H. All doors shall be a minimum 60" high when sufficient height is available, or the maximum height allowed by the unit height.
- I. Multiple door handles for indoor air handling units shall be provided for each latching point of the door necessary to maintain the specified air leakage integrity of the unit. See Section 2.26 for outdoor air handling unit requirements.
- J. A shatterproof window shall be provided in access doors where indicated on the plans.

2.5 PRIMARY DRAIN PANS

- A. All cooling coil sections shall be provided with an insulated, double-wall, stainless steel drain pan
- B. The drain pan shall be designed in accordance with ASHRAE 62.1 being of sufficient size to collect all condensation produced from the coil and sloped in two planes, pitched toward drain connections, promoting positive drainage to eliminate stagnant water conditions when unit is installed level and trapped per manufacturer's requirements. See section 2.07, paragraph F through H for specifications on intermediate drain pans between cooling coils.
- C. The outlet shall be located at the lowest point of the pan and shall be sufficient diameter to preclude drain pan overflow under any normally expected operating condition.
- D. All drain pan threaded connections shall be visible external to the unit. Threaded connections under the unit floor shall not be accepted.
- E. Drain connections shall be of the same material as the primary drain pan and shall extend a minimum 2-1/2" beyond the base to ensure adequate room for field piping of condensate traps.
- F. Coil support members inside the drain pan shall be of the same material as the drain pan and coil casing

2.6 FANS

- A. Fan sections shall have a minimum of one access door located on the drive side of the unit to allow inspection and maintenance of the fan, motor, and drive components. Construct door(s) per Section 2.04.
- B. Provide fans of type and class as specified on the schedule. Fan shafts shall be solid steel, coated with a rust-inhibiting coating, and properly designed so that fan shaft does not pass through first critical speed as unit comes up to rated RPM. All fans shall be statically and dynamically tested by the manufacturer for vibration and alignment as an assembly at the operating RPM to meet design specifications. Fans controlled by variable frequency drives shall be statically and dynamically tested for vibration and alignment at speeds between 25% and 100% of design rpm. If fans are not factory-tested for vibration and alignment, the contractor shall be responsible for cost and labor associated with field balancing and certified vibration performance. Fan wheels shall be keyed to fan shafts to prevent slipping.
- C. Belt-driven fans shall be provided with grease lubricated, self-aligning, anti-friction bearings selected for L-50 200,000-hour average life per ANSI/AFBMA Standard 9. Lubrication lines for both bearings shall be extended to the drive side of the AHU and rigidly attached to support bracket with zerk fittings. Lubrication lines shall be a clear, high-pressure, polymer to aid in visual inspection. If extended lubrication lines are not provided, manufacturer shall provide permanently lubricated bearing with engineering calculations for proof of bearing life.

- D. All fans, including direct-drive plenum fans, shall be mounted on spring isolation bases. Internally-mounted motor shall be on the same isolation base. Fan and motor shall be internally isolated with spring isolators. Unit sizes up to nominal 4,000 cfm shall have 1-inch springs. Unit sizes larger than nominal 4,000 cfm shall have 2-inch spring isolators. A flexible connection shall be installed between fan and unit casing to ensure complete isolation. Flexible connection shall comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181 requirements. If fans and motors are not internally isolated, then the entire unit shall be externally isolated from the building, including supply and return duct work, piping, and electrical connections. External isolation shall be furnished by the installing contractor in order to avoid transmission of noise and vibration through the ductwork and building structure.
- E. Fan sections containing multiple fans shall be provided as indicated on the schedule and drawings. Each fan shall operate in parallel to each other fan in the array. The fans shall be SWSI plenum type with high efficient AF blades. Fans shall be direct-driven. Fan wheels shall be aluminum. The Hp characteristic of the fans shall be non-overloading.
- F. Fan sections containing multiple fans shall be controlled using a common control signal, such as the duct static control signal, to modulate the fan speed.
- G. MOTORS AND DRIVES
 - 1. All motors and drives shall be factory-installed and run tested. All motors shall be installed on a slide base to permit adjustment of belt tension. Slide base shall be designed to accept all motor sizes offered by the air-handler manufacturer for that fan size to allow a motor change in the future, should airflow requirements change. Fan sections without factory-installed motors shall have motors field installed by the contractor. The contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with installation of motor and drive, alignment of sheaves and belts, run testing of the motor, and balancing of the assembly.
 - 2. Motors shall meet or exceed all NEMA Standards Publication MG 1 - 2006 requirements and comply with NEMA Premium efficiency levels when applicable. Motors shall comply with applicable requirements of NEC and shall be UL Listed. Fan motors shall be heavy duty, NEMA premium efficient v-belt drive shall be variable pitch rated at 1.5 times the motor nameplate. Drives 20 hp and larger or any drives on units equipped with vfds shall be fixed pitch

2.7 COILS

- A. Coils section side panel shall be removable to allow for removal and replacement of coils without impacting the structural integrity of the unit.
- B. Install coils such that headers and return bends are enclosed by unit casing to ensure that if condensate forms on the header or return bends, it is captured by the drain pan under the coil.
- C. Coils shall be manufactured with plate fins to minimize water carryover and maximize airside thermal efficiency. Fin tube holes shall have drawn and belled collars to maintain consistent fin spacing to ensure performance and air pressure drop across the coil as scheduled. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded and bonded to fin collars for maximum thermal conductivity. Use of soldering or tinning during the fin-to-tube bonding process is not acceptable due to the inherent thermal stress and possible loss of bonding at that joint.
- D. Construct coil casings of galvanized steel. End supports and tube sheets shall have belled tube holes to minimize wear of the tube wall during thermal expansion and contraction of the tube.
- E. All coils shall be completely cleaned prior to installation into the air handling unit. Complete fin bundle shall be degreased and cleaned to remove any lubricants used in the manufacturing of the fins, or dirt that may have accumulated, in order to minimize the chance for water carryover.
- F. When two or more cooling coils are stacked in the unit, an intermediate drain pan shall be installed between each coil. The intermediate drain pan shall be designed being of sufficient size to collect all condensation produced from the coil and sloped to promote positive drainage to eliminate stagnant water conditions. The intermediate drain pan shall be constructed of the same material as the primary drain pan.

- G. The intermediate drain pan shall begin at the leading face of the water-producing device and be of sufficient length extending downstream to prevent condensate from passing through the air stream of the lower coil.
- H. Intermediate drain pan shall include downspouts to direct condensate to the primary drain pan. The intermediate drain pan outlet shall be located at the lowest point of the pan and shall be sufficient diameter to preclude drain pan overflow under any normally expected operating condition.
- I. Hydronic Coils
 - 1. Supply and return header connections shall be clearly labeled on unit exterior such that direction of coil water-flow is counter to direction of unit air-flow.
 - 2. Coils shall be proof-tested to 300 psig and leak-tested to 200 psig air pressure under water.
 - 3. Headers shall be constructed of round copper pipe or cast iron.
 - 4. Tubes shall be 5/8 or 1/2 inch O.D., minimum 0.024 inch thick copper. Fins shall be aluminum

2.8 FILTERS

- A. Provide factory-fabricated filter section of the same construction and finish as unit casings. Filter section shall have side access filter guides and access door(s) extending the full height of the casing to facilitate filter removal. Construct doors in accordance with Section 2.04. Provide fixed filter blockoffs as required to prevent air bypass around filters. Blockoffs shall not need to be removed during filter replacement. Filters to be of size and quantity required to maximize filter face area for each air handling unit.
- B. Filter type, MERV rating, and arrangement shall be provided as defined in project plans and schedule.
- C. Manufacturer shall provide two sets of filters.

2.9 DAMPERS

- A. All dampers, with the exception of external bypass and multizones (if scheduled), shall be internally mounted. Dampers shall be premium ultra low leak and located as indicated on the schedule and plans. Blade arrangement (parallel or opposed) shall be provided as indicated on the schedule and drawings. Dampers shall be Ruskin CD60 double-skin airfoil design or equivalent for minimal air leakage and pressure drop. Leakage rate shall not exceed 3 CFM/square foot at one inch water gauge complying with ASHRAE 90.1 maximum damper leakage and shall be AMCA licensed for Class 1A. All leakage testing and pressure ratings shall be based on AMCA Standard 500-D. Manufacturer shall submit brand and model of damper(s) being furnished, if not Ruskin CD60.
- B. Airflow measuring stations shall be provided and located in the outside and/or return air paths as indicated on the schedule and plans to measure airflow. Airflow measuring stations shall be tested per AMCA standard 611 and licensed to bear the AMCA ratings seal for airflow measurement performance. Integral control damper blades shall be provided as galvanized steel and housed in a galvanized steel frame. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 CFM/square foot at one inch water gauge complying with ASHRAE 90.1 maximum damper leakage.
 - 1. The airflow measurement station shall measure up to 100 percent of the total outside air and/or return air. The airflow measurement station shall be capable of measuring down to 300 fpm. The airflow measuring device shall adjust for temperature variations. Output shall be provided from the station as a 2-10 VDC signal. Signal shall be proportional to air velocity. The accuracy of the measuring station shall be no greater than +/-5 percent. Airflow measuring stations shall be mounted on the AHU interior.
 - 2. The installing contractor shall provide duct-mounted pleated media MERV 8 filtration upstream of airflow monitoring stations requiring air straightening vanes to prevent blockage of vanes. A filter access door shall be provided for filter replacement that does not degrade the specified duct leakage class. Duct-mounted filtration section with access door for filter removal shall be tested for compliance to specified duct leakage class on the schedule and plans.

2.10 ACCESS SECTIONS

- A. Access sections shall be provided where indicated in the schedule and plans to allow additional access for inspection, cleaning, and maintenance of unit components. The unit shall be installed for proper access. Procedure for proper access, inspection and cleaning of the unit shall be provided in the AHU manufacturer's maintenance manual. Access section doors shall be constructed per Section 2.04.

2.11 DISCHARGE PLENUM SECTIONS

- A. Plenums shall be provided as indicated in the schedule and plans to efficiently turn air and provide acoustical attenuation. Discharge plenum opening types and sizes shall be scaled to meet pressure drop requirements scheduled and align with duct takeoffs.
- B. Discharge plenum panels shall include an acoustical liner where indicated in the schedule and plans to meet acoustical requirements. The liner shall be fabricated from stainless steel perforated material to prevent corrosion and designed to completely encapsulate fiberglass insulation. The perforation spacing and hole size shall be such as to prevent insulation breakaway, flake off, or delamination when tested at 9000 fpm, in accordance with UL 181 or ASTM C1071. Insulation material must be resistant to fungi in accordance with ASTM C1338.

2.12 TOTAL ENERGY RECOVERY WHEEL

- A. Total energy recovery wheels shall be provided as indicated on the schedule and drawings. Wheels shall be integral parts of the AHUs and shall be sized per the ventilation requirement of the units. Additional outside air units, or other field assembled and ducted energy recovery devices, are not acceptable. Mixed air units with economizing shall be constructed with internal bypass dampers such that the pressure drop across the wheel does not increase during economizing. External bypass and multiple duct connections are not acceptable.
- B. The air handling unit shall be certified by AHRI to contain a rotary energy recovery wheel certified to ANSI/AHRI Standard 1060 and bears the AHRI 1060 label. The air handling unit and wheel must be AHRI 1060-certified as a package. Proof of compliance shall be that the air handling unit brand name and specific wheel being used be listed on the AHRI Web site within the Directory of Certified Product Performance for Commercial Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilators under the Packaged Program Type. Verification of performance for non-AHRI 1060 certified AHU packages shall be completed by witness test for the owner/ownersrepresentative and specifying engineer at the jobsite. Installing contractor shall be responsible for all expenses of verification testing, including test set-up, room/board for owner/owner's representative and engineer, travel to and from the jobsite, as well as modification costs associated to achieving specified performance.
- C. Performance characteristics of the energy wheel shall be provided as defined by AHRI 1060 definitions. The energy wheel shall be a total energy wheel, with the sensible and latent effectiveness reported and within five percent of each other. The calculated total net effectiveness of the recovery wheel shall not be less than 62 percent when the specified ventilation flow rate equals the exhaust flow rate. The energy wheel's EATR shall be less than the value indicated in the schedule and drawings. Wheel face velocity and pressure drop shall not exceed performance as defined on schedule. The energy recovery cassette shall be an Underwriters Laboratories (UL) Recognized Component certified for mechanical, electrical, and fire safety in accordance with UL Standard 1812.

- D. The energy recovery component shall incorporate a rotary wheel in an insulated cassette frame complete with seals, drive motor and drive belts. The total energy recovery wheel shall incorporate a desiccant without the use of binders or adhesives, which may plug the desiccant aperture. The adsorbent shall not be applied as a glued on surface coating and not susceptible to erosion, abrasion, or delamination. Coated segments shall be washable using standard detergent or alkaline-based coil cleaners. The adsorbent shall be selected for its high affinity for water vapor and shall not dissolve or deliquesce in the presence of water or high humidity. The rim shall be continuous rolled stainless steel to form an even concentric circle to prevent leakage around the rim and to minimize wear of components. All diameter and perimeter seals shall be provided as part of the cassette assembly. Perimeter seals shall be self-adjusting; diameter seals shall be adjustable. Seals shall be factory set.
- E. Wheel drive motor shall be provided mounted in the cassette frame. Wheel drive motor shall be thermally protected and UL Component Recognized. Drive belts shall not require belt tensioners. On units that require drive belt tensioners for the wheel belt/motor assembly, the unit manufacturer shall provide at no additional charge to the customer a visual inspection every four months, and adjustment if necessary, of the recommended belt tension during the unit warranty period. Wheel motors shall be of the voltage, phase, frequency, and Hp indicated on the schedule and drawings.
- F. Wheel bearings shall be permanently sealed and lubricated and have a minimum L-10 life of 400,000 hours.
- G. Access doors shall be provided for the removal of wheel segments. Doors shall be located on all air entering and air leaving sides of wheel to allow access to the entire upstream and downstream face of each wheel. Adequate space and access shall be provided for energy wheel motor, bearing and belt removal. Access doors shall be constructed per Section 2.04.
- H. Energy recovery wheels shall be designed with variable effectiveness control, to vary the wheel's recovery capacity. Variable effective control shall be done by an internal bypass damper provided by the AHU Manufacturer. The wheel's variable effectiveness control shall have the ability to modulate the total energy recovery ability down to at least 40% of the initial recovery capacity. Variable frequency speed control is not an acceptable method for controlling variable effectiveness.
- I. Frost prevention shall be achieved by outside air bypass, return air preheat, or outside air preheat, depending upon design conditions. Frost set point temperatures based on the scheduled design air conditions shall be provided by the AHU manufacturer. Variable frequency speed control is not an acceptable method of frost control. Winter design supply and exhaust air conditions leaving the energy wheel shall be provided by the AHU manufacturer and shall include any de-rate in performance due to frost prevention measures.

2.13 MARINE LIGHTS

- A. Marine lights shall be provided throughout AHUs as indicated on the schedule and plans. Lights shall be instant-on, light-emitting diode (LED) type to minimize amperage draw and shall produce lumens equivalent to a minimum 75W incandescent bulb (1200 lumens). LED lighting shall provide instant-on, white light and have a minimum 50,000 hr life.
- B. Light fixture shall be weather-resistant, enclosed and gasketed to prevent water and dust intrusion.
- C. Fixtures shall be designed for flexible positioning during maintenance and service activities for best possible location providing full light on work surface of interest and not being blocked by technician.
- D. All lights on a unit shall be wired in the factory to a single on-off switch.
- E. Installing contractor shall be responsible for providing 115V supply to the factory-mounted marine light circuit.

2.14 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES (VFDS)

- A. Variable frequency drives shall be provided, mounted and wired by the AHU manufacturer as indicated on the schedule and drawings. All standard and optional features shall be included within the VFD enclosure, unless otherwise specified. The VFDs shall be UL listed. The listing shall allow mounting in plenum or other air handling compartments.
- B. The VFD shall convert incoming fixed frequency three-phase AC power into a variable frequency and voltage for controlling the speed of three-phase AC motors. The motor current shall closely approximate a sine wave. Motor voltage shall be varied with frequency to maintain desired motor magnetization current suitable for centrifugal pump and fan control and to eliminate the need for motor derating.
- C. With the motor's rated voltage applied to the VFD input, the VFD shall allow the motor to produce full rated power at rated amps, RMS fundamental volts, and speed without using the motor's service factor. VFDs utilizing sine weighted/coded modulation (with or without 3rd harmonic injection) must provide data verifying that the motors will not draw more than full load current during full load and full speed operation.
- D. The VFD shall include an input full-wave bridge rectifier and maintain a fundamental power factor near unity regardless of speed or load.
- E. The VFD and options shall be tested to ANSI/UL Standard 508. The complete VFD, including all specified options, shall be assembled by the manufacturer, which shall be UL 508 certified for the building and assembly of option panels. Assembly of separate panels with options by a third-party is not acceptable. The appropriate UL stickers shall be applied to both the VFD and option panel, in the case where these are not contained in one panel.
- F. The VFD shall have DC link reactors on both the positive and negative rails of the DC bus to minimize power line harmonics. VFDs without DC link reactors shall provide a minimum 3% impedance line reactor.
- G. The VFDs full load amp rating shall meet or exceed NEC Table 430-150. The VFD shall be able to provide full rated output current continuously, 110% of rated current for 60 seconds and 160% of rated current for up to 0.5 second while starting.
- H. The VFD shall be able to provide full torque at any selected frequency from 28 Hz to base speed to allow driving direct drive fans without derating.
- I. An automatic energy optimization selection feature shall be provided standard in the VFD. This feature shall automatically and continually monitor the motor's speed and load and adjust the applied voltage to maximize energy savings and provide up to an additional 3% to 10% energy savings.
- J. Input and output power circuit switching shall be able to be accomplished without interlocks or damage to the VFD. Switching rate may be up to 1 time per minute on the input and unlimited on the output.
- K. An automatic motor adaptation test algorithm shall measure motor stator resistance and reactance to optimize performance and efficiency. It shall not be necessary to run the motor or de-couple the motor from the load to run the test.
- L. Galvanic and/or optical isolation shall be provided between the VFDs power circuitry and control circuitry to ensure operator safety and to protect connected electronic control equipment from damage caused by voltage spikes, current surges, and ground loop currents. VFDs not including either galvanic or optical isolation on both analog I/O and discrete I/O shall include additional isolation modules.
- M. The VFD shall minimize the audible motor noise through the use of an adjustable carrier frequency. The carrier frequency shall be automatically adjusted to optimize motor and VFD efficiencies while reducing motor noise.
- N. Protective Features

1. Protection shall be provided against input transients, loss of AC line phase, output short circuit, output ground fault, overvoltage, undervoltage, VFD overtemperature and motor overtemperature. The VFD shall display all faults as words. Codes are not acceptable.
 2. The VFD shall be protected from sustained power or phase loss. The VFD shall provide full rated output with an input voltage as low as 90% of the nominal. The VFD shall continue to operate with reduced output with an input voltage as low as 164 V AC for 208/230 volt units, 313 V AC for 460 volt units, and 394 volts for 600 volts units.
 3. The VFD shall incorporate a motor preheat circuit to keep the motor warm and prevent condensation build up in the stator.
 4. The VFD package shall include semi-conductor rated input fuses to protect power components.
 5. To prevent breakdown of the motor winding insulation, the VFD shall be designed to comply with IEC Part 34-17. Otherwise the AHU manufacturer shall ensure that inverter rated motors are supplied.
 6. The VFD shall include a "signal loss detection" circuit to sense the loss of an analog input signal such as 4 to 20 mA or 2 to 10 V DC, and shall be programmable to react as desired in such an instance.
 7. The VFD shall function normally when the keypad is removed while the VFD is running and continue to follow remote commands. No warnings or alarms shall be issued as a result of removing the keypad.
 8. The VFD shall catch a rotating motor operating forward or reverse up to full speed.
 9. The VFD shall be rated for 100,000 amp interrupting capacity (AIC).
 10. The VFD shall include current sensors on all three output phases to detect and report phase loss to the motor. The VFD shall identify which of the output phases is low or lost.
 11. The VFD shall continue to operate without faulting until input voltage reaches 300 V AC on 208/230 volt units, 539 V AC on 460 volt units, and 690 volts on 600 volt units.
- O. Interface Features
1. Hand/Start, Off/Stop and Auto/Start selector switches shall be provided to start and stop the VFD and determine the speed reference. The VFD shall be able to be programmed to provide a 24 V DC output signal to indicate that the VFD is in AUTO/REMOTE mode.
 2. The VFD shall provide digital manual speed control. Potentiometers are not acceptable.
 3. A lockable, alphanumeric backlit display keypad shall be provided. The keypad shall be remotely mountable up to 10 feet away using standard 9-pin cable.
 4. The keypads for all sizes of VFDs shall be identical and interchangeable.
 5. To set up multiple VFDs, it shall be possible to upload all setup parameters to the VFDs keypad, place that keypad on all other VFDS in turn and download the setup parameters. to each VFD. To facilitate setting up VFDs of various sizes, it shall be possible to download from the keypad only size independent parameters.
 6. The display shall be programmable to display in English, Spanish and French at a minimum.
 7. A red FAULT light, a yellow WARNING light and a green POWER-ON light shall be provided. These indications shall be visible both on the keypad and on the VFD when the keypad is removed.
 8. A quick setup menu with factory preset typical HVAC parameters shall be provided on the VFD eliminating the need for macros.
 9. The VFD shall include a standard EIA-485 communications port and capabilities to be connected at a future date to a Johnson Controls N2 Metasys or Siemens FLN system at no additional cost to the owner. The connection shall be software selectable by the user.
 10. At a minimum, the following points shall be controlled and/or accessible:
 - a. VFD Start/Stop
 - b. Speed reference
 - c. Fault diagnostics
 - d. Meter points
 - 1) Motor power in HP
 - 2) Motor power in kW
 - 3) Motor kW-hr
 - 4) Motor current
 - 5) Motor voltage

- 6) Hours run
 - 7) 2 Feedback signals
 - 8) (viii) DC link voltage
 - 9) Thermal load on motor
 - 10) Thermal load on VFD
 - 11) Heatsink temperature
11. Four additional Form C 230 volt programmable relays shall be available for field installation within the VFD
 12. LonWorks® communication shall be available for factory or field installation within the VFD.
 13. Two set-point control interfaces (PID control) shall be standard in the unit. The VFD shall be able to look at two feedback signals, compare with two set-points and make various process control decisions.
 14. Floating point control interface shall be provided to increase/decrease speed in response to contact closures.
 15. Four simultaneous displays shall be available. They shall include frequency or speed, run time, output amps and output power. VFDs unable to show these four displays simultaneously shall provide panel meters.
 16. Sleep mode shall be provided to automatically stop the VFD when its speed drops below set "sleep" level for a specified time. The VFD shall automatically restart when the speed command exceeds the set "wake" level. The sleep mode shall be functional in both follower mode and PID mode. A run permissive circuit shall be provided to accept a "System Ready" signal to ensure that the VFD does not start until dampers or other auxiliary equipment are in the proper state for VFD operation. The run permissive circuit shall also be capable of sending an output signal as a start command to actuate external equipment before allowing the VFD to start.
 17. The following displays shall be accessible from the control panel in actual units: Reference Signal Value, Output Frequency in Hz or percent, Output Amps, Motor HP, Motor kW, kWhr, Output Voltage, DC Bus Voltage, VFD Temperature in degrees, and unit CFM.
 18. The display shall be programmed to read in inches of water column (in-wg).
 19. The VFD shall be able to be programmed to sense the loss of load and signal a no load/broken belt warning or fault.
 20. If the temperature of the VFDs heat sink rises to 80°C, the VFD shall automatically reduce its carrier frequency to reduce the heat sink temperature. If the temperature of the heat sink continues to rise the VFD shall automatically reduce its output frequency to the motor. As the VFDs heat sink temperature returns to normal, the VFD shall automatically increase the output frequency to the motor and return the carrier frequency to its normal switching speed.
 21. The VFD shall have temperature controlled cooling fans for quiet operation and minimized losses.
 22. The VFD shall store in memory the last 10 faults and related operational data.
 23. Eight programmable digital inputs shall be provided for interfacing with the systems control and safety interlock circuitry.
 24. Two programmable relay outputs, one Form C 240 V AC, one Form A 30 V AC, shall be provided for remote indication of VFD status.
 25. Three programmable analog inputs shall be provided and shall accept a direct-or-reverse acting signal. Analog reference inputs accepted shall include two voltage (0 to 10 V DC, 2 to 1 acting signal. Analog reference inputs accepted shall include two voltage (0 to 10 V DC, 20 V DC) and one current (0 to 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA) input.
 26. Two programmable 0 to 20 mA analog outputs shall be provided for indication of VFD status. These outputs shall be programmable for output speed, frequency, current and power. They shall also be programmable to provide a selected 24V DC status indication.
 27. Under fire mode conditions, the VFD shall be able to be programmed to automatically default to a preset speed.
- P. Adjustments
1. The VFD shall have an adjustable carrier frequency in steps of not less than 0.1 kHz to allow tuning the VFD to the motor.
 2. A minimum of sixteen preset speeds shall be provided.

3. Four acceleration and four deceleration ramps shall be provided. Accel and decel time shall be adjustable over the range from 0 to 3,600 seconds to base speed. The shape of these curves shall be automatically contoured to ensure no-trip acceleration and deceleration.
4. Four current limit settings shall be provided.
5. If the VFD trips on one of the following conditions, the VFD shall be programmable for automatic or manual reset: undervoltage, overvoltage, current limit and inverter overload.
6. The number of restart attempts shall be selectable from 0 through 20 or infinitely and the time between attempts shall be adjustable from 0 through 600 seconds.
7. An automatic "on delay" shall be selectable from 0 to 120 seconds.

Q. Warranty

1. The VFD shall be warranted by the manufacturer for a period of 42 months from date of shipment, or 36 months from start-up, whichever occurs first. The warranty shall include parts, labor, travel costs and living expenses incurred by the manufacturer to provide factory-authorized on-site service.

2.15 FACTORY-INSTALLED MOTOR WIRE TERMINATION, VFD, AND COMBINATION STARTER/DISCONNECT ENCLOSURES

- A. VFDs shall be factory mounted on the drive side of the fan section. VFD may be mounted on the interior of the unit, accessible from the unit exterior through an access door, or on the casing exterior in a NEMA Type 1 enclosure for indoor units. If not mounted on the fan section due to NEC disconnect height limitations or serviceability constraints in the mechanical equipment room, VFD may be mounted in another location other than the fan.
- B. Any welds shall be properly finished with no rough edges. Enclosures shall house circuit breaker disconnects, bypass circuitry, Drive-OFF-Bypass switches, manual speed controls, and control transformers. VFDs and starter/disconnects shall have an external disconnect located on the outside of the access door.

2.16 FACTORY WIRING OF LIGHTS, VFDS, AND COMBINATION STARTERS/DISCONNECTS

- A. A. VFDs shall be wired per NEC, UL, and NFPA 90A requirements. Units with factory-mounted controls shall also include power wiring from the VFD or starter/disconnect control transformer to the control system transformers. Units with VFDs and factory-mounted controls shall have a binary start-stop signal and an analog speed signal wired from the direct digital controller to the VFD.
- B. All power wiring for voltages greater than 24V and traveling through multiple unit sections shall be contained in an enclosed, metal, power-wiring raceway or EMT. Sections less than 6' in length may be contained in FMC.

2.17 FACTORY COMMISSIONING OF VFDS AND COMBINATION STARTER/DISCONNECTS

- A. After mounting and wiring of VFDs, on the AHUs, trained factory personnel shall ensure proper operation of each VFD, through a thorough factory test. Testing shall include a Hypot test of unit wiring to ensure that no weaknesses exist in wiring or motor. Each VFD shall be energized and the fan run to ensure the VFD will operate throughout the usable range of the drive and that the fan rotation is correct. Each VFD with bypass shall also be tested in the bypass position to ensure the bypass is operational.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SHIPPING

- A. Paper copies of the IOM shall also be shipped with each AHU.

- B. The AHU manufacturer shall identify all shipments with the order number. Enough information shall be provided with each shipment to enable the Mechanical Contractor to confirm the receipt of units when they are received. For parts too small to mark individually, the AHU manufacturer shall place them in containers.
- C. To protect equipment during shipment and delivery, all indoor units shall be completely stretch or shrink wrapped. Wrap shall be a minimum of 7 mil plastic. Pipe ends and pipe connection holes in the casing shall be capped or plugged prior to shipment.
- D. D. After loading the equipment for shipment, the AHU manufacturer shall contact the shipping contact on the order and provide the name of the carrier, description of equipment, order number, shipping point, and date of shipment.

3.2 ON-SITE STORAGE

- A. A. If equipment is to be stored for a period of time prior to installation, the Mechanical Contractor shall remove all stretch or shrink wrap from units upon receipt to prevent unit corrosion and shall either place the units in a controlled indoor environment or shall cover the units with canvas tarps and place them in a well-drained area. Covering units with plastic tarps shall not be acceptable.

3.3 FIELD EXAMINATION

- A. The Mechanical Contractor shall verify that the mechanical room and/or roof are ready to receive work and the opening dimensions are as indicated on the shop drawings and contract documents.
- B. The Mechanical Contractor shall verify that the proper power supply is available prior to starting of the fans.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible to coordinate ALL installation requirements with the Owner and the Owner's selected Mechanical Contractor to ensure that a complete installation for each unit is being provided. Coordination efforts shall include such items as unloading and hoisting requirements, field wiring requirements, field piping requirements, field ductwork requirements, requirements for assembly of field-bolted or -welded joints, and all other installation and assembly requirements.
- B. The AHU manufacturer shall provide all screws and gaskets for joining of sections in the field.
- C. The Mechanical Contractor shall verify that the following items have been completed prior to scheduling the AHU manufacturer's final inspection and start up:
 - 1. All spring-isolated components have had their shipping restraints removed and the components have been leveled.
 - 2. On all field-joined units, that all interconnections have been completed, i.e., electrical and control wiring, piping, casing joints, bolting, welding, etc.
 - 3. All water and steam piping connections have been completed and hydrostatically tested and all water flow rates have been set in accordance with the capacities scheduled on the Drawings.
 - 4. All ductwork connections have been completed and all ductwork has been pressure tested for its intended service.
 - 5. All power wiring, including motor starters and disconnects, serving the unit has been completed.
 - 6. All automatic temperature and safety controls have been completed.
 - 7. All dampers are fully operational.
 - 8. All shipping materials have been removed.
 - 9. All (clean) filter media has been installed in the units.

3.5 LEVELING

- A. The Mechanical Contractor shall level all unit sections in accordance with the unit manufacturer's instructions. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide and install all necessary permanent shim material to ensure individual sections and entire assembled units are level.

3.6 FINAL INSPECTION AND START UP SERVICE

- A. After the Mechanical Contractor has provided all water and steam piping connections, ductwork connections, and field control wiring, and Electrical Contractor has provided all the field power wiring, the Mechanical Contractor shall inspect the installation. The Mechanical Contractor shall then perform startup of the equipment.
- B. The Automatic Temperature Control (Building Direct Digital Control) Contractor shall be scheduled to be at the job site at the time of the equipment start up.
- C. The Mechanical Contractor, shall perform the following tests and services and submit a report outlining the results:
 - 1. Record date, time and person performing service.
 - 2. Lubricate all moving parts.
 - 3. Check all motor starter power lugs and tighten as required.
 - 4. Verify all electrical power connection.
 - 5. Conduct a start up inspection per the AHU manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 6. Record fan motor voltage and amperage readings.
 - 7. Check fan rotation and spin wheel to verify rotation is free and does not rub or bind.
 - 8. Check fan for excessive vibration.
 - 9. Check v belt drive or coupling for proper alignment.
 - 10. Check v belt drive for proper tension, tighten the belts in accordance with the AHU manufacturers direction, check belt tension during the second and seventh days operation and re-adjust belts, as may be required, to maintain proper tension as directed by the AHU manufacturer.
 - 11. Remove all foreign loose material in ductwork leading to and from the fan and in the fan itself.
 - 12. Disengage all shipping fasteners on vibration isolation equipment.
 - 13. Check safety guards to insure they are properly secured.
 - 14. Secure all access doors to the fan, the unit and the ductwork.
 - 15. Switch electrical supply "on" and allow fan to reach full speed.
 - 16. Physically check each fan at start up and shut down to insure no abnormal or problem conditions exist.
 - 17. Check entering and leaving air temperatures (dry bulb and wet bulb) and simultaneously record entering and leaving chilled water temperatures and flow, steam pressures and flow, and outside air temperature.
 - 18. 18. Check all control sequences.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 74 13
PACKAGED OUTDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Packaged roof top unit.
- B. Unit controls.
- C. Remote panel.
- D. Roof mounting curb and base.
- E. Maintenance service.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Materials and installation of field fabricated roof mounting curbs.
- B. Section 07 72 00 - Roof Accessories: Placement and installation of factory fabricated roof mounting curbs.
- C. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.
- D. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Installation and wiring of thermostats and other controls components; wiring from unit terminal strip to remote panel.
- E. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate assembly, support details, connection requirements, and include start-up instructions.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.
- F. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Extra Filters: One set for each unit.

PACKAGED OUTDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Unit Manufacturer shall have an on-site laboratory certified by AHRI and DOE to test all units and the ability to accommodate customer witness tests. The laboratory shall have the ability to simultaneously measure supply, return, and outside sound at actual load conditions in both 1/3 octaves and full octaves.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect units from physical damage by storing off site until roof mounting curbs are in place, ready for immediate installation of units.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide a five year warranty to include coverage for all parts, labor and refrigerant.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Aaon: www.aaon.com.
- B. Or approved equal.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 ROOFTOP UNITS

- A. General Description
 - 1. Packaged rooftop unit shall include compressors, evaporator coils, filters, supply fans, dampers, air-cooled condenser coils, condenser fans, reheat coil, hot water coils, exhaust fans, energy recovery wheels, and unit controls.
 - 2. Unit shall be factory assembled and tested including leak testing of the DX coils, leak testing of the hot water coils, pressure testing of the refrigeration circuit, and run testing of the completed unit. Run test report shall be supplied with the unit in the service compartment's literature pocket.
 - 3. Unit shall have decals and tags to indicate lifting and rigging, service areas and caution areas for safety and to assist service personnel.
 - 4. Unit components shall be labeled, including pipe stub outs, refrigeration system components and electrical and controls components.
 - 5. Estimated sound power levels (dB) shall be shown on the unit ratings sheet.
 - 6. Installation, Operation, and Maintenance manual shall be supplied within the unit.
 - 7. Laminated color-coded wiring diagram shall match factory installed wiring and shall be affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.
 - 8. Unit nameplate shall be provided in two locations on the unit, affixed to the exterior of the unit and affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.
- B. Construction
 - 1. All cabinet walls, access doors, and roof shall be fabricated of double wall, impact resistant, rigid polyurethane foam panels.

2. Unit insulation shall have a minimum thermal resistance R-value of 13. Foam insulation shall have a minimum density of 2 pounds/cubic foot and shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1929-11 for a minimum flash ignition temperature of 610°F.
 3. Unit construction shall be double wall with G90 galvanized steel on both sides and a thermal break. Double wall construction with a thermal break prevents moisture accumulation on the insulation, provides a cleanable interior, prevents heat transfer through the panel, and prevents exterior condensation on the panel.
 4. Unit shall be designed to reduce air leakage and infiltration through the cabinet. Cabinet leakage shall not exceed 1% of total airflow when tested at 3 times the minimum external static pressure provided in AHRI Standard 340/360. Panel deflection shall not exceed L/240 ratio at 125% of design static pressure, at a maximum 8 inches of positive or negative static pressure, to reduce air leakage. Deflection shall be measured at the midpoint of the panel height and width. Continuous sealing shall be included between panels and between access doors and openings to reduce air leakage. Piping and electrical conduit through cabinet panels shall include sealing to reduce air leakage.
 5. Unit shall be designed to reduce air leakage and infiltration through the cabinet. Cabinet leakage shall not exceed 1% of total airflow when tested at 3 times the minimum external static pressure provided in AHRI Standard 210/240. Panel deflection shall not exceed L/240 ratio at 125% of design static pressure, at a maximum 8 inches of positive or negative static pressure, to reduce air leakage. Deflection shall be measured at the midpoint of the panel height and width. Continuous sealing shall be included between panels and between access doors and openings to reduce air leakage. Piping and electrical conduit through cabinet panels shall include sealing to reduce air leakage.
 6. Roof of the air tunnel shall be sloped to provide complete drainage. Cabinet shall have rain break overhangs above access doors.
 7. Access to filters, dampers, cooling coils, reheat coil, energy recovery wheels, compressors, and electrical and controls components shall be through hinged access doors with quarter turn, zinc cast, lockable handles. Full length stainless steel piano hinges shall be included on the doors.
 8. Exterior paint finish shall be capable of withstanding at least 2,500 hours, with no visible corrosive effects, when tested in a salt spray and fog atmosphere in accordance with ASTM B 117-95 test procedure.
 9. Units with cooling coils shall include double sloped 304 stainless steel drain pans.
 10. Unit shall be provided with base discharge and return air openings. All openings through the base pan of the unit shall have upturned flanges of at least 1/2 inch in height around the opening.
 11. Unit shall include lifting lugs on the top of the unit.
 12. Unit base shall be fabricated of 1 inch thick double wall, impact resistant, rigid polyurethane foam panels.
 13. Unit shall include factory wired control panel compartment LED service lights.
- C. Electrical
1. Unit shall have a 5kAIC SCCR.
 2. Unit shall be provided with factory installed and factory wired, non-fused disconnect switch.
 3. Unit shall be provided with a factory installed and factory wired 115V, 12 amp GFI outlet disconnect switch in the unit control panel.
 4. Unit shall be provided with blower auxiliary contacts on the low voltage terminal block which close when the supply fans are energized.
 5. Unit shall be provided with remote stop/start terminals which require contact closure for unit operation. When these contacts are open the low voltage circuit is broken and the unit will not operate.
- D. Supply Fans
1. Unit shall include direct drive, unhooded, backward curved, plenum supply fans.
 2. Blowers and motors shall be dynamically balance and mounted on rubber isolators.
 3. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points.
 4. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.

E. Exhaust Fans

1. Exhaust dampers shall be sized for 100% relief.
2. Fans and motors shall be dynamically balanced.
3. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points.
4. Access to exhaust fans shall be through double wall, hinged access doors with quarter turn lockable handles.
5. Unit shall include belt driven, unhooded, backward curved, plenum exhaust fans.
6. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.

F. Cooling Coils

1. Evaporator Coils
 - a. Coils shall be designed for use with R-410A refrigerant and constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and galvanized steel end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.
 - b. Coils shall be 6 row high capacity.
 - c. Coils shall have interlaced circuitry and shall be 6 row high capacity.
 - d. Coils shall be hydrogen or helium leak tested.
 - e. Coils shall be furnished with factory installed expansion valves.

G. Refrigeration System

1. Unit shall be factory charged with R-454B refrigerant.
2. Compressors shall be scroll type with thermal overload protection and carry a 5 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory.
3. Compressors shall be mounted in an isolated service compartment which can be accessed without affecting unit operation. Lockable hinged compressor access doors shall be fabricated of double wall, rigid polyurethane foam injected panels to prevent the transmission of noise outside the cabinet.
4. Compressors shall be isolated from the base pan with the compressor manufacturer's recommended rubber vibration isolators, to reduce any transmission of noise from the compressors into the building area.
5. Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with expansion valve type refrigerant flow control.
6. Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with automatic reset low pressure and manual reset high pressure refrigerant safety controls, Schrader type service fittings on both the high pressure and low pressure sides and a factory installed replaceable core liquid line filter driers.
7. Unit shall include a VFD controlled, variable speed scroll compressor on each refrigeration circuit which shall be capable of modulating refrigerant capacity.
8. Unit shall include refrigerant injection compressors that can produce up to 100% capacity at 5°F ambient in heat pump heating mode. Heat pump shall be capable of operating in heating mode down to -20°F ambient. The unit shall include factory installed controls to intelligently switch modes and monitor compressor operation.
9. Lag refrigeration circuit shall be provided with hot gas reheat coil, modulating valves, electronic controller, supply air temperature sensor and a control signal terminal which allow the unit to have a dehumidification mode of operation, which includes supply air temperature control to prevent supply air temperature swings and overcooling of the space.
10. Reheat coil shall be multi-pass and fabricated from aluminum microchannel tubes.
11. The factory installed controls shall include a 3 minute off delay timer to prevent compressor short cycling. The controls shall also include an adjustable, 20 second delay timer for each additional capacity stage to prevent multiple capacity stages from starting simultaneously and an adjustable compressor lock out.

H. Condensers

1. Air-Cooled Condenser
 - a. Condenser fans shall be a vertical discharge, axial flow, direct drive fans.
 - b. Heat pump outdoor coil shall be constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and aluminum end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.

- c. Coils shall be designed for a minimum of 10°F of refrigerant sub-cooling.
 - d. Coils shall be hydrogen or helium leak tested.
 - e. Condenser fans shall be high efficiency electrically commutated motor driven with factory installed head pressure control module. Condenser airflow shall continuously modulate based on head pressure and cooling operation shall be allowed down to 35°F with adjustable compressor lockout.
- I. Heating Coils
- 1. Hot Water Heating Coils
 - a. Coils shall be certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 410 and be hydrogen or helium leak tested.
 - b. Coils shall be constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and galvanized steel end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.
 - c. Coils shall be two rows, half serpentine circuitry, and 12 fins per inch.
 - d. Coils shall be located in the reheat position downstream of the cooling coil.
 - e. Control valves shall be field supplied and field installed.
 - f. Hot water heating capacity shall be available for operation when heat pump heating is in operation and when heat pump heating is not in operation.
- J. Gas Heating - RTU-5
- 1. Stainless steel heat exchanger furnace shall carry a 25 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory.
 - 2. Gas furnace shall consist of stainless steel heat exchangers with multiple concavities, an induced draft blower and an electronic pressure switch to lockout the gas valve until the combustion chamber is purged and combustion airflow is established.
 - 3. Furnace shall include a gas ignition system consisting of an electronic igniter to a pilot system, which will be continuous when the heater is operating, but will shut off the pilot when heating is not required.
 - 4. High Turndown Modulating Natural Gas Furnace shall be equipped with modulating gas valves, adjustable speed combustion blowers, stainless steel tubular heat exchangers, and electronic controller. Combustion blowers and gas valves shall be capable of modulation. Electronic controller includes a factory wired, field installed supply air temperature sensor. Sensor shall be field installed in the supply air ductwork. Supply air temperature setpoint shall be adjustable on the electronic controller within the controls compartment. Gas heater shall be capable of capacity turndown ratio as shown on the unit rating sheet. Heat trace shall be include on the condensate drain line.
- K. Filters
- 1. Unit shall include 4 inch thick, pleated panel filters with an ASHRAEMERV rating of 13, upstream of the cooling coil. Unit shall also include 2 inch thick, pleated panel pre filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 8, upstream of the 4 inch standard filters.
 - 2. Unit shall include 1 inch aluminum mesh pre filters upstream of the outside air opening.
 - 3. Unit shall include a clogged filter switch.
 - 4. Unit shall include a Magnahelics gauge mounted in the controls compartment.
- L. Outside Air/Economizer
- 1. Unit shall include 0-100% economizer consisting of a motor operated outside air damper and return air damper assembly constructed of extruded aluminum, hollow core, airfoil blades with rubber edge seals and aluminum end seals. Damper blades shall be gear driven and designed to have no more than 20 cfm of leakage per sq ft. at 4 in. w.g. air pressure differential across the damper. Low leakage dampers shall be Class 2 AMCA certified, in accordance with AMCA Standard 511. Damper assembly shall be controlled by spring return DDC actuator. Unit shall include outside air opening bird screen, outside air hood, and barometric relief dampers.
- M. Energy Recovery
- 1. Unit shall contain a factory mounted and tested energy recovery wheel(s). The energy recovery wheel(s) shall be mounted in a rigid frame containing the wheel drive motor, drive belt, wheel seals and bearings.
 - 2. Wheel frame shall slide out for service and removal from the cabinet.

3. The energy recovery component shall incorporate a rotary wheel in an insulated cassette frame complete with seals, drive motor and drive belt.
4. The energy recovery cassette shall be an Underwriters Laboratories Recognized Component for electrical and fire safety. The wheel drive motor shall be an Underwriters Laboratory Recognized Component and shall be mounted in the cassette frame and supplied with a service connector or junction box. Thermal performance shall be certified by the manufacturer in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 84, Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers and AHRI Standard 1060, Rating Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment. Cassettes shall be listed in the AHRI Certified Products.
5. Energy recovery wheel cassette shall carry a 5 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory. The first 12 months from the date of equipment startup, or 18 months from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory, whichever is less, shall be covered under the standard AAON limited parts warranty. The remaining period of the warranty shall be covered by Airxchange. The 5 year warranty applies to all parts and components of the cassette, with the exception of the motor, which shall carry an 18 month warranty. Warranty shall cover material and workmanship that prove defective, within the specified warranty period, provided the Airxchange written instructions for Installation, Operation, and Maintenance have been followed. Warranty excludes parts associated with routine maintenance, such as belts. Refer to the Airxchange Energy Recovery Cassette Limited Warranty Certificate.
6. Unit shall include 2 inch thick, pleated panel outside air and exhaust air filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 8, upstream of the wheels.
7. Hinged service access doors shall allow access to the wheel(s).
8. Unit shall include energy recovery wheel defrost control which includes an adjustable temperature sensor and timer wired to periodically stop the wheel rotation, which allows the warm exhaust air to defrost the wheel.
9. Polymer Energy Recovery Wheels
 - a. Shall be provided with removable energy transfer segments. Cassette frame and structural components shall be constructed of G90 galvanized steel for corrosion resistance. Wheel structure shall consist of a welded hub, spoke and continuous rolled rim assembly of stainless steel, and shall be self-supporting without energy transfer segments in place. Segments shall be removable without the use of tools to facilitate maintenance and cleaning. Wheel bearings shall be selected to provide an L-10 life in excess of 400,000 hours. Rim shall be continuous rolled stainless steel and the wheel shall be connected to the shaft by means of taper locks.
 - b. All diameter and perimeter seals shall be provided as part of the cassette assembly and shall be factory set. Drive belts of stretch urethane shall be provided for wheel rim drive.
 - c. Polymer Energy recovery wheel cassette shall carry a 5 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory. The first 12 months from the date of equipment startup, or 18 months from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory, whichever is less, shall be covered under the standard AAON limited parts warranty. The remaining period of the warranty shall be covered by Airxchange. The 5-year warranty applies to all parts and components of the cassette, with the exception of the motor, which shall carry an 18 month warranty. Warranty shall cover material and workmanship that prove defective, within the specified warranty period, provided the Airxchange written instructions for installation, operation and maintenance have been followed. Warranty excludes parts associated with routine maintenance, such as belts. Refer to the Airxchange Energy Recovery Cassette Limited Warranty Certificate.
 - d. Total energy recovery wheels shall be coated with silica gel desiccant permanently bonded by a process without the use of binders or adhesives, which may degrade desiccant performance. The substrate shall be lightweight polymer and shall not degrade nor require additional coatings for application in marine or coastal environments. Coated segments shall be washable with detergent or alkaline coil cleaner and water. Desiccant shall not dissolve nor deliquesce in the presence of water or high humidity.

N. Controls

1. Factory Installed and Factory Provided Controller

- a. Unit controller shall be capable of controlling all features and options of the unit. Controller shall be factory installed in the unit controls compartment and factory tested. Controller shall be capable of stand alone operation with unit configuration, setpoint adjustment, sensor status viewing, unit alarm viewing, and occupancy scheduling available without dependence on a building management system.
 - b. Controller shall have an onboard clock and calendar functions that allow for occupancy scheduling.
 - c. Controller shall include non-volatile memory to retain all programmed values without the use of a battery, in the event of a power failure.
 - d. Makeup Air or Constant Volume Unit Controller
 - 1) Unit shall modulate cooling with constant airflow to meet ventilation outside air loads. Cooling capacity shall modulate based on supply air temperature.
 - 2) With modulating hot gas reheat, unit shall modulate cooling and hot gas reheat as efficiently as possible, to meet outside air humidity loads and prevent supply air temperature swings and overcooling of the space.
 - 3) Unit shall modulate heating with constant airflow to meet outside temperature heating loads. Modulating heating capacity shall modulate based on supply air temperature.
 - 4) Unit shall modulate cooling with constant airflow to meet space temperature cooling loads.
 - 5) With modulating hot gas reheat, unit shall modulate cooling and hot gas reheat as efficiently as possible, to meet space humidity loads and prevent supply air temperature swings and overcooling of the space.
 - 6) Unit shall modulate heating with constant airflow to meet space temperature heating loads. Modulating heating capacity shall modulate based on supply air temperature.
 - e. Unit configuration, setpoint adjustment, sensor status viewing, unit alarm viewing, and occupancy schedule shall be accomplished through the onboard unit manager touchscreen display or connection with PC running the license free Stratus Workstation. Controller shall support BACnet communication for third party integration into BACnet networks.
- O. Accessories
- 1. Unit shall be provided with a safety shutdown terminal block for field installation of a smoke detector which shuts off the unit's control circuit.

2.3 CURBS

- A. Curbs shall to be fully gasketed between the curb top and unit bottom with the curb providing full perimeter support, cross structure support and air seal for the unit. Curb gasket shall be furnished within the control compartment of the rooftop unit to be mounted on the curb immediately before mounting of the rooftop unit.
- B. Solid bottom curb shall be factory assembled and fully lined with curb rated 1 inch fiberglass insulation and include a wood nailer strip. (Curb shall be adjustable up to 3/4 inch per foot to allow for sloped roof applications.)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that roof is ready to receive work and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that proper power supply is available.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NFPA 90A.

- C. Mount units on factory built roof mounting curb providing watertight enclosure to protect ductwork and utility services. Install roof mounting curb level.
- D. Locate remote panels where indicated on drawings.

3.3 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Prepare and start equipment. Adjust for proper operation.

3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. Demonstrate operation to Owner's maintenance personnel.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.
- B. Provide service and maintenance of packaged roof top units for one year year from Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide routine maintenance service with a two month interval as maximum time period between calls.
- D. Include maintenance items as outlined in manufacturer's operating and maintenance data, including minimum of six filter replacements, minimum of one fan belt replacement, and controls check-out, adjustments, and recalibration.
- E. After each service call, submit copy of service call work order or report that includes description of work performed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 82 00
CONVECTION HEATING AND COOLING UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Unit ventilators.
- B. Blower-coil units.
- C. Duct-mounted coils.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 07 16 - HVAC Equipment Insulation.
- B. Section 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation.
- C. Section 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls.
- D. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- E. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.
- F. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping.
- G. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI Directory of Certified Product Performance - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI); Current Edition.
- B. AHRI 350 (SI/I-P) - Sound Performance Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment; 2025.
- C. AHRI 410 - Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils; 2001, with Addenda (2011).
- D. AHRI 840 (I-P) - Performance Rating of Unit Ventilators; 2021.
- E. AHRI 841 (SI) - Performance Rating of Unit Ventilators; 2021.
- F. ASHRAE Std 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- H. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2020.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide typical catalog of information including arrangements.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate cross sections of cabinets, grilles, bracing and reinforcing, and typical elevations.

2. Indicate air coil and frame configurations, dimensions, materials, rows, connections, and rough-in dimensions.
3. Submit schedules of equipment and enclosures typically indicating length and number of pieces of element and enclosure, corner pieces, end caps, cap strips, access doors, pilaster covers, and comparison of specified heat required to actual heat output provided.
4. Submit the following for blower-coil units indicating:
 - a. Overall dimensions including installation, operation, and service clearances.
 - b. Lift points, recommendations, and center of gravity.
 - c. Unit shipping, installation, and operating weights including dimensions.
 - d. Fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, color chart representing manufacturer's full range of available colors.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, color chip representing actual product in color and texture.
- F. Certificates: Certify that coils are tested and rated in accordance with AHRI 410.
- G. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions and recommendations.
- H. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and locations of access doors in radiation cabinets required for access or valving.
- I. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listings.
- J. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- K. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.
 2. Extra Filters: One set of each type and size.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer(s) shall provide whole unit parts and labor warranties that cover the unit(s) in continuation of the standard warranty for a period of 5 years from start-up. The warranty shall be provided by the manufacturer; third party insurance/warranty coverage is not acceptable.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Trane, a brand of Ingersoll Rand: www.trane.com/#sle.
 2. Magic Aire
 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Performance Data and Safety Requirements:
 1. Unit capacities certified and tested in accordance with AHRI 840 (I-P) (AHRI 841 (SI)) and AHRI 350 (SI/I-P).

CONVECTION HEATING AND COOLING UNITS

2. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL), Intertek (ETL), or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose indicated.
- C. Required Directory Listings: AHRI Directory of Certified Product Performance - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI).
- D. Hydronic Coils:
 1. Copper tubes mechanically expanded or bonded into evenly spaced aluminum fins.
 2. Factory pressure tested, hydrostatically, to not less than 350 psi.
 3. Provide insulated drain pan under chilled water coils, to prevent sweating, with field convertible left or right hand drain connections.
- E. Refrigerant Coils:
 1. Provide factory installed thermal expansion valves, properly sized to accommodate the selected condensing unit.
 2. Factory proof and leak tested to ensure leak tight operation.
 3. Provide insulated drain pan, to prevent condensation, with field convertible left or right hand connections.
 4. Refrigerant access ports shall be factory-supplied on the high and low side for easy refrigerant pressure or temperature testing.
- F. Cabinet: 16 gauge, 0.0747 inch sheet steel on solid base pan with exposed edges rounded. Provide removable front panels with quick-acting, key-operated cam locks. Provide removable die-cast or fabricated steel discharge grilles. For units having cooling coils, insulate internal parts and surfaces exposed to conditioned air stream with moisture resistant insulation. All steel surfaces are cleaned, phosphatized, rinsed, and dried before application of final finish paint. The paint shall be applied by an electrostatic powder spray system. The minimum thickness of paint shall be 1.5 mil that results in an appliance-grade finish. Cabinet end pockets shall be a minimum of 12 inches wide to facilitate piping and service. If less than 12 inches, unit manufacturer shall provide an extended cabinet or piping enclosure.
 1. Floor-mounted units shall have an integral pipe tunnel for convenient crossover of piping or electrical wiring. The front surface shall consist of three removable panels for quick access.
 2. The unit discharge grille shall be of a double deflection type to throw air in two directions
 3. To prevent entry of small objects into the fan, draw-through units shall be provided with a discharge grille screen.
 4. Units shall have four adjustable leg levelers.
 5. End panels shall be factory-installed on the unit.
 6. Front panel shall be 14 gauge and insulated for acoustical attenuation.
- G. Finish: Factory applied baked enamel of color on visible surfaces of enclosure or cabinet.
- H. Fan Assembly and Motor:
 1. A factory-mounted High-Medium-Low-Off switch shall control motor speed. Provide actual airflow data per specific coil option.
 2. For quick maintenance, the fan board assembly shall be a single, rigid assembly including fans, fan housing, bearing, and fan shaft. Fan assembly shall be easily removable through the front panel with two screws.
 3. Fan/coil arrangement shall be blow-through design to eliminate debris from falling into the spinning fan. This safety consideration helps prevent personal injury, noise, or equipment damage. The blow-through design shall protect the coil from freezing by placing the coil farther away from the inlet and mixing the room air and fresh air before it blows across the coil. The coil shall be placed near the discharge opening in order to attenuate fan noise.
 4. Motor: All motors shall be Brushless DC (BLDC)/Electronically Commutated Motors (ECM) factory programmed and run tested in assembled units.
 5. The motor controller shall be separate from the motor, mounted in a touch-safe control box for easy access with a built in integrated user interface and real language LED tachometer with continuous status display and integrated motor diagnostics.
 6. Motors shall have a soft ramp between speed changes to minimize the acoustical impact due to speed changes.

- I. Wall Louvers: Anodized aluminum wall intake box and louvers removable from frame with 1/2 inch square mesh galvanized screen in back of louver.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from standard and custom range.
- J. Filters: Each unit shall be equipped with a single MERV 13 filter accessible through the removal of a single unit front panel.
- K. Fresh Air and Room Air Dampers:
 - 1. The unit shall be equipped with a single-blade, mixing damper capable of varying the proportion of mixed air from 100 percent room air to 100 percent fresh air.
 - 2. Provide an ultra-low leak damper seal with stainless steel jamb seals. Leakage shall be less than 1 percent against 0.5 inches of external static pressure.
 - 3. Damper shall contain a continuous divider placed between the damper blades to separate the fresh air and room air compartments to prevent blow-through.
- L. Drain Pan:
 - 1. Unit drain pans are to be dual-sloped internal to the unit.
 - 2. Drain pan location shall facilitate visual inspection and cleaning. The drain pan shall be easily removable without the use of tools.
 - 3. The drain outlet shall be field configurable to either end pocket.
 - 4. The drain pan shall be constructed of smooth, corrosion resistant material. Stainless steel drain pans shall be provided as an equal to polymer resin drain pans.
 - 5. An auxiliary drain pan shall be provided which fully covers the piping cabinet.
 - 6. The condensate drain shall be internally or externally trapped via accepted ASHRAE guidelines.

2.2 BLOWER-COIL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Trane, a brand of Ingersoll Rand: www.trane.com/#sle.
 - 2. Magic Aire
- B. Performance Data and Safety Requirements:
 - 1. Coils rated and tested in accordance with AHRI 410.
 - 2. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL), Intertek (ETL), or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose indicated.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 90A for unit construction, including filters and related equipment, for protection of life and property from fire, smoke, and gases resulting from conditions having manifestations similar to fire.
- C. Unit Casing:
 - 1. Fabricate from heavy gauge galvanized steel sheet.
 - 2. Insulate inside walls with 1 inch thick, fiberglass insulation for thermal and acoustical control.
 - 3. Provide access panels allowing servicing of coils, drain pan, fan, motor, and drive.
 - 4. Provide knockouts or hanger rod holes at all four corners for suspended units.
- D. Air Coils:
 - 1. Aluminum fins mechanically expanded or bonded to copper tubes having standard sweat connections.
 - a. Water: Manual, automatic or self-venting, designed to a working pressure and temperature of not less than 250 psig and 200 degrees F.
 - b. Direct Expansion (DX): Thermal expansion valve and distributor, dehydrated, sealed with dry charge, and factory proof tested for leaks.
- E. Fans: Forward curved, centrifugal blower, dynamically balanced, adjustable speed V-belt drive with fan shaft supported by heavy-duty, permanently sealed ball bearings.
- F. Drain Pan: Cleanable, one-piece construction of polymer, galvanized steel, or stainless steel; with drain connection and sloped for positive drainage.
- G. Filters: Fully accessible, angled filter rack with throw-away filters.

CONVECTION HEATING AND COOLING UNITS

- H. Motors: EC type
- I. Mixing Box: Factory assembled fresh air and return air dampers including linkage and ready for field installation of damper actuator.

2.3 DUCT-MOUNTED COILS

A. Water Coils:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Aerofin Corporation: www.aerofin.com/#sle.
 - b. Direct Coil: www.directcoil.com/#sle.
 - c. Trane Technologies, PLC: www.trane.com/#sle.
 - d. USA Coil & Air: www.usacoil.com/#sle.
 - e. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
2. Coils rated and tested in accordance with AHRI 410.
3. Tubes: Material to consist of seamless copper or brass, mechanically expanded or tension wound to fins; appropriate tube joining methods based on tube material. Minimum tube thickness to be no less than 0.020 inch.
4. Fins: Material to consist of aluminum or copper, continuous plate type with full fin collars or individual helical finned tube type wound under tension. Maximum 12 fins per inch.
5. Casing: Heavy gauge galvanized steel with mounting holes, including intermediate tube supports if required by coil design and length.
6. Headers (Manifolds): Construct of seamless copper pipe, cast iron, or nonferrous material with tube connection appropriate to header material provided.
7. Acceptable Factory Testing Methods:
 - a. Proof test at 1.5 times the maximum operating pressure and leak test at the maximum operating temperature.
 - b. Leak test at minimum 300 psig air pressure under water.
 - c. Perform hydrostatic testing for coils with removable headers in accordance with approved shop drawings and normally accepted means and methods.

B. Refrigerant Coils:

1. Coils rated and tested in accordance with AHRI 410.
2. Tubes: Material to consist of seamless copper or brass, mechanically expanded or tension wound to fins; appropriate tube joining methods based on tube material.
3. Fins: Material to consist of aluminum or copper, continuous plate type with full fin collars or individual helical finned tube type wound under tension.
4. Casing: Heavy gauge, galvanized steel with mounting holes, including intermediate tube supports if required by coil design and length.
5. Suction Header: Construct of nonferrous material with tube connection appropriate to header material provided.
6. Liquid distributor: Brass or copper venture type with seamless copper distribution tubes; maximum 12 or 18 circuits per distributor.
7. Configuration: Down feed with bottom suction to prevent oil trapping.
8. Acceptable Factory Testing Methods:
 - a. Proof test at 1.5 times the maximum operating pressure and leak test at the maximum operating temperature.
 - b. Leak test at minimum 300 psig air pressure under water.
 - c. Perform hydrostatic testing for coils with removable headers in accordance with approved shop drawings and normally accepted means and methods.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are suitable for installation.

- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Install equipment exposed to finished areas after walls and ceilings are finished and painted.
- C. Do not damage equipment or finishes.
- D. Unit Ventilators:
 - 1. Locate as indicated, level and shim units, and anchor to structure.
 - 2. Coordinate exact location of wall louvers.
 - 3. Install shelving and auxiliary cabinetry.
 - 4. Provide wall trim pieces for continuous wall-to-wall installation.
- E. Units with Hydronic Coils:
 - 1. Provide with shut-off valve on supply piping and tamper-proof, automatic flow control fitting on return piping.
 - 2. If not easily accessible, extend air vent to exterior surface of cabinet for ease of servicing.
- F. Units with Cooling Coils: Connect drain pan to condensate drain.
- G. Blower-Coil Units:
 - 1. Verify all surfaces and openings at unit location can suitably accommodate unit(s).
 - 2. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 3. General piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections and drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- H. Air Coils:
 - 1. Install in ducts and casings in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
 - a. Support coil sections independent of piping on steel channel or double angle frames and secure to casing.
 - b. Provide frames for maximum of three coil sections.
 - c. Arrange supports to avoid piercing drain pans.
 - d. Provide airtight seals between coil and casing or duct.
 - 2. Coil Safeguards:
 - a. Protect coils to prevent damage to flanges and fins.
 - b. Comb out damaged fins.
 - 3. Install all coils level except cleanable coils with 1:50 pitch.
 - 4. Make connections to hydronic coils with unions and flanges.
 - 5. Cooling Coils:
 - a. Provide three break or six break moisture eliminators of galvanized 24 gauge, 0.0239 inch sheet steel, where air velocity exceeds 500 ft/min.
 - b. Cooling Condensate Drain Pan and Drain Connection:
 - 1) Fabricate from galvanized 20 gauge, 0.0359 inch sheet steel, extend 3 inches from face of entering air side, 6 inches from the face of the leaving air side, and 4 inches from the face of moisture eliminators.
 - 2) Design slope in accordance with ASHRAE Std 62.1 and install to prevent standing water.
 - 3) Pipe drains individually to floor drain with water seal trap.
 - c. Install condensate drain pan under each main cooling coil and intermediate condensate drain pan at each level of stacked cooling coils to collect all condensate from coil assembly, pipe header, pipe return bends, upstream run-off, and downstream carry-over.
 - d. Insulate bottom of intermediate drain pans for coils mounted in 100 percent outdoor air units with 3/8 inch thick flexible closed cell elastomeric insulation, with the upstream edge protected by stainless steel angle.
 - 6. Refrigerant Coils:
 - a. Provide sight glass in liquid line within 12 inches of coil.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Provide manufacturer's field representative to test, inspect, instruct, and observe.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After construction and painting is completed, clean exposed surfaces of units.
- B. Vacuum clean coils and inside of units.
- C. Touch-up marred or scratched surfaces of factory-finished cabinets using finish materials furnished by the manufacturer.
- D. Install new filters.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training for additional requirements.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide finished cabinet units with protective covers during the balance of construction.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 23 82 14
CHILLED BEAMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Active chilled beam units.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 23 09 23 - Direct Digital Control System for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- D. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.
- E. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 410 (SI/I-P) - Performance Rating of Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils; 2023.
- B. ASHRAE Std 55 - Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy; 2023, with Errata (2024).
- C. ASHRAE Std 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. ASHRAE Std 70 - Method of Testing the Performance of Air Outlets and Air Inlets; 2023.
- E. ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. ASHRAE Std 90.2 - High-Performance Energy Design of Residential Buildings; 2024, with Errata (2025).
- G. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2025a.
- H. ASTM C1427 - Standard Specification for Extruded Preformed Flexible Cellular Polyolefin Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2025.
- I. ASTM D1056 - Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials—Sponge or Expanded Rubber; 2020.
- J. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- K. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- L. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- M. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- N. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2024.

- O. UL 94 - Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. AHRI 1240 - Performance Rating of Active Chilled Beams.
- S. ASHRAE 200-2018 - Methods of Testing Chilled Beams

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Room Equipment Layout Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room designation, full equipment layout detail within room including: quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, mounting and attachment details. Include:
 - a. Unit weights and dimensions.
 - b. Ceiling assembly and mounting bracket details.
 - c. Border detail for ceiling suspension integration.
 - d. Manufacturers recommendations for installation.
 - 2. Indicate coil and frame configuration, weights, dimensions, materials, rows, connections, and rough-in dimensions.
 - 3. Finishes – as needed.
- C. Product Schedule: For active chilled beam units.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Active chilled beams and accessories shall be rated and tested for pressure as shown on the Drawings.
- C. Identification: Label each Induction Unit with the appropriate tagging identifier.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's warranty against defects in material and manufacture for a period of twelve months from the initial startup-up, or eighteen months from date of shipment, whichever occurs first.
- B. Submit manufacturer's warranty filled out in Owner's name and registered with the manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Carson Solutions; Model CB-H24: www.carsonsolutions.com.
- B. Or Engineer Approved Equal.

- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for substitution procedures.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Capacities and Characteristics shall be as indicated on drawings.

2.3 CONSTRUCTION

- A. Casing to be manufactured from 20 gauge G-60 galvanized sheet steel and 20 gauge CRS sheet steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M standards. Casing shall house an integral hydronic coil and a primary air plenum delivering air to a series of induction nozzles. A single round primary air connection shall be mounted on either side or top of the unit as indicated in the Drawings. All sheet metal joints in the primary air plenum and air connection spigot shall be sealed airtight.
- B. The face of the beam shall consist of a room air induction section of 51% free area perforated steel flanked by two linear supply slots. The entire visible face section shall be finished in WHITE powder coated paint or as specified by the Architect. Maximum overall height shall not exceed nine inches for inlet sizes 4, 5, and 6 inches.
1. If a non-standard 8 inch supply inlet is selected whereas the plenum height will be a maximum of 11 inches.
- C. Face panel shall be fully hinged to allow access to hydronic coil. The hinge face panel to be also reversible to allow the swing direction to be changed if necessary by the installing contractor.
- D. Beams shall be provided with side and end details which will allow its integration into the applicable acoustical ceiling grid as specified by the Architect.
1. Exposed Mounted Border Style Casing shall include factory mounted Coanda plates to ensure horizontal discharge of the supply air with a nominal width of 36 inches.
- E. K-Factor Label and Air Pressure Commissioning Port: Beams shall be fitted with an uncapped air pressure tap for measuring the static pressure differential between the primary air plenum and the room. Air pressure port shall be accessible from the hinged face panel. Each active chilled beam shall be provided with an airflow calibration label affixed showing primary airflow rate for given nozzle configuration at varying plenum pressures.
- F. Hydronic Coil: Active Chilled Beams shall be provided with an integral hydronic coil providing cooling and heating performance as indicated on plans and schedules. The coils shall be mounted horizontally and shall be manufactured per the following details:
1. Coils shall have a continuous aluminum plate fin surface, with seamless copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fin collars for secure, crack-free bonding.
 2. Copper tube connections shall be 1/2" O.D. x 0.028" thick.
 3. Aluminum fins shall have a minimum fin thickness of 0.0055".
 4. Aluminum fin spacing shall not exceed 8 fins per inch.
 5. Coils shall be tested to a minimum of 360 psi and a max of 500 psi. air pressure under water.
 6. Coil normal operating pressure is rated at 250 psig max up to 300°F. The maximum working pressure should not exceed 360 psi.
 7. Water drains shall be located at each coil circuit low point.
 8. Coils shall be circuited for 2 pipe operation.
 9. Coil connections shall be 1/2" plain copper pipe or 1/2" NPT male threaded fittings.
 10. Coils shall be delivered cleaned and flushed.
 11. Coils to be AHRI 410 certified by coil manufacturer.
- G. The chilled water coil shall be provided with 1/2" NPT male threaded fittings where specified. These fittings must be suitable for field connection to a similar (1/2" NPT) female flexible hose spigot and shall be at least 1 1/2" long to facilitate field connection (by others). Other fitting sizes and connections are available from factory.
- H. Stainless Steel Braided Hoses
1. One end connection shall swivel to allow for equipment movement during operation.

2. ½" – 1" shall be made of CPE (Chlorinated Polyethylene).
 3. 1¼" – 2" shall be made of EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer).
 4. Maximum working pressures:
 - a. 500# WPSI Static (½" – 1").
 - b. 200# WPSI Static (1¼" – 2").
 5. Maximum temperature rating: 212°F.
- I. Source Quality Control: Comply with ASHRAE 200, AHRI-410, and AHRI 1240
1. Coil capacity rated in accordance with AHRI 410 (SI/I-P) Forced Circulation Air-Cooling & Air-Heating Coils
 2. Capacity performance and sound levels of induction coils (chilled beams) rated in accordance with ASHRAE 200, Methods of Testing Chilled Beams.
 3. Capacity and performance of active chilled beams coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI 1240 - Performance Rating of Active Chilled Beams.

2.4 GENERAL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a removable, temporary protective covering at the factory before shipping.
- B. Protect coil and piping openings with removable end caps before shipping.
- C. Protect duct connection openings with removable end caps before shipping.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive chilled beam units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for duct, piping and wiring to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been field corrected.
- D. Ensure all units received have appropriate and individual tagging identifiers.
 1. Chilled Beam manufacturer must label each shipping package and equipment, including accessories, with room by room tags, along with model numbers for ease of site coordination.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the size, tagging and capacity of the beams to their proper location.
- B. Install active chilled beam level and plumb in accordance with manufacturer's IOM documentation.
- C. Chilled beams up to five feet in length shall be independently suspended from the structure above by four (4) threaded rods of ¾" diameter. For beams beyond six feet in length, six (6) threaded rods of ¾" diameter shall be used. Wire rope is allowable as a substitute.
- D. Install piping adjacent to beams to allow service and maintenance.
- E. Installing overhead beams according to Division 23 – Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment".

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping and Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

CHILLED BEAMS

- B. Comply with requirements for general duty valves specified in Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- C. Make piping connections to chilled beam units at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Verify any and all identification tags are visible.
- E. Verify control connections are complete to control valves as needed.
- F. Verify controls respond to inputs specified.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- B. Make ductwork connections to chilled beam units at locations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Where installing ductwork adjacent to chilled beam unit allow space for service and maintenance.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

3.6 CONTROLS

- A. Comply with requirements for controls specified in Section 23 09 23 - Direct Digital Control System for HVAC.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify hydronic piping and valves. Comply with requirements specified in Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exposed surfaces of chilled beam units from damage with factory-installed protective covering. Maintain covering in place until start of unit testing and balancing.
- B. Protect chilled beam units' water connections with factory-installed protective covers and keep them covered until making final field piping connections.
- C. Clean chilled beam units inside and out to a factory-new condition.
- D. Reject damaged chilled beam units and replace them with new units.
- E. Only if acceptable to the Owner, minor damage to finishes may be repaired as required to restore the beams to factory-new appearance. Any variation in visual appearance between factory and repaired finish shall be rejected.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner shall engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill the system with water under design pressure and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

- D. Chilled beam units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, and route to Owner, Architect, Engineer, and Contractor.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested, within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chilled beam ventilation units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 82 26
INDUCTION UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Floor mounted, cabinet style, displacement induction ventilation active chilled beams.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 23 09 23 - Direct Digital Control System for HVAC.
- C. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- D. Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties.
- E. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- F. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- G. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 410 (SI/I-P) - Performance Rating of Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils; 2023.
- B. ANSI/ASA S12.60 PART 1 - American National Standard Acoustical Performance Criteria, Design Requirements, and Guidelines for Schools, Part 1: Permanent Schools; 2010 (Reaffirmed 2024).
- C. ASHRAE Std 55 - Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy; 2023, with Errata (2024).
- D. ASHRAE Std 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2025.
- F. ASTM C1427 - Standard Specification for Extruded Preformed Flexible Cellular Polyolefin Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2025.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- J. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2024.
- K. UL 94 - Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, mounting details, and performance data including throw and drop, static pressure drop, and sound ratings per octave band.
 - 2. Room Equipment Layout Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room designation, full equipment layout detail within room to include quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 3. Room Equipment Layout Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room designation, full equipment layout detail within room to include: quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
 - 4. Cabinet Finishes – as specified

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.
- B. Identification: Label each induction displacement induction unit with the appropriate tagging identifier.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's warranty against defects in material and manufacture for a period of twelve months from the initial startup-up, or eighteen months from date of shipment, whichever occurs first.
- B. Submit manufacturer's warranty filled out in Owner's name and registered with the manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Carson Solutions; Model QLCI: www.carsonsolutions.com.
- B. Or Engineer Approved Equal.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for substitution procedures.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Capacities and Characteristics shall be as indicated on drawings.

2.3 CONSTRUCTION

- A. General Description:
 - 1. Assembly shall consist of a displacement induction ventilating air-conditioning terminal housed in an architecturally approved enclosure. All internal sheet metal components shall be galvanized to inhibit corrosion. If perforated panels are utilized in the construction internal components shall be painted black to reduce visibility.
 - 2. Terminal shall consist of round duct connection(s), a series of metal injection nozzles, integral two pipe heat transfer coil, and an integral perforated equalizing grid behind the discharge louver to reduce velocity and noise.

3. Primary air and water piping connections shall be configured to allow connection of up to three units in series.
 4. No integral fans, compressors, or other components requiring a power supply shall be allowed within the terminal room equipment.
 5. Displacement terminals must be able to handle 100% outside air temperatures between 50°F to 55°F and provide supply air to the space so that the temperature gradient through the occupied space falls within the guidelines of ASHRAE Std 55, Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy.
 6. Displacement terminal units shall have a 3 inch high toe kick-plate to elevate the painted cabinet above the floor level. Maximum cabinet height to the top of the unit above the floor level shall not exceed thirty inches.
 7. The heat transfer coil shall be easily removable from the cabinet and fully accessible from the front panel for ease of cleaning.
 - a. Coils shall have a continuous aluminum plate fin surface, with seamless copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fin collars for secure, crack-free bonding.
 - b. Copper tube connections shall be ½" O.D. x 0.028" thick.
 - c. Aluminum fins shall have a minimum fin thickness of 0.0055".
 - d. Aluminum fin spacing shall not exceed 8 fins per inch.
 - e. Coils shall be tested to a minimum of 300 psi working pressure and a max of 450 psi air pressure under water.
 - f. Coil normal operating pressure is rated at 250 psi max up to 200°F. The maximum working pressure should not exceed 300 psi.
 - g. Manual air vents shall be located at each circuit high point.
 - h. Coils shall be circuited for two pipe operation.
 - i. Coils shall have integral drain fittings on each circuit low point.
 - j. Coil connections shall be ½" NPT male threaded fittings.
 - k. Coils shall be delivered cleaned and flushed.
 8. Condensate drain pans shall be constructed of CRS steel or Stainless Steel. Condensate drain pans must be easily accessible for cleaning via the removable front panel.
 - a. A ½" OD plastic drain fitting is terminated at roughly 2" below the condensate drain pan.
 - b. Provide an atrium style drain fitting to prevent clogging.
 - c. Condensate drain fittings shall be factory capped and must be removed if Piping Contractor is field installing condensate piping.
- B. Cabinet Construction Details:
1. Cabinets shall be constructed of minimum 16-gauge ASTM A1008/A1008M CS Type B cold rolled sheet steel and finished with powder coat paint in a standard or custom color as selected by Architect. (see Notes on Schedule). Architect must approve the custom color.
 2. Finish shall be DuroCoat Sand Matte Textured Powder Coating to hide small scratches and fingerprints. Smooth, non-textured gloss paint finishes are NOT acceptable due to high-traffic fingerprint pickup, and highly reflective properties.
 3. Construction shall be sufficient to allow a 250 lb maintenance personnel to stand on the cabinet without any deflection.
 4. Cabinet structure must have a front panel center installed mullion, bisecting each diffuser face panels into two equal sections, thereby providing each cabinet unit with a minimum of four separate sections (two supply outlet panels and two return air panels) for rigidity and ease of removal. Diffusers with single face access panels will NOT be acceptable due to extreme removal and reduced rigidity concerns.
 5. Face panels shall be louvered, pencil-proof, and at least a 45 percent free area. Cabinet structure must have an integral front center panel mullion for structural rigidity. If perforated panels are provided all internal components such as coils, condensate drain pans, and sheet metal block-offs must be painted satin black to minimize mechanical equipment display.
 6. Front louvers must be easy to remove and be less than 42" length for rigidity and ease of access.
 - a. Front induction panels shall be lockable with multiple cam locks to allow for easy access to the hydronic coil. Sheet metal, bolts, or TEK screws are NOT an acceptable means for securing induction panel assembly or removal for routine maintenance.

- b. The top surface of cabinet shall be flat and allow the entire surface to be used as a bookshelf or other useable storage.
 - c. The cabinet shall have structural frame around louver opening to ensure structural strength when louver is removed for service.
 - d. Cabinet shall be rated to support a 250 lb load without deflection.
 - 7. Supply Air Diffuser Plate: An angled perforated steel plate shall be installed upstream of the supply air discharge louver to promote even air distribution into the occupied space.
- C. Duct and Pipe Chase and Additional Enclosures
 - 1. Furnish an architecturally approved solid cover with a matte finish that matches the cabinet color and construction for all required units to conceal all vertical ductwork and piping to the units. See Plans for locations. Field measure height requirements before release of order.
- D. Displacement Induction Operation Description:
 - 1. Outside air at the primary airflow rate listed on the Plans and Schedules shall be conditioned and delivered displacement units at the scheduled supply air conditions.
 - a. This conditioned primary air shall be ducted to the lead connection(s) of a series of displacement induction terminals.
 - b. Injection of the primary air through metal induction nozzles shall induce room air through an integral heat transfer coil and recondition return airstream prior to mixing with primary air.
 - c. The mixture of 2/3 induced room air and 1/3 primary air shall pass through an equalization plate and discharge to the occupied space at the scheduled outlet velocities to assure displacement ventilation during system operation. Primary outside air that exits the top of the cabinet is not acceptable as the mixed air is not introduced into the breathing zone per ASHRAE Std 62.1. Twenty percent excess outside air must be provided in heating mode for units that use primary air to drive vertical airflow into the occupied space breathing zone.
 - d. Performance Requirements:
 - 1) Diffuser Exit Air Velocity: Measured at five feet from the diffuser.
 - 2) Primary Air Plenum Pressures: Less than or equal to scheduled pressures.
 - 3) Room Sound Levels: Less than or equal to scheduled dBA and NC levels.
 - 4) Sensible Cooling and Heating Loads: Equal to or greater than scheduled levels.
 - 5) Primary Air, Induction Rates, or Supply Air CFMs.
- E. K-Factor Label and Air Pressure Commissioning Port: All displacement induction diffusers shall be fitted with an uncapped air pressure tap for measuring the static pressure differential between the primary air plenum and the room. Air pressure ports shall be accessible behind the upper-left return/induction front face panel. Each displacement unit shall be provided with an affixed airflow calibration label indicating primary airflow rate for each nozzle configuration at varying plenum pressures.
- F. Acoustic Performance
 - 1. Terminals shall be sized and selected such that their collective noise generation shall not contribute to a classroom noise level exceeding an A-Weighted value of 35 dBA per ANSI/ASA S12.60 PART 1 Acoustical Guidelines for Schools. Noise Criteria (NC) sound levels of the individual terminals shall not exceed NC-27.
- G. Accessories
 - 1. Architectural Cabinet Sections: All architectural cabinet sections shall be constructed of the same gauge metal and paint finish as specified for main unit cabinet
 - a. Basic Utility Compartment: Sections with removable access door and notched piping passage as detailed on Plans.
 - b. Basic Bookshelf Selection: Sections with custom adjustable shelving, and notched piping passage as detailed on Plans.
 - c. Blank Filler Section: Include horizontal fill section that can be cut to length, floor angles, wall offset strips, and mounting hardware as detailed on Plans
 - d. Vertical Duct Cover: For entrance of overhead primary air. Includes wall angles, optional removable access doors/covers, cover plates, and countersunk screws as detailed on Plans.
 - 2. Stainless Steel Braided Flexible Hoses
 - a. Provide Swivel FNPT as required

- b. End connections shall swivel to allow for equipment movement during operation.
 - c. Maximum working temperature / pressures: 300 psi
 - d. Provide stainless steel ferrules on each end of the hose.
- H. Source Quality Control: Comply with ASHRAE 200, AHRI 410 (SI/I-P), ANSI 1260, and AHRI 1240
 - 1. Capacity performance and sound levels of induction coils (chilled beams) shall be rated in accordance with ASHRAE 200, Methods of Testing Chilled Beams
 - 2. Coil capacity rated in accordance with AHRI 410 (SI/I-P), Forced Circulation Air-Cooling & Air-Heating Coils
 - 3. Sound levels shall be certified in accordance with ANSI/ASA S12.60 PART 1, Acoustics for Classrooms
 - 4. Capacity and performance of active chilled beams coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI 1240, Performance Rating of Active Chilled Beams.

2.4 GENERAL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a removable, temporary protective covering at the factory before shipping.
- B. Protect coil and piping openings with removable end caps before shipping.
- C. Protect duct connection openings with removable end caps before shipping.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive displacement induction ventilation chilled beams for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for duct, piping, and wiring to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation of the chilled beams, and accessories only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected to include, but not limited to confirming that the floor is level, and that adjacent walls are plumb. Proceed with installation only when the adverse conditions have been field corrected.
- D. Ensure all units received must have appropriate and individual tagging identifiers.
 - 1. Manufacturer must label each shipping package and equipment, including accessories, with room tags, and Model numbers for ease of site coordination.
- E. Installation and operation of the units shall be in strict accordance with the latest issue of the Manufacturer's Installation, Operation, and Maintenance (IOM) Manual

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Displacement induction units and accessories shall arrive on site as a factory assembled, housed cabinet structure. Cabinets sections shall only require secure attachment to the wall and associated air and water connections. Field erection of cabinet framing support members or diffuser cabinet housing panels shall be not allowed due to excessive field labor requirements and uniform fit and finish variability.
- B. Install displacement induction level and plumb in accordance with manufacturer's Installation, Operation, Maintenance (IOM) Manuals.
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space for proper service and maintenance.
- D. Mounting Boards: Two, 2x4's shall be provided along the entire length of wall where units are to be installed per manufacturers IOM.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping and Section 23 21 14 - Hydronic Specialties. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements for general duty valves specified in Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- C. Make piping connections to displacement induction units at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to displacement induction units, allow adequate space for service and maintenance.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- B. Make ductwork connections to displacement induction units at locations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Where installing ductwork adjacent to displacement induction unit allow space for service and maintenance.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

3.6 AUTOMATIC CONTROLS

- A. Comply with requirements for controls specified in Section 23 09 23 - Direct Digital Control System for HVAC.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify hydronic piping and valves. Comply with requirements specified in Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exposed surfaces of displacement induction units from damage with factory installed protective covering. Maintain covering in place until start of unit testing and balancing.
- B. Protect displacement induction units' air connections with factory installed protective covers and keep them covered until making final field duct connections.
- C. Clean displacement induction units inside and out to a factory new condition.
- D. Reject damaged displacement induction units and replace them with new units.
- E. Only if acceptable to the Owner, minor damage to finishes may be repaired as required to restore displacement induction units to factory-new appearance. Any variation in visual appearance between factory and repaired finish shall be rejected.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner shall engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory authorized service representative.

- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill the system with water under design pressure and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- D. Displacement induction units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, and route to Owner, Architect, Engineer, and Contractor.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested, within twelve months from date of Substantial Completion provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain displacement induction ventilation units.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 05 00
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General requirements applicable to all components and systems included in Electric Work Prime Contract
- B. Products Installed but Not Furnished Under This Section
- C. Make all electrical connections to equipment shown on Drawings and furnished by other Prime Contractors. Obtain approved wiring diagrams and location drawings for roughing in and final connections from Prime Contractor furnishing equipment. Provide disconnect switches, push button stations, and similar components, required but not furnished with equipment as shown on Drawings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements:
- B. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Additional requirements for alterations work.
- C. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AIA American Institute of Architects
- B. AISC American Institute of Steel Construction
- C. ANSI American National Standards Institute
- D. ASTM American Society of Testing Materials
- E. IEEE Institute of Electric and Electronic Engineers
- F. IES Illuminating Engineering Society
- G. NBFU National Board of Fire Underwriters
- H. NEC National Electric Code
- I. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
- J. NETA International Electrical Testing Association
- K. NFPA National Fire Protection Association
- L. UL Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Design Requirements - Provide complete systems, properly tested, balanced, and ready for operation including necessary details, items and accessories although not expressly shown or specified, including (but not limited to):
 - 1. All wiring and conduit for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.
 - 2. All electrical devices and equipment for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

- B. Systems included, but not limited to:
 - 1. Electrical Distribution
 - 2. Electrical Connections
 - 3. Electric Layouts: Arrange all panels, disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, equipment, raceways, and similar components neatly, orderly and symmetrically. Provide 3/4-inch plywood backboards for all surface mounted panels, disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, and similar equipment. Arrangements shown on Drawings are diagrammatic only; provide and adjust raceways, wiring, and other components as required.
 - 4. Power Interruptions and Scheduled Outages: Coordinate scheduling of all power interruptions and outages with Owner. EC shall confirm with Owner prior to interruption of power, which building systems are considered critical and must remain operational during the interruption. If a scheduled power outage is to extend beyond one standard workday, EC shall provide temporary power to operate critical building systems (including, but not limited to fire alarm system, security system, building access control system, and building energy management control system).

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with all applicable Federal, State and Local Building and Electrical Codes, Laws, Ordinances, and Regulations, and comply with all applicable NFPA, National Electrical Code and Utility Company requirements and regulations. Provide Underwriter's Laboratory Seal on all materials.
- B. Permits and Inspections: Obtain all approvals, tests, and inspections required by Architect, Engineer, Local Electrical Inspector, agent or agency specified in Project Manual, or National, State, or Local Codes and Ordinances.
- C. Schedule electrical inspection by a third party inspection agency, such as New York State Board of Fire Underwriters or equivalent, acceptable to the local authority having jurisdiction, and submit final inspection certificate to Architect.
- D. Furnish all materials and labor necessary for tests and pay all costs associated with tests and inspections.
- E. Conduct all tests under load for load balancing and where required by Codes, Regulations, Ordinances, or Technical Specification.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Take all reasonable precautions to store materials and products to protect finishes and not permit dust and dirt to penetrate equipment.
- B. Replace all equipment damaged beyond reasonable repair as required by Architect.
- C. Refinish any equipment with marks, stains, scratches, dents, etc., as required by Architect.

1.7 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. New Construction
 - 1. Openings, Chases, Recesses, Sleeves, Lintels and Bucks (required for admission of Electric Work Prime Contract systems and components): Coordinate requirements with General Work Prime Contractor for inclusion in General Work Prime Contract. Furnish all necessary information (e.g. locations and sizes) to General Work Prime Contractor in ample time for installation of systems and components included in Electric Work Prime Contract.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to General Work Prime Contractor all anchor bolts required for Electric Work Prime Contract construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Work Prime Contract.
 3. Locate settings, check locations as installation in General Work Prime Contract progresses, and provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.
- B. Existing Construction: Unless otherwise specified, employ General Work Prime Contractor for all cutting, patching, repairing and replacing of general work required for installation of systems and components included in Electric Work Prime Contract. Secure approval before cutting.
1. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to General Work Prime Contractor all anchor bolts required for Electric Work Prime Contract construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Work Prime Contract. Provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.
 2. Rough Openings in Roofs: Refer to Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

1.8 ALTERATION PROCEDURES

- A. In locations where existing non-TCLP compliant fluorescent lamps are to be removed, all removals and disposal shall be in strict accordance with Section 01 35 17 - Alteration Project Procedures, and Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal; Landfill diversion proposals; Waste Disposal Reports shall be done as part of Electrical Work Prime Contract.
- B. In locations where existing devices are indicated to be disconnected and removed and existing circuit is not scheduled to be reused:
1. Remove circuit conductors back to source.
 2. Modify panel directory for that circuit.
 3. Remove all existing exposed and accessible conduit
 4. Provide blank cover plate over existing recessed junction boxes or back boxes. Paint cover plates in finished areas to match existing room finish.
 5. Patch and paint existing walls where disturbed by the electrical demolition. Refer to Section 01 35 17 - Alteration Project Procedures for additional requirements for patching and painting.
- C. In locations where existing devices are to remain in place, ensure circuits feeding such devices remain operational. Modify existing circuits as required to allow new construction to occur and to maintain all necessary circuitry to existing devices.
- D. In locations where entire existing system is being removed or modified:
1. Refer to individual system specification sections for Documentation and Testing Requirements prior to any alteration work on any system.
 2. Take all necessary measures to ensure that down time will not compromise safety
 3. Notify Owner, Architect and all other Prime Contractors not less than 2 weeks prior to interruptions in service.
 4. Coordinate work schedule to minimize duration of system outage during hours when building is occupied.
 5. Refer to Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for additional information and requirements.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 01 30 00 - Submittal Procedures and as modified below. Refer to submittal listing in each section for specific items required.
- B. Factory-Finished Surfaces: On all submittals, indicate standard factory color. Where more than one color is available, selection made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of Section 01 78 00, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Electric Work Instructions" manual described in that section.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Furnish and install all sleeves, inserts, panels, raceways, boxes, etc., ahead of general construction work and maintain Contractor personnel at Site during installation of general construction work to be responsible for and to maintain these items in position.
- B. Unless otherwise noted elsewhere in Contract Documents, bear expense of all cutting, patching, repairing or replacing of work of other trades made necessary by any fault, error or tardiness on part of Electrical Work Prime Contract or damage done by Electric Work Prime Contract. Employ and pay Prime Contractor whose work is involved.
- C. Do not cut waterproofed floors or walls for admission of any equipment or materials and do not pierce any structural members without written permission.

3.2 DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLETE ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Thoroughly demonstrate and instruct Owner's designated representative in care and operation of all electrical systems and equipment furnished and installed in Electric Work Prime Contract.
- B. System Operator: Maintain competent operator at building for at least 2 days in 2 consecutive weeks after Owner takes occupancy of major parts of building to operate systems and equipment in presence of Owner's representative.
- C. Factory Representative: In addition to demonstration and instruction specified above, provide technically qualified factory representatives from manufacturers of major equipment, to train Owner's representatives in care and operation of applicable products as specified in applicable technical sections of Division 26.
- D. Coordinate and schedule time and place of all training through the Architect at the Owner's convenience.
- E. Submit letters attesting to satisfactory completion of all instructions, including date of completion of instruction, names of persons in attendance and signature of Owner's authorized representative
- F. Architect's representative must be present when Owner's representatives participate in instruction.
- G. The following equipment and systems are included:
 - 1. Emergency generator
 - 2. Lighting dimming systems
 - 3. Fire alarm system

3.3 CLEANING AND REPAIR

- A. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or that are to be reused.
- B. Provide full inspection of exposed finishes.
- C. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris.
- D. Repair damaged surfaces including chips, scratches, and abrasions. Damp Rag clean all electrical equipment, panels, boxes, and accessories.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 05
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical demolition.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Additional requirements for alterations work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Materials and equipment for patching and extending work: As specified in individual sections.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that abandoned wiring and equipment serve only abandoned facilities.
- B. Demolition drawings are based on casual field observation and existing record documents.
- C. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
- D. Beginning of demolition means installer accepts existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Disconnect electrical systems in walls, floors, and ceilings to be removed.
- B. Coordinate utility service outages with utility company.
- C. Provide temporary wiring and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction. When work must be performed on energized equipment or circuits, use personnel experienced in such operations.

3.3 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING ELECTRICAL WORK

- A. Remove, relocate, and extend existing installations to accommodate new construction.
- B. Remove abandoned wiring to source of supply.
- C. Remove exposed abandoned conduit, including abandoned conduit above accessible ceiling finishes. Cut conduit flush with walls and floors, and patch surfaces.
- D. Disconnect abandoned outlets and remove devices. Remove abandoned outlets if conduit servicing them is abandoned and removed. Provide blank cover for abandoned outlets that are not removed.

- E. Disconnect and remove abandoned panelboards and distribution equipment.
- F. Disconnect and remove electrical devices and equipment serving utilization equipment that has been removed.
- G. Disconnect and remove abandoned luminaires. Remove brackets, stems, hangers, and other accessories.
- H. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.
- I. Maintain access to existing electrical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

3.4 CLEANING AND REPAIR

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for additional requirements.
- B. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or that are to be reused.
- C. Panelboards: Clean exposed surfaces and check tightness of electrical connections. Replace damaged circuit breakers and provide closure plates for vacant positions. Provide typed circuit directory showing revised circuiting arrangement.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 19
LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Single conductor building wire.
- B. Metal-clad cable.
- C. Wire and cable for 600 volts and less.
- D. Wiring connectors.
- E. Electrical tape.
- F. Heat shrink tubing.
- G. Oxide inhibiting compound.
- H. Wire pulling lubricant.
- I. Cable ties.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 05 - Selective Demolition for Electrical: Disconnection, removal, and/or extension of existing electrical conductors and cables.
- C. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems: Additional requirements for grounding conductors and grounding connectors.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- B. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013 (Reapproved 2024).
- C. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2023.
- D. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- E. ASTM B787/B787M - Standard Specification for 19 Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductors for Subsequent Insulation; 2004 (Reapproved 2020).
- F. ASTM D3005 - Standard Specification for Low-Temperature Resistant Vinyl Chloride Plastic Pressure-Sensitive Electrical Insulating Tape; 2024.
- G. ASTM D4388 - Standard Specification for Nonmetallic Semi-Conducting and Electrically Insulating Rubber Tapes; 2020.

- H. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- I. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Type Metal-Clad (MC) Cable; 2018.
- J. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; 2021.
- K. NETA ATS - Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2025.
- L. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- M. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 267 - Outline of Investigation for Wire-Pulling Compounds; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 486D - Sealed Wire Connector Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 510 - Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene, and Rubber Insulating Tape; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- T. UL 1569 - Metal-Clad Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate sizes of raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures installed under other sections with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
 - 2. Coordinate with electrical equipment installed under other sections to provide terminations suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
 - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conductors and cables, including detailed information on materials, construction, ratings, listings, and available sizes, configurations, and stranding.
- C. Manufactured Wiring System Shop Drawings: Provide plan views indicating proposed system layout with components identified; indicate branch circuit connections.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed circuiting arrangements. Record actual routing for underground circuits.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with all requirements of the Energy Conservation Construction Code in the State of New York, including but not limited to US Department of Energy, IECC 2018, and ASHRAE 90.1, including all updates, revisions and amendments.
- B. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conductors and cables in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conductors and cables for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Provide single conductor building wire installed in suitable raceway unless otherwise indicated, permitted, or required.
- C. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable is not permitted.
- D. Concealed Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway or metal clad cable.
- E. Exposed Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway.
- F. Above Accessible Ceilings: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway or metal clad cable.
- G. Wet or Damp Interior Locations: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway.
- H. Exterior Locations: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway.
- I. Underground Installations: Use only building wire with Type THHN/THWN insulation in raceway.
- J. Use solid conductors for all 12 AWG circuits. Use stranded conductors only for 10 AWG and larger.
- K. Use conductor not smaller than 16 AWG for control circuits.
- L. Use 10 AWG stranded conductors for 20 ampere, 120 volt branch circuits longer than 75 feet.
- M. Use 10 AWG stranded conductors for 20 ampere, 277 volt branch circuits longer than 150 feet.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Provide new conductors and cables manufactured not more than one year prior to installation.
- D. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, etc. as required for a complete operating system.

- E. Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- F. Thermoplastic-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 83.
- G. Thermoset-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 44.
- H. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding: Also comply with Section 26 05 26.
- I. Conductor Material:
 - 1. Provide copper conductors only. Aluminum conductors are not acceptable for this project. Conductor sizes indicated are based on copper.
 - 2. Copper Conductors: Soft drawn annealed, 98 percent conductivity, uncoated copper conductors complying with ASTM B3, ASTM B8, or ASTM B787/B787M unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tinned Copper Conductors: Comply with ASTM B33.
- J. Minimum Conductor Size:
 - 1. Branch Circuits: 12 AWG.
 - a. Exceptions:
 - 1) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 75 feet: 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
 - 2) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 150 feet: 8 AWG, for voltage drop.
 - 3) 20 A, 277 V circuits longer than 150 feet: 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
- K. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- L. Conductor Color Coding:
 - 1. Color code conductors as indicated unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction. Maintain consistent color coding throughout project.
 - 2. Color Coding Method: Integrally colored insulation.
 - a. Conductors size 4 AWG and larger may have black insulation color coded using vinyl color coding electrical tape.
 - 3. Color Code:
 - a. 480Y/277 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
 - 1) Phase A: Brown.
 - 2) Phase B: Orange.
 - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
 - 4) Neutral/Grounded: Gray.
 - b. 208Y/120 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - 4) Neutral/Grounded: White.
 - c. 240/120 V, 1 Phase, 3 Wire System:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Neutral/Grounded: White.
 - d. Equipment Ground, All Systems: Green.

2.3 SINGLE CONDUCTOR BUILDING WIRE

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Copper Building Wire:
 - a. Cerro Wire LLC: www.cerrowire.com/#sle.
 - b. Encore Wire Corporation: www.encorewire.com/#sle.
 - c. General Cable Technologies Corporation: www.generalcable.com/#sle.
 - d. Industrial Wire & Cable, Inc: www.iewc.com.
 - e. Southwire Company: www.southwire.com/#sle.
 - f. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: Single conductor insulated wire.

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
- D. Insulation:
 - 1. Copper Building Wire: Type THHN/THWN.

2.4 METAL-CLAD CABLE

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems Inc: www.afcweb.com/#sle.
 - 2. Encore Wire Corporation: www.encorewire.com/#sle.
 - 3. Southwire Company: www.southwire.com/#sle.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type MC cable listed and labeled as complying with UL 1569, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
- C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
- D. Insulation: Type THHN or THHN/THWN.
- E. Provide dedicated neutral conductor for each phase conductor.
- F. Grounding: Full-size integral equipment grounding conductor.
- G. Armor: Steel, interlocked tape.
- H. Provide PVC jacket applied over cable armor for exterior installations, or where indicated or required for environment of installed location.

2.5 WIRING CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Wiring connectors appropriate for the application, suitable for use with the conductors to be connected, and listed as complying with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C as applicable.
- B. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding: Comply with Section 26 05 26.
- C. Wiring Connectors for Splices and Taps:
 - 1. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Smaller: Use twist-on insulated spring connectors.
 - 2. Copper Conductors Size 6 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors; split bolt type.
 - a. Tape uninsulated conductors and connector with electrical tape to 150 percent of insulation rating of conductor.
- D. Make splices, taps, and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise.
- E. Wiring Connectors for Terminations:
 - 1. Provide terminal lugs for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with terminations designed for terminal lugs.
 - 2. Provide compression adapters for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with mechanical lugs when only compression connectors are specified.
 - 3. Copper Conductors 6 AWG and larger: Use mechanical connectors where connectors are required.
 - 4. Stranded Conductors: Use crimped terminals for connections to terminal screws.
- F. Do not use insulation-piercing or insulation-displacement connectors designed for use with conductors without stripping insulation.
- G. Do not use push-in wire connectors as a substitute for twist-on insulated spring connectors.
- H. Twist-on Insulated Spring Connectors: Rated 600 V, 221 degrees F for standard applications and 302 degrees F for high temperature applications; pre-filled with sealant and listed as complying with UL 486D for damp and wet locations.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. 3M: www.3m.com/#sle.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc: www.idealindustries.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- I. Mechanical Connectors: Provide bolted type or set-screw type.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- J. Compression Connectors: Provide circumferential type crimp configuration.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- K. Crimped Terminals: Nylon-insulated, with insulation grip and terminal configuration suitable for connection to be made.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Electrical Tape:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. 3M: www.3m.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Integrally colored to match color code indicated; listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
 3. Vinyl Insulating Electrical Tape: Complying with ASTM D3005 and listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; conformable for application down to 0 degrees F and suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
 4. Rubber Splicing Electrical Tape: Ethylene Propylene Rubber (EPR) tape, complying with ASTM D4388; minimum thickness of 30 mil; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 194 degrees F and short-term 266 degrees F overload service.
 5. Electrical Filler Tape: Rubber-based insulating moldable putty, minimum thickness of 125 mil; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 176 degrees F.
 6. Moisture Sealing Electrical Tape: Insulating mastic compound laminated to flexible, all-weather vinyl backing; minimum thickness of 90 mil.
- B. Heat Shrink Tubing: Heavy-wall, split-resistant, with factory-applied adhesive; rated 600 V; suitable for direct burial applications; listed as complying with UL 486D.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. 3M: www.3m.com/#sle.
 - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Oxide Inhibiting Compound: Listed; suitable for use with the conductors or cables to be installed.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc: www.idealindustries.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Wire Pulling Lubricant:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. 3M: www.3m.com/#sle.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc: www.idealindustries.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Listed and labeled as complying with UL 267.
 3. Suitable for use with conductors/cables and associated insulation/jackets to be installed.
 4. Suitable for use at installation temperature.
- E. Cable Ties: Material and tensile strength rating suitable for application.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.
- C. Verify that raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures are installed and are properly sized to accommodate conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70.
- D. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean raceways thoroughly to remove foreign materials before installing conductors and cables.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Circuiting Requirements:
 1. Unless dimensioned, circuit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
 2. When circuit destination is indicated without specific routing, determine exact routing required.
 3. Include circuit lengths required to install connected devices within 10 ft of location indicated.
 4. Maintain separation of wiring for emergency systems in accordance with NFPA 70.
 5. Circuiting Adjustments: Unless otherwise indicated, when branch circuits are indicated as separate, combining them together in a single raceway is permitted, under the following conditions:
 - a. Provide no more than six current-carrying conductors in a single raceway. Dedicated neutral conductors are considered current-carrying conductors.
 - b. Increase size of conductors as required to account for ampacity derating.
 - c. Size raceways, boxes, etc. to accommodate conductors.
 6. Common Neutrals: Unless otherwise indicated, sharing of neutral/grounded conductors among single phase branch circuits of different phases installed in the same raceway is not permitted. Provide dedicated neutral/grounded conductor for each individual branch circuit.
 7. Provide oversized neutral/grounded conductors where indicated and as specified below.
 - a. Provide 200 percent rated neutral for feeders fed from K-rated transformers.
 - b. Provide 200 percent rated neutral for feeders serving panelboards with 200 percent rated neutral bus.
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).

- D. Install metal-clad cable (Type MC) in accordance with NECA 120.
- E. Installation in Raceway:
 - 1. Tape ends of conductors and cables to prevent infiltration of moisture and other contaminants.
 - 2. Pull all conductors and cables together into raceway at same time.
 - 3. Do not damage conductors and cables or exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tension and sidewall pressure.
 - 4. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant where necessary, except when lubricant is not recommended by the manufacturer.
- F. Exposed Cable Installation (only where specifically permitted):
 - 1. Route cables parallel or perpendicular to building structural members and surfaces.
 - 2. Protect cables from physical damage.
- G. Paralleled Conductors: Install conductors of the same length and terminate in the same manner.
- H. Secure and support conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from raceways, piping, ductwork, or other systems.
 - 1. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conductors and cables to lay on ceiling tiles.
 - 2. Installation in Vertical Raceways: Provide supports where vertical rise exceeds permissible limits.
- I. Terminate cables using suitable fittings.
 - 1. Metal-Clad Cable (Type MC):
 - a. Use listed fittings.
 - b. Cut cable armor only using specialized tools to prevent damaging conductors or insulation. Do not use hacksaw or wire cutters to cut armor.
- J. Install conductors with a minimum of 12 inches of slack at each outlet.
- K. Neatly train and bundle conductors inside boxes, wireways, panelboards and other equipment enclosures.
- L. Group or otherwise identify neutral/grounded conductors with associated ungrounded conductors inside enclosures in accordance with NFPA 70.
- M. Make wiring connections using specified wiring connectors.
 - 1. Make splices and taps only in accessible boxes. Do not pull splices into raceways or make splices in conduit bodies or wiring gutters.
 - 2. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors.
 - 3. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
 - 4. Clean contact surfaces on conductors and connectors to suitable remove corrosion, oxides, and other contaminants. Do not use wire brush on plated connector surfaces.
 - 5. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
 - 6. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- N. Insulate splices and taps that are made with uninsulated connectors using methods suitable for the application, with insulation and mechanical strength at least equivalent to unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Dry Locations: Use electrical tape.
 - a. For taped connections, first apply adequate amount of rubber splicing electrical tape or electrical filler tape, followed by outer covering of vinyl insulating electrical tape.
 - 2. Damp Locations: Use insulating covers specifically designed for the connectors.
 - a. For connections with insulating covers, apply outer covering of moisture sealing electrical tape.
 - 3. Wet Locations: Use heat shrink tubing.

- O. Insulate ends of spare conductors using vinyl insulating electrical tape.
- P. Field-Applied Color Coding: Where vinyl color coding electrical tape is used in lieu of integrally colored insulation as permitted in Part 2 under "Color Coding", apply half overlapping turns of tape at each termination and at each location conductors are accessible.
- Q. Identify conductors and cables in accordance with Section 26 05 53. Identify each conductor with its circuit number or other designation indicated.
- R. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- S. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide final connections to all equipment and devices, including those furnished by others, as required for a complete operating system.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- C. Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.3.2. The insulation resistance test is only required for services and feeders. The resistance test for parallel conductors listed as optional is not required.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conductors and cables.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 05 26
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Grounding and bonding requirements.
- B. Conductors for grounding and bonding.
- C. Connectors for grounding and bonding.
- D. Ground rod electrodes.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Additional requirements for conductors for grounding and bonding, including conductor color coding.
- B. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA GR 1 - Grounding Rod Electrodes and Grounding Rod Electrode Couplings; 2022.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Verify exact locations of underground metal water service pipe entrances to building.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide steel reinforcement complying with specified requirements for concrete-encased electrode.
 - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not install ground rod electrodes until final backfill and compaction is complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for grounding and bonding system components.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of grounding electrode system components and connections.
- D. Certificate of Compliance: Indicate approval of installation by authority having jurisdiction.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Existing Work: Where existing grounding and bonding system components are indicated to be reused, they may be reused only where they are free from corrosion, integrity and continuity are verified, and where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- C. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required components, conductors, connectors, conduit, boxes, fittings, supports, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete grounding and bonding system.
- D. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- E. Grounding System Resistance:
 - 1. Achieve specified grounding system resistance under normally dry conditions unless otherwise approved by Architect. Precipitation within the previous 48 hours does not constitute normally dry conditions.
 - 2. Grounding Electrode System: Not greater than 5 ohms to ground, when tested according to IEEE 81 using "fall-of-potential" method.
- F. Grounding Electrode System:
 - 1. Provide connection to required and supplemental grounding electrodes indicated to form grounding electrode system.
 - a. Provide continuous grounding electrode conductors without splice or joint.
 - b. Install grounding electrode conductors in raceway where exposed to physical damage. Bond grounding electrode conductor to metallic raceways at each end with bonding jumper.
 - 2. Metal Underground Water Pipe(s):
 - a. Provide connection to underground metal domestic and fire protection (where present) water service pipe(s) that are in direct contact with earth for at least 10 feet at an accessible location not more than 5 feet from the point of entrance to the building.
 - b. Provide bonding jumper(s) around insulating joints/pipes as required to make pipe electrically continuous.
 - c. Provide bonding jumper around water meter of sufficient length to permit removal of meter without disconnecting jumper.
 - 3. Concrete-Encased Electrode:
 - a. Provide connection to concrete-encased electrode consisting of not less than 20 feet of steel reinforcing bars embedded within concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with earth in accordance with NFPA 70.
 - 4. Ground Ring:
 - a. Where location is not indicated, locate ground ring conductor at least 24 inches outside building perimeter foundation.
 - b. Provide connection from ground ring conductor to:

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- 1) Perimeter columns of metal building frame.
 - 2) Ground rod electrodes located at service entrance.
 5. Ground Rod Electrode(s):
 - a. Provide three electrodes in an equilateral triangle configuration unless otherwise indicated or required.
 - b. Space electrodes not less than 10 feet from each other and any other ground electrode.
 - c. Where location is not indicated, locate electrode(s) at least 5 feet outside building perimeter foundation as near as possible to electrical service entrance; where possible, locate in softscape (uncovered) area.
 6. Provide additional ground electrode(s) as required to achieve specified grounding electrode system resistance.
- G. Bonding and Equipment Grounding:
1. Provide bonding for equipment grounding conductors, equipment ground busses, metallic equipment enclosures, metallic raceways and boxes, device grounding terminals, and other normally non-current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors/equipment or likely to become energized as indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.
 2. Provide insulated equipment grounding conductor in each feeder and branch circuit raceway. Do not use raceways as sole equipment grounding conductor.
 3. Where circuit conductor sizes are increased for voltage drop, increase size of equipment grounding conductor proportionally in accordance with NFPA 70.
 4. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
 5. Terminate branch circuit equipment grounding conductors on solidly bonded equipment ground bus only. Do not terminate on neutral (grounded) or isolated/insulated ground bus.
 6. Provide bonding jumper across expansion or expansion/deflection fittings provided to accommodate conduit movement.
 7. Provide bonding for interior metal piping systems in accordance with NFPA 70. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - a. Metal water piping where not already effectively bonded to metal underground water pipe used as grounding electrode.
 - b. Metal gas piping.
 8. Provide bonding for interior metal air ducts.
 9. Provide bonding for metal building frame.
 10. Provide bonding for metal siding not effectively bonded through attachment to metal building frame.
 11. Provide bonding and equipment grounding for pools and fountains and associated equipment in accordance with NFPA 70.

2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
 2. Provide products listed and labeled as complying with UL 467 where applicable.
- B. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding, in Addition to Requirements of Section 26 05 26:
1. Use insulated copper conductors unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Exceptions:
 - 1) Use bare copper conductors where installed underground in direct contact with earth.
 - 2) Use bare copper conductors where directly encased in concrete (not in raceway).
 2. Wire: Stranded Copper.
- C. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding:
1. Description: Connectors appropriate for the application and suitable for the conductors and items to be connected; listed and labeled as complying with UL 467.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, use exothermic welded connections for underground, concealed and other inaccessible connections.
 3. Unless otherwise indicated, use bronze mechanical connectors for accessible connections.

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- a. Exceptions:
 - 1) Use exothermic welded connections for connections to metal building frame.
- 4. Manufacturers - Mechanical and Compression Connectors:
 - a. Burndy LLC: www.burndy.com/#sle.
 - b. Copperweld: www.copperweld.com.
 - c. Erico International: www.erico.com.
 - d. O-Z Gedney: www.emerson.com.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - f. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- 5. Manufacturers - Exothermic Welded Connections:
 - a. Copperweld: www.copperweld.com.
 - b. O-Z Gedney: www.emerson.com.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Ground Rod Electrodes:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA GR 1.
 - 2. Material: Copper.
 - 3. Size: 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet length, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Manufacturers:
 - a. Copperweld: www.copperweld.com.
 - b. Thomas & Betts
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 29
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and attachment requirements and components for equipment, conduit, cable, boxes, and other electrical work.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for conduits.
- B. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for boxes.
- C. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting: Additional support and attachment requirements for interior luminaires.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2023.
- C. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2023.
- D. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate sizes and arrangement of supports and bases with actual equipment and components to be installed.
 - 2. Coordinate work to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
 - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at installed locations.
 - 4. Coordinate arrangement of supports with ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts.
 - 5. Notify Architect of conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for channel/strut framing systems, nonpenetrating rooftop supports, and post-installed concrete/masonry anchors.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For products specified as requiring evaluation and recognition by ICC Evaluation Service, LLC (ICC-ES), provide current ICC-ES evaluation reports upon request.
- D. Installer's qualification statement.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with the following. Where requirements differ, comply with most stringent.
 - a. NFPA 70.
 - b. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for complete installation of electrical work.
 - 3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended, where applicable.
 - 4. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for the load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
 - 5. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
 - 6. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
 - 7. Steel Components: Use corrosion-resistant materials suitable for environment where installed.
 - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.
 - d. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Conduit and Cable Supports: Straps and clamps suitable for conduit or cable to be supported.
 - 1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.
 - 2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers and brackets suitable for boxes to be supported.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Metal Channel/Strut Framing Systems:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, continuous-slot, metal channel/strut and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field assembly of supports.
 2. Comply with MFMA-4.
 3. Channel Material:
 - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel.
 - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel.
 4. Minimum Channel Thickness: Steel sheet, 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch.
 5. Minimum Channel Dimensions: 1-5/8 inch wide by 13/16 inch high.
- E. Hanger Rods: Threaded, zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
1. Minimum Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
 - a. Equipment Supports: 1/2-inch diameter.
 - b. Single Conduit up to 1-inch (27 mm) Trade Size: 1/4-inch diameter.
 - c. Single Conduit Larger than 1-inch (27 mm) Trade Size: 3/8-inch diameter.
 - d. Trapeze Support for Multiple Conduits: 3/8-inch diameter.
 - e. Outlet Boxes: 1/4-inch diameter.
 - f. Luminaires: 1/4-inch diameter.
- F. Anchors and Fasteners:
1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use anchor and fastener types indicated for specified applications.
 2. Concrete: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
 3. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
 4. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
 5. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
 6. Steel: Use beam clamps or machine bolts.
 7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
 8. Wood: Use wood screws.
 9. Powder-actuated fasteners are permitted only as follows:
 - a. Use only threaded studs; do not use pins.
 10. Hammer-driven anchors and fasteners are not permitted.
 11. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal channel/strut and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.
 - a. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal channel/strut framing system.
 - b. Comply with MFMA-4.
 - c. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
 - d. Minimum Channel Thickness: Steel sheet, 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch minimum base metal thickness.
 12. Post-Installed Concrete and Masonry Anchors: Evaluated and recognized by ICC Evaluation Service, LLC (ICC-ES) for compliance with applicable building code.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive support and attachment components.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install hangers and supports in accordance with NECA 1.

- C. Install anchors and fasteners in accordance with ICC Evaluation Services, LLC (ICC-ES) evaluation report conditions of use where applicable.
- D. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- F. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- G. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- H. Equipment Support and Attachment:
 - 1. Use metal, fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel/strut to support equipment as required.
 - 2. Use metal channel/strut secured to studs to support equipment surface mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
 - 3. Use metal channel/strut to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.
 - a. Minimum standoff: 1 inch.
 - 4. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
 - 5. Rigidly weld support members or use hexagon-head bolts to present neat appearance with adequate strength and rigidity. Use spring lock washers under all nuts.
 - 6. Install surface-mounted cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors.
 - 7. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panelboards recessed in hollow partitions.
- I. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
- J. Secure fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- K. Remove temporary supports.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect support and attachment components for damage and defects.
- C. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective support and attachment components.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 33.13
CONDUIT FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- B. Stainless steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- C. Galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- D. Stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- E. PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- F. Flexible metal conduit (FMC).
- G. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC).
- H. Galvanized steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- I. Stainless steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- J. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete encasement of conduits.
- B. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- C. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Cable assemblies consisting of conductors protected by integral metal armor.
- D. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- E. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- F. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- G. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C80.1 - American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC); 2025.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel (EMT-S); 2020.
- C. ANSI C80.6 - American National Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit; 2025.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- E. NECA 101 - Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT); 2020.
- F. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- G. NEMA RN 1 - Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Metal Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit; 2018.

CONDUIT FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- H. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit; 2020.
- I. NEMA TC 3 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing; 2021.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. UL 1 - Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 6 - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 6A - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Aluminum, Red Brass, and Stainless Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 360 - Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 514A - Metallic Outlet Boxes; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 797 - Electrical Metallic Tubing-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 797A - Electrical Metallic Tubing - Aluminum and Stainless Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- T. UL 1242 - Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate minimum sizes of conduits with actual type and quantity of conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
 - 2. Coordinate arrangement of conduits with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, and other potential conflicts.
 - 3. Verify exact conduit termination locations required for boxes, enclosures, and equipment.
 - 4. Coordinate work to provide roof penetrations that preserve integrity of roofing system and do not void roof warranty.
 - 5. Notify Architect of conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not begin installation of conductors and cables until installation of conduit between termination points is complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conduits and fittings.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing for conduits installed underground, conduits embedded within concrete slabs, and conduits 2-inch (53 mm) trade size and larger.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Work shall be inspected by a local Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). Contractor shall provide certificate of inspection prior to final payment request.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conduit and fittings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conduit and associated fittings for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70, manufacturer's instructions, and product listing.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use conduit types indicated for specified applications. Where more than one listed application applies, comply with most restrictive requirements. Where conduit type for particular application is not specified, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- C. Underground:
 - 1. Under Slab on Grade: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
 - 2. Exterior, Direct-Buried: Use rigid PVC conduit.
 - 3. Exterior, Embedded Within Concrete: Use rigid PVC conduit.
 - 4. Where rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), stainless steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or schedule 80 rigid PVC conduit where emerging from underground.
 - 5. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit larger than 2-inch (53 mm) trade size is provided, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) elbows, stainless steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) elbows, galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC) elbows, stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC) elbows, PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) elbows, or concrete-encased PVC elbows for bends.
- D. Embedded Within Concrete:
 - 1. Within Slab on Grade: Use rigid PVC conduit.
 - 2. Within Slab Above Ground: Use rigid PVC conduit.
 - 3. Within Concrete Walls Above Ground: Use rigid PVC conduit.
 - 4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), stainless steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or galvanized steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT) where emerging from concrete.
- E. Concealed Within Masonry Walls: Use electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- F. Concealed Within Hollow Stud Walls: Use electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- G. Concealed Above Accessible Ceilings: Use electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- H. Interior, Damp or Wet Locations: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), stainless steel rigid metal conduit (RMC), galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC), galvanized steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT), or stainless steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- I. Exposed, Interior, Not Subject to Physical Damage: Use electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- J. Exposed, Interior, Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
 - 1. Locations subject to physical damage include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Where exposed below 8 feet, except within electrical and communication rooms or closets.

- K. Exposed, Exterior: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- L. Flexible Connections to Luminaires Above Accessible Ceilings: Use flexible metal conduit (FMC).
 - 1. Maximum Length: 6 feet.
- M. Flexible Connections to Vibrating Equipment:
 - 1. Dry Locations: Use flexible metal conduit (FMC).
 - 2. Damp, Wet, or Corrosive Locations: Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC).
 - 3. Maximum Length: 6 feet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Vibrating equipment includes, but is not limited to:
 - a. Transformers.
 - b. Motors.
- N. Fished in Existing Walls, Where Necessary: Use flexible metal conduit (FMC), galvanized steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT), or stainless steel electrical metallic tubing (EMT).

2.2 CONDUIT - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Existing Work: Where existing conduits are indicated to be reused, they may be reused only where they comply with specified requirements, are free from corrosion, and integrity is verified by pulling mandrel through them.
- C. Provide conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for complete raceway system.
- D. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended.
- E. Minimum Conduit Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
 - 1. Branch Circuits: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
 - 2. Branch Circuit Homeruns: 3/4-inch trade size.
 - 3. Flexible Connections to Luminaires: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
 - 4. Underground, Interior: 3/4-inch trade size.
 - 5. Underground, Exterior: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
- F. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.

2.3 GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit, a division of Atkore International: www.alliedeg.com/#sle.
 - 2. Picoma: www.picoma.com.
 - 3. Wheatland Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries: www.wheatland.com/#sle.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
- C. Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - 2. Nonhazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B or UL 6.
 - 3. Material: Use steel.
 - 4. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless fittings, including set screw and compression/gland types, are not permitted.

2.4 STAINLESS STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC stainless steel rigid metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6A.
- B. Fittings:
 - 1. Nonhazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B or UL 6A.
 - 2. Material: Use stainless steel with corrosion resistance equivalent to conduit.
 - 3. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless fittings, including set screw and compression/gland types, are not permitted.

2.5 GALVANIZED STEEL INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
- B. Fittings:
 - 1. Nonhazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B or UL 1242.
 - 2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
 - 3. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless fittings, including set screw and compression/gland types, are not permitted.

2.6 STAINLESS STEEL INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
- B. Fittings:
 - 1. Nonhazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B or UL 1242.

2.7 PVC-COATED GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit with external polyvinyl chloride (PVC) coating complying with NEMA RN 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
- B. Exterior Coating: Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), nominal thickness of 40 mil, 0.040 inch.
- C. PVC-Coated Boxes and Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of PVC-coated conduit to be installed.
 - 2. Nonhazardous Locations: Use boxes and fittings listed and labeled as complying with UL 514A, UL 514B, or UL 6.
 - 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
 - 4. Exterior Coating: Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), minimum thickness of 40 mil, 0.040 inch.
- D. PVC-Coated Supports: Furnish with exterior coating of polyvinyl chloride (PVC), minimum thickness of 15 mil, 0.015 inch.

2.8 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (FMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: www.afcweb.com/#sle.
 - 2. Electri-Flex Company: www.electriflex.com/#sle.
 - 3. International Metal Hose: www.metalhose.com/#sle.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type FMC standard-wall steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 1, and listed for use in classified firestop systems.
- C. Fittings:

1. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.

2.9 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: www.afcweb.com/#sle.
 2. Electri-Flex Company: www.electriflex.com/#sle.
 3. International Metal Hose: www.metalhose.com/#sle.
 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type LFMC polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacketed steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 360.
- C. Fittings:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Bridgeport Fittings, LLC: www.bptfittings.com/#sle.
 - b. Emerson Electric Co; O-Z/Gedney: www.emerson.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
 3. Material: Use aluminum.

2.10 GALVANIZED STEEL ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Allied Tube & Conduit: www.alliedeg.com/#sle.
 2. Nucor Tubular Products: www.nucortubular/#sle.
 3. Wheatland Tube Company: www.wheatland.com/#sle.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type EMT galvanized steel electrical metallic tubing complying with ANSI C80.3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 797.
- C. Fittings:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Bridgeport Fittings, LLC: www.bptfittings.com/#sle.
 - b. Emerson Electric Co; O-Z/Gedney: www.emerson.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
 3. Material: Use steel.
 4. Connectors and Couplings: Use set-screw type.
 - a. Do not use indenter type connectors and couplings.

2.11 STAINLESS STEEL ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type EMT stainless steel electrical metallic tubing complying with ANSI C80.3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 797A.
- B. Fittings:
 1. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
 2. Connectors and Couplings: Use compression/gland or set-screw type.

2.12 RIGID POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) CONDUIT

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Cantex Inc: www.cantexinc.com/#sle.

2. JM Eagle: www.jmeagle.com/#sle.
 3. Picoma: www.picoma.com.
 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type PVC rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit complying with NEMA TC 2 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; Schedule 80 unless otherwise indicated; rated for use with conductors rated 90 degrees C, schedule 40 not permitted.
- C. Fittings:
1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; material to match conduit.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

- A. Solvent Cement for PVC Conduit and Fittings: As recommended by manufacturer of conduit and fittings to be installed.
- B. Pull Strings: Use nylon or polyester tape with average breaking strength of not less than 1,250 lbf.
- C. Sealing Compound for Hazardous/Classified Location Sealing Fittings: Listed for use with particular fittings to be installed.
- D. Sealing Systems for Concrete Penetrations:
1. Sleeves: Provide water stop ring or cement coating that bonds to concrete to prevent water infiltration.
 2. Rate for minimum of 40 psig; suitable for sealing around conduits to be installed.
- E. Bore Spacers: Nonmetallic; designed for maintaining conduit/duct spacing for installation within casing; furnished with roller wheels to facilitate installation, openings to facilitate grout flow, and holes for stabilization cable; suitable for casing and conduit/duct arrangement to be installed.
1. Products:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC; Bore Spacers: www.apsonline.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive conduits.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Where conduit is installed on an existing wall, paint conduit to match the wall finish.
- C. Install conduit in accordance with NECA 1.
- D. Galvanized Steel Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC): Install in accordance with NECA 101.
- E. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC): Install in accordance with NECA 101.
- F. PVC-Coated Galvanized Steel Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC): Install using only tools approved by manufacturer.

- G. Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit: Install in accordance with NECA 111.
- H. Conduit Routing:
 - 1. Unless dimensioned, conduit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
 - 2. When conduit destination is indicated without specific routing, determine exact routing required.
 - 3. Conceal conduits unless specifically indicated to be exposed.
 - 4. Conduits in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Electrical rooms.
 - b. Mechanical equipment rooms.
 - c. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
 - 5. Conduits installed underground or embedded in concrete may be routed in shortest possible manner unless otherwise indicated. Route other conduits parallel or perpendicular to building structure and surfaces, following surface contours where practical.
 - 6. Arrange conduit to maintain adequate headroom, clearances, and access.
 - 7. Arrange conduit to provide no more than the equivalent of three 90 degree bends between pull points.
 - 8. Route conduits above water and drain piping where possible.
 - 9. Arrange conduit to prevent moisture traps. Provide drain fittings at low points and at sealing fittings where moisture may collect.
 - 10. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 inches between conduits and piping for other systems.
 - 11. Maintain minimum clearance of 12 inches between conduits and hot surfaces. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - a. Heaters.
 - b. Hot water piping.
 - c. Flues.
 - 12. Group parallel conduits in same area on common rack.
- I. Conduit Support:
 - 1. Secure and support conduits in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by authorities having jurisdiction; see Section 26 05 29.
 - 2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
 - 3. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conduits to lay on ceiling tiles.
 - 4. Use conduit strap to support single surface-mounted conduit.
 - a. Use clamp back spacer with conduit strap for damp and wet locations to provide space between conduit and mounting surface.
 - 5. Use metal channel/strut with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel surface-mounted conduits.
 - 6. Use conduit clamp to support single conduit from beam clamp or threaded rod.
 - 7. Use trapeze hangers assembled from threaded rods and metal channel/strut with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel suspended conduits.
 - 8. Use of spring steel conduit clips for support of conduits is not permitted.
 - 9. Use of wire for support of conduits is not permitted.
- J. Connections and Terminations:
 - 1. Use approved zinc-rich paint or conduit joint compound on field-cut threads of galvanized steel conduits prior to making connections.
 - 2. Where two threaded conduits must be joined and neither can be rotated, use three-piece couplings or split couplings. Do not use running threads.
 - 3. Use suitable adapters where required to transition from one type of conduit to another.
 - 4. Provide drip loops for liquidtight flexible conduit connections to prevent drainage of liquid into connectors.
 - 5. Terminate threaded conduits in boxes and enclosures using threaded hubs or double lock nuts for dry locations and raintight hubs for wet locations.
 - 6. Provide insulating bushings, insulated throats, or listed metal fittings with smooth, rounded edges at conduit terminations to protect conductors.
 - 7. Secure joints and connections to provide mechanical strength and electrical continuity.

- K. Penetrations:
 - 1. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members, including footings and grade beams, without approval of Structural Engineer.
 - 2. Make penetrations perpendicular to surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide sleeves for penetrations as indicated or as required to facilitate installation. Set sleeves flush with exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated or required.
 - 4. Conceal bends for conduit risers emerging above ground.
 - 5. Where conduits penetrate waterproof membrane, seal as required to maintain integrity of membrane.
 - 6. Make penetrations for roof-mounted equipment within associated equipment openings and curbs where possible to minimize roofing system penetrations. Where penetrations are necessary, seal as indicated or as required to preserve integrity of roofing system and maintain roof warranty.
 - 7. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements; see Section 07 84 00.
- L. Embedment Within Structural Concrete Slabs (only where approved by Structural Engineer):
 - 1. Secure conduits to prevent floating or movement during pouring of concrete.
- M. Concrete Encasement: Where conduits not otherwise embedded within concrete are indicated to be concrete-encased, provide minimum concrete cover of 3 inches on all sides unless otherwise indicated; see Section 03 30 00.
- N. Conduit Movement Provisions: Where conduits are subject to movement, provide expansion and expansion/deflection fittings to prevent damage to enclosed conductors or connected equipment. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - 1. Where conduits cross structural joints intended for expansion, contraction, or deflection.
 - 2. Where calculated in accordance with NFPA 70 for rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit installed above ground to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Where conduits are subject to earth movement by settlement or frost.
- O. Conduit Sealing:
 - 1. Use foam conduit sealant to prevent entry of moisture and gases. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - a. Where conduits enter building from outside.
 - b. Where service conduits enter building from underground distribution system.
 - c. Where conduits enter building from underground.
 - d. Where conduits may transport moisture to contact live parts.
 - 2. Where conduits cross barriers between areas of potential substantial temperature differential, use foam conduit sealant at accessible point near penetration to prevent condensation. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - a. Where conduits pass from outdoors into conditioned interior spaces.
 - b. Where conduits pass from unconditioned interior spaces into conditioned interior spaces.
- P. Provide pull string in each empty conduit and in conduits where conductors and cables are to be installed by others. Leave minimum slack of 12 inches at each end.
- Q. Provide grounding and bonding; see Section 26 05 26.
- R. Identify conduits; see Section 26 05 53.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- C. Where coating of PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) contains cuts or abrasions, repair in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conduits.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of conduits to remove moisture and foreign matter.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation of conduit, use suitable manufactured plugs to provide protection from entry of moisture and foreign material and do not remove until ready for installation of conductors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 33.16
BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Outlet and device boxes up to 100 cubic inches, including those used as junction and pull boxes.
- B. Cabinets and enclosures, including junction and pull boxes larger than 100 cubic inches.
- C. Boxes and enclosures for integrated power, data, and audio/video.
- D. Floor boxes.
- E. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems:
 - 1. Conduit bodies and other fittings.
 - 2. Additional requirements for locating boxes to limit conduit length and/or number of bends between pulling points.
- E. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- F. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices:
 - 1. Wall plates.
 - 2. Floor box service fittings.
 - 3. Additional requirements for locating boxes for wiring devices.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2016.
- C. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- D. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- E. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports; 2013 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

- I. UL 508A - Industrial Control Panels; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514A - Metallic Outlet Boxes; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 3. Coordinate minimum sizes of boxes with the actual installed arrangement of conductors, clamps, support fittings, and devices, calculated according to NFPA 70.
 - 4. Coordinate minimum sizes of pull boxes with the actual installed arrangement of connected conduits, calculated according to NFPA 70.
 - 5. Coordinate the placement of boxes with millwork, furniture, devices, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
 - 6. Coordinate the work with other trades to preserve insulation integrity.
 - 7. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted boxes where indicated.
 - 8. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for cabinets and enclosures, boxes for hazardous (classified) locations, floor boxes, and underground boxes/enclosures.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations for outlet and device boxes, pull boxes, cabinets and enclosures, floor boxes, and underground boxes/enclosures.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. Keys for Lockable Enclosures: Two of each different key.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BOXES

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Do not use boxes and associated accessories for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.

2. Provide all boxes, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system and to accommodate devices and equipment to be installed.
 3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
 4. Where box size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
 5. Provide grounding terminals within boxes where equipment grounding conductors terminate.
- B. Outlet and Device Boxes Up to 100 cubic inches, Including Those Used as Junction and Pull Boxes:
1. Use sheet-steel boxes for dry locations unless otherwise indicated or required.
 2. Use cast aluminum boxes for damp or wet locations unless otherwise indicated or required; furnish with compatible weatherproof gasketed covers.
 3. Use cast aluminum boxes where exposed galvanized steel rigid metal conduit is used.
 4. Use suitable concrete type boxes where flush-mounted in concrete.
 5. Use suitable masonry type boxes where flush-mounted in masonry walls.
 6. Use raised covers suitable for the type of wall construction and device configuration where required.
 7. Use shallow boxes where required by the type of wall construction.
 8. Do not use "through-wall" boxes designed for access from both sides of wall.
 9. Sheet-Steel Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A.
 10. Cast Metal Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A; furnish with threaded hubs.
 11. Boxes for Supporting Luminaires and Ceiling Fans: Listed as suitable for the type and weight of load to be supported; furnished with fixture stud to accommodate mounting of luminaire where required.
 12. Boxes for Ganged Devices: Use multigang boxes of single-piece construction. Do not use field-connected gangable boxes unless specifically indicated or permitted.
 13. Wall Plates: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
 14. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cooper Crouse-Hinds, a division of Eaton Corporation: www.cooperindustries.com/#sle.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Bell Products: www.hubbell-rtb.com/#sle.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated; RACO Products: www.hubbell-rtb.com/#sle.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation: www.tnb.com/#sle.
 - e. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Cabinets and Enclosures, Including Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:
1. Comply with NEMA EN 10250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E, or UL 508A.
 2. NEMA EN 10250 Environment Type, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
 - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1, painted steel.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 4, painted steel.
 3. Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:
 - a. Provide screw-cover or hinged-cover enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Boxes 6 square feet and Larger: Provide sectionalized screw-cover or hinged-cover enclosures.
 4. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cooper B-Line, a division of Eaton Corporation: www.cooperindustries.com/#sle.
 - b. Hoffman, a brand of Pentair Technical Products: www.hoffmanonline.com/#sle.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiegmann Products: www.hubbell-wiegmann.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Floor Boxes:
1. Description: Floor boxes compatible with floor box service fittings provided in accordance with Section 26 27 26; with partitions to separate multiple services; furnished with all components, adapters, and trims required for complete installation.
 2. Metallic Floor Boxes: Fully adjustable (with integral means for leveling adjustment prior to and after concrete pour).
 3. Manufacturer: Refer to floor box schedule on drawings for additional information.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive boxes.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install boxes in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards where mounting heights are not indicated.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide separate boxes for emergency power and normal power systems.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide separate boxes for line voltage and low voltage systems.
- F. Flush-mount boxes in finished areas unless specifically indicated to be surface-mounted.
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, boxes may be surface-mounted where exposed conduits are indicated or permitted.
- H. Box Locations:
 - 1. Unless dimensioned, box locations indicated are approximate.
 - 2. Locate boxes as required for devices installed under other sections or by others.
 - a. Switches, Receptacles, and Other Wiring Devices: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
 - 3. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not span different building finishes.
 - 4. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not cross masonry joints.
 - 5. Unless otherwise indicated, where multiple outlet boxes are installed at the same location at different mounting heights, install along a common vertical center line.
 - 6. Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back. Provide minimum 6 inches horizontal separation unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Acoustic-Rated Walls: Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back; provide minimum 24 inches horizontal separation.
 - 8. Fire Resistance Rated Walls: Install flush-mounted boxes such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.
 - a. Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back; provide minimum 24 inches separation where wall is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities or protect both boxes with listed putty pads.
 - b. Do not install flush-mounted boxes with area larger than 16 square inches or such that the total aggregate area of openings exceeds 100 square inches for any 100 square feet of wall area.
 - 9. Locate junction and pull boxes as indicated, as required to facilitate installation of conductors, and to limit conduit length and/or number of bends between pulling points in accordance with Section 26 05 33.13.
 - 10. Locate junction and pull boxes in the following areas, unless otherwise indicated or approved by the Architect:
 - a. Concealed above accessible suspended ceilings.
 - b. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
 - c. Electrical rooms.
 - d. Mechanical equipment rooms.
- I. Box Supports:

1. Secure and support boxes in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 26 05 29 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
3. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling grid or ceiling support system.
4. Use far-side support to secure flush-mounted boxes supported from single stud in hollow stud walls. Repair or replace supports for boxes that permit excessive movement.

J. Install boxes plumb and level.

K. Flush-Mounted Boxes:

1. Install boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is not set back from finished surface more than 1/4 inch or does not project beyond finished surface.
2. Install boxes in combustible materials such as wood so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is flush with finished surface.
3. Repair rough openings around boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that there are no gaps or open spaces greater than 1/8 inch at the edge of the box.

L. Install boxes as required to preserve insulation integrity.

M. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.

N. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.

O. Close unused box openings.

P. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no devices or equipment installed or designated for future use.

Q. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.

R. Identify boxes in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of boxes to remove dirt, debris, plaster and other foreign material.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Immediately after installation, protect boxes from entry of moisture and foreign material until ready for installation of conductors.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical identification requirements.
- B. Identification nameplates and labels.
- C. Wire and cable markers.
- D. Underground warning tape.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Color coding for power conductors and cables 600 V and less; vinyl color coding electrical tape.
- B. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Device and wallplate finishes; factory pre-marked wallplates.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D709 - Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials; 2025.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. NFPA 70E - Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace; 2024.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Verify final designations for equipment, systems, and components to be identified prior to fabrication of identification products.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not conceal items to be identified, in locations such as above suspended ceilings, until identification products have been installed.
 - 2. Do not install identification products until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each product.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation and installation of product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.

- B. Products: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install adhesive products when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 IDENTIFICATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Identification for Equipment:
 - 1. Use identification nameplate to identify each piece of electrical distribution and control equipment and associated sections, compartments, and components.
 - 2. In addition to identifying data specific to individual pieces of equipment listed, each equipment identification nameplate or label shall include a date of installation in a MM/YYYY format.
 - a. Switchgear:
 - 1) Identify ampere rating.
 - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
 - 3) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Identify spares and spaces.
 - b. Switchboards:
 - 1) Identify ampere rating.
 - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
 - 3) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Identify spares and spaces.
 - c. Panelboards:
 - 1) Identify ampere rating.
 - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
 - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
 - 4) Identify main overcurrent protective device. Use identification label for panelboards with a door. For power distribution panelboards without a door, use identification nameplate.
 - 5) Use typewritten circuit directory to identify load(s) served for panelboards with a door. Identify spares and spaces.
 - 6) For power panelboards without a door, use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Do not identify spares and spaces.
 - d. Transformers:
 - 1) Identify kVA rating.
 - 2) Identify voltage and phase for primary and secondary.
 - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
 - 4) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
 - e. Enclosed switches, circuit breakers, and motor controllers:
 - 1) Identify voltage and phase.
 - 2) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
 - 3) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
 - 3. Available Fault Current Documentation: Use identification label to identify the available fault current and date calculations were performed at locations requiring documentation by NFPA 70 including but not limited to the following.
 - a. Service equipment.
 - 4. Arc Flash Hazard Warning Labels: Use warning labels to identify arc flash hazards for electrical equipment, such as switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, meter socket enclosures, and motor control centers that are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized.

- a. Minimum Size: 3.5 by 5 inches.
 - b. Legend: Include orange header that reads "WARNING", followed by the word message "Arc Flash and Shock Hazard; Appropriate PPE Required; Do not operate controls or open covers without appropriate personal protection equipment; Failure to comply may result in injury or death; Refer to NFPA 70E for minimum PPE requirements" or approved equivalent.
 - c. Service Equipment: Include the following information in accordance with NFPA 70, 110.16.
 - 1) Nominal system voltage.
 - 2) Available fault current.
 - 3) Clearing time of service overcurrent protective device(s).
 - 4) Date label applied.
- B. Identification for Conductors and Cables:
1. Color Coding for Power Conductors 600 V and Less: Comply with Section 26 05 19.
 2. Use wire and cable markers to identify circuit number or other designation indicated for power, control, and instrumentation conductors and cables at the following locations:
 - a. At each source and load connection.
 - b. Within boxes when more than one circuit is present.
 - c. Within equipment enclosures when conductors and cables enter or leave the enclosure.
 - d. In cable tray, at maximum intervals of 20 feet.
 3. Use wire and cable markers to identify connected grounding electrode system components for grounding electrode conductors.
 4. Use underground warning tape to identify direct buried cables.
- C. Identification for Devices:
1. Wiring Device and Wallplate Finishes: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
 2. Use identification label to identify fire alarm system devices.
 3. Use identification label to identify serving branch circuit for all receptacles.
- D. Identification for Luminaires:
1. Use permanent red dot on luminaire frame to identify luminaires connected to emergency power system.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Identification Nameplates:
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brimar Industries, Inc: www.brimar.com/#sle.
 - b. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co: www.kolbipipemarkers.com/#sle.
 - c. Seton Identification Products: www.seton.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 2. Materials: Conform to ASTM D709
 - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Use plastic nameplates.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: Use plastic nameplates suitable for exterior use.
 3. Plastic Nameplates: Three-layer laminated acrylic with beveled edges; minimum thickness of 1/8 inch; engraved text.
 - a. Exception: Provide minimum thickness of 1/8 inch when any dimension is greater than 4 inches.
 - b. Color: Black letters on white background.
 4. Letter Size: Use 1/4 inch letters for identifying grouped equipment and loads.
 5. Mounting Holes for Mechanical Fasteners: Two, centered on sides for sizes up to 1 inch high; Four, located at corners for larger sizes.
- B. Identification Labels:
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corporation: www.bradyid.com/#sle.
 - b. Brother International Corporation: www.brother-usa.com/#sle.
 - c. Panduit Corp: www.panduit.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2. Materials: Use self-adhesive laminated plastic labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant.
3. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text. Do not use handwritten text unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Use 3/16 inch black letters on clear background. Use only for identification of individual wall switches and receptacles, control device stations

2.3 WIRE AND CABLE MARKERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Brady Corporation: www.bradyid.com/#sle.
 2. Seton Identification Products: www.seton.com.
- B. Markers for Conductors and Cables: Use wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl cloth type markers suitable for the conductor or cable to be identified.
- C. Markers for Conductor and Cable Bundles: Use plastic marker tags secured by nylon cable ties.
- D. Legend: Power source and circuit number or other designation indicated.
- E. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text, all capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Minimum Text Height: 1/8 inch.
- G. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Brady Corporation: www.bradyid.com/#sle.
 2. Seton Identification Products: www.seton.com/#sle.
 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Materials: Use foil-backed detectable type polyethylene tape suitable for direct burial, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Foil-backed Detectable Type Tape: 3 inches wide, with minimum thickness of 5 mil, unless otherwise required for proper detection.
- D. Legend: Type of service, continuously repeated over full length of tape.
- E. Color:
 1. Tape for Buried Power Lines: Black text on yellow background.
 2. Tape for Buried Communication, Alarm, and Signal Lines: Black text on orange background.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and degrease surfaces to receive adhesive products according to manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install identification products to be plainly visible for examination, adjustment, servicing, and maintenance. Unless otherwise indicated, locate products as follows:
 1. Surface-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
 2. Flush-Mounted Equipment: Inside of equipment door.

3. Free-Standing Equipment: Enclosure front; also enclosure rear for equipment with rear access.
 4. Elevated Equipment: Legible from the floor or working platform.
 5. Branch Devices: Adjacent to device.
 6. Interior Components: Legible from the point of access.
 7. Conductors and Cables: Legible from the point of access.
 8. Devices: Outside face of cover.
- C. Install identification products centered, level, and parallel with lines of item being identified.
- D. Secure nameplates to exterior surfaces of enclosures using stainless steel screws and to interior surfaces using self-adhesive backing or epoxy cement.
- E. Install self-adhesive labels and markers to achieve maximum adhesion, with no bubbles or wrinkles and edges properly sealed.
- F. Install underground warning tape above buried lines with one tape per trench at 6 inch(es) below finished grade.
1. At paved areas, install 3 inches below pavement section.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Replace self-adhesive labels and markers that exhibit bubbles, wrinkles, curling or other signs of improper adhesion.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 05 83
WIRING CONNECTIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical connections to equipment.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices.
- E. Section 26 28 16.16 - Enclosed Switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- B. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2021.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
 - 2. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Install rough-in of electrical connections before installation of equipment is required.
 - 2. Make electrical connections before required start-up of equipment.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide wiring device manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, configurations, and construction.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cords and Caps: NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
 - 1. Colors: Comply with NEMA WD 1.
 - 2. Cord Construction: NFPA 70, Type SO, multiconductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
 - 3. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.
- B. Disconnect Switches: As specified in Section 26 28 16.16 and in individual equipment sections.
- C. Wiring Devices: As specified in Section 26 27 26.
- D. Flexible Conduit: As specified in Section 26 05 33.13.
- E. Wire and Cable: As specified in Section 26 05 19.
- F. Boxes: As specified in Section 26 05 33.16.

2.2 EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Refer to equipment Schedules on drawing for specific requirements for each piece of equipment.:

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

3.2 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquidtight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.
- C. Connect heat producing equipment using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet to accommodate connection with attachment plug.
- E. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is required.
- F. Install suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- G. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- H. Install terminal block jumpers to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- I. Install interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment to complete equipment wiring requirements.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 09 23
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Vacancy sensors.
- B. Digital load controllers.
- C. Emergency lighting control devices.
- D. Daylighting controls.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- D. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- E. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- F. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Devices for manual control of lighting, including wall switches and wall dimmers.
 - 1. Includes finish requirements for wall controls specified in this section.
 - 2. Includes accessory receptacles, switches, dimmers and wall plates, to match lighting controls specified in this section.
- G. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 47 CFR 15 - Radio Frequency Devices; current edition.
- B. ANSI C136.24 - American National Standard for Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Nonlocking (Button) Type Photocontrols; 2020.
- C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- D. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2016.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 1008 - Transfer Switch Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 2043 - Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-Handling Spaces; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate placement of lighting control devices with millwork, furniture, equipment and other potential conflicts.
 - 2. Coordinate the placement of wall switch vacancy sensors with actual installed door swings.
 - 3. Coordinate the placement of vacancy sensors with millwork, furniture, equipment or other potential obstructions to motion detection coverage installed under other sections or by others.
 - 4. Coordinate placement of photo sensors for daylighting controls with windows, skylights, and luminaires to achieve optimum operation. Coordinate placement with ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions to light level measurement.
 - 5. Coordinate lighting control device product selections with luminaire characteristics; see Section 26 51 00 and lighting fixture schedule.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not install lighting control devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Include ratings, operating modes or sequence of functions, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.
 - 1. Vacancy Sensors: Include detailed motion detection coverage range diagrams.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Vacancy Sensors: Provide lighting plan indicating location, model number, and orientation of each vacancy sensor and associated system component.
 - 2. Digital Load Controllers: Provide dimensioned plan views indicating locations of system components, required clearances, and field connection locations. Include system interconnection schematic diagrams showing factory and field connections. Include manufacturer product characteristics and application instructions for wired and wireless applications, including start-up and commissioning.
 - 3. Daylighting Controls: Provide lighting plan indicating location, model number, and orientation of each photo sensor and associated system component.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on device programming and setup.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store products in clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended.
- B. Unless specifically indicated as excluded, provide components necessary for complete operating system including, but not limited to, conduit, wiring, connectors, hardware, and accessories.

2.2 VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Cooper Wavelinx.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Furnish products produced by single manufacturer and obtained from single supplier.
- B. All Vacancy Sensors:
 - 1. Description: Factory-assembled commercial specification grade devices for indoor use capable of sensing both major motion, such as walking, and minor motion, such as small desktop level movements, according to published coverage areas, for automatic control of load indicated.
 - 2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, load to be manual on and automatic off when no occupant presence is detected during an adjustable turn-off delay time interval.
 - 3. Dual Technology Vacancy Sensors: Field configurable turn-on and hold-on activation with settings for activation by either or both sensing technologies.
 - 4. Passive Infrared Lens Field of View: Field customizable by addition of factory masking material, adjustment of integral blinders, or similar means to block motion detection in selected areas.
 - 5. Sensitivity: Field adjustable.
 - 6. Adaptive Technology: Field selectable; capable of self-adjusting sensitivity and time delay according to conditions.
 - 7. Integral Photocell: For field selectable and adjustable inhibition of automatic turn-on of load when ambient lighting is above selected level.
 - 8. Load Rating for Line Voltage Vacancy Sensors: As required to control the load indicated on drawings.
 - 9. Provide with auxiliary relay: SPDT dry contacts.
- C. Wall Switch Vacancy Sensors:
 - 1. All Wall Switch Vacancy Sensors:
 - a. Description: Vacancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated manual control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
 - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control load indicated on drawings, provide line voltage units with self-contained relay.
 - c. Operation: Operates only as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic-off) in accordance with California Title 24 requirements.
 - d. Finish: Match finishes specified for wiring devices in Section 26 27 26, unless otherwise indicated. Cover plate shall be stainless steel to match other wiring devices.
 - e. Provide with auxiliary relay: SPDT dry contact
 - 2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Wall Switch Vacancy Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 900 square feet.
- D. Wall Dimmer Vacancy Sensors:
 - 1. General Requirements:
 - a. Description: Vacancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated dimming control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
 - b. Operation: Operates only as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic-off) in accordance with California Title 24 requirements.
 - c. Dimmer: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, and listed as complying with UL 1472; type and rating suitable for load controlled.

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

- E. Ceiling Mounted Vacancy Sensors:
 - 1. All Ceiling Mounted Vacancy Sensors:
 - a. Description: Low profile vacancy sensors designed for ceiling installation.
 - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control load indicated on drawings, provide low voltage units, for use with separate compatible accessory power packs.
 - c. Finish: White unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Provide with auxiliary relay: SPDT dry contact
 - 2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Ceiling Mounted Vacancy Sensors:
 - a. Standard Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within area of 450 square feet at mounting height of 9 feet, with field of view of 360 degrees.
 - 1) Products:
 - (a) Hubbell NXOS series.
- F. Power Packs for Low Voltage Vacancy Sensors:
 - 1. Description: Plenum rated, self-contained low voltage class 2 transformer and relay compatible with specified low voltage vacancy sensors for switching of line voltage loads.
 - 2. Provide quantity and configuration of power and slave packs with associated wiring and accessories as required to control load indicated on drawings.
 - 3. Load Rating: As required to control load indicated on drawings.

2.3 DIGITAL LOAD CONTROLLERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Cooper Wavelinx.
- B. System Description:
 - 1. Stand-alone system, including interconnected modules and accessories, for lighting and plug load low-voltage control as indicated on drawings, schedules, written sequences of operation, and reviewed shop drawings.
 - 2. Product standard system configurations preconfigured out of box, plug-and-play, automatically self-addressing devices for communications, and without need to field configure or program features, or requiring device setting adjustments. LEDs on unit indicate operation and troubleshooting without software intervention.
 - 3. Provide quantity and configuration of power and slave packs, communication modules, and load expansion modules, including associated wiring, wired and wireless components, and accessories to control loads indicated.
- C. General Requirements:
 - 1. Listed for powering and controlling line-voltage loads, power packs, contactors, relays, and other lighting control devices.
 - 2. Input Supply Voltage: Dual rated for 120/277 VAC.
 - 3. Cabling Terminations:
 - 4. Compatibility:
 - a. Compatible with wired and wireless sensors and communication protocols for controlling line-voltage loads.
 - 1) Electromagnetic Interference/Radio Frequency Interference (EMI/RFI) Limits: Comply with FCC requirements of 47 CFR 15, for Class B application.
 - b. Configurable for single room control as indicated from single digital load controller.
 - 5. Provide UL 2043 plenum rated control unit with self-contained relay(s) and low-voltage class 2 transformer, compatible with specified wired and wireless sensors, components, and ballasts/drivers.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 70 for use in plenum spaces.
 - b. Provide UL 2043 plenum rating for associated system control components for control indicated.
 - 6. Surface Mounting: Standard junction box attachments.
 - 7. Provide one auxiliary contact closure output where indicated.
 - 8. Control Inputs:
 - a. Digital: Two.

- b. Analog: One.
- 9. Output Control Capability:
 - a. Single Zone Switching Modules: One programmable channel.
 - b. Multi-Zone Switching Modules: Up to three separately programmable channels.

2.4 EMERGENCY LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Automatic Load Control Relays:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
 - 2. Bypass/shunt lighting controls upon loss of normal power source to turn controlled emergency lighting loads on at full light output.
- B. Branch Circuit Emergency Lighting Transfer Switches (BCELTTS):
 - 1. Listed and labeled as complying with UL 1008.
 - 2. Transfer controlled emergency lighting loads from normal power source to emergency power source.
- C. Devices Installed in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum rated, suitable for use in air-handling spaces; listed and labeled as complying with UL 2043.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that openings for outlet boxes are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices or wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to lighting control devices.
- F. Verify that service voltage and ratings of lighting control devices are appropriate for service voltage and load requirements at location to be installed.
- G. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lighting control devices in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes as required for installation of lighting control devices; see Section 26 05 33.16.
 - 1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - a. Wall Switch Vacancy Sensors: 48 inches above finished floor.
 - 2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of lighting control devices unless otherwise indicated.

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

3. Locate wall switch vacancy sensors on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
- C. Maintain separation of remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits.
 1. See manufacturer instructions and Section 26 05 19 for control wiring conductors, wiring methods, and identification requirements.
- D. Install lighting control devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, connect lighting control device grounding terminal or conductor to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- F. Install lighting control devices plumb and level, and held securely in place.
- G. Provide required supports; see Section 26 05 29.
- H. Where applicable, install lighting control devices and associated wall plates to fit completely flush to mounting surface with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- I. Identify lighting control devices; see Section 26 05 53.
- J. Vacancy Sensor Locations:
 1. Location Adjustments: Locations indicated are diagrammatic and only intended to indicate which rooms or areas require devices. Provide quantity and locations as required for complete coverage of respective room or area based on manufacturer's recommendations for installed devices.
- K. Daylighting Control Photo Sensor Locations:
 1. Location Adjustments: Locations indicated are diagrammatic and only intended to indicate which rooms or areas require devices. Provide quantity and locations as required for proper control of respective room or area based on manufacturer's recommendations for installed devices.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, locate photo sensors for closed loop systems to accurately measure light level controlled at designated task location, while minimizing measured amount of direct light from natural or artificial sources such as windows or pendant luminaires.
 3. Unless otherwise indicated, locate photo sensors for open loop systems to accurately measure the level of daylight coming into space, while minimizing measured amount of lighting from artificial sources.
- L. Unless otherwise indicated, install power packs for lighting control devices above accessible ceiling or above access panel in inaccessible ceiling near sensor location.
- M. Where indicated, install separate compatible wall switches for manual control interface with lighting control devices or associated power packs.
- N. Unless otherwise indicated, install switches on load side of power packs so that switch does not turn off power pack.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each lighting control device for damage and defects.
- C. Test vacancy sensors to verify proper operation, including time delays and ambient light thresholds where applicable. Verify optimal coverage for entire room or area.
- D. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conductors, cables, and lighting control devices.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust vacancy sensor settings to minimize undesired activations while optimizing energy savings, and to achieve desired function as indicated or as directed by Architect.
- C. Adjust position of directional vacancy sensors and outdoor motion sensors to achieve optimal coverage as required.
- D. Where indicated or as directed by Architect, install factory masking material or adjust integral blinders on passive infrared (PIR) and dual technology vacancy sensor lenses to block undesired motion detection.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training, for additional requirements.
- C. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of lighting control devices to Architect, and correct deficiencies or make adjustments as directed.
- D. Training: Train Owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, programming, and maintenance of lighting control devices.
 - 1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.
 - 2. Provide minimum of two hours of training.
 - 3. Instructor: Qualified contractor familiar with the project and with sufficient knowledge of installed lighting control devices.
 - 4. Location: At project site.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 24 16
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Power distribution panelboards.
- B. Lighting and appliance panelboards.
- C. Overcurrent protective devices for panelboards.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS W-C-375 - Circuit Breakers, Molded Case; Branch Circuit and Service; 2013e, with Amendments (2022).
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- C. NECA 407 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards; 2025.
- D. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- E. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards; 2011.
- F. NEMA PB 1.1 - General Instructions for Proper Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 1000V or Less; 2023.
- G. NETA ATS - Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2025.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 67 - Panelboards; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 1699 - Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 3. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted panelboards where indicated.
 - 4. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
 - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for panelboards, enclosures, overcurrent protective devices, and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of panelboards and actual installed circuiting arrangements.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Panelboard Keys: Two of each different key.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NECA 407.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to panelboard internal components, enclosure, and finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: www.schneider-electric.us/#sle.

- B. Source Limitations: Provide panelboards and associated components produced by same manufacturer as other electrical distribution equipment used for project and obtained from a single supplier.

2.2 PANELBOARDS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
 - 1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
 - 2. Ambient Temperature:
 - a. Panelboards Containing Circuit Breakers: Between 23 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- C. Short Circuit Current Rating:
 - 1. Provide panelboards with listed short circuit current rating not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Panelboards Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.
- E. Mains: Configure for top or bottom incoming feed as indicated or as required for the installation.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Replaceable without disturbing adjacent devices.
- G. Bussing: Sized in accordance with UL 67 temperature rise requirements.
 - 1. Provide fully rated neutral bus unless otherwise indicated, with a suitable lug for each feeder or branch circuit requiring a neutral connection.
 - 2. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each panelboard, with a suitable lug for each feeder and branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- H. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- I. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA EN 10250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
 - 1. Environment Type per NEMA EN 10250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
 - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
 - 2. Boxes: Galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Provide wiring gutters sized to accommodate the conductors to be installed.
 - 3. Fronts:
 - a. Fronts for Surface-Mounted Enclosures: Same dimensions as boxes.
 - b. Fronts for Flush-Mounted Enclosures: Overlap boxes on all sides to conceal rough opening.
 - c. Finish for Painted Steel Fronts: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Lockable Doors: All locks keyed alike unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Future Provisions: Prepare all unused spaces for future installation of devices including bussing, connectors, mounting hardware and all other required provisions.

2.3 POWER DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Conductor Terminations:
 - 1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
 - 2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.

- C. Bussing:
 - 1. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Copper.
 - 2. Ground Bus Material: Copper.
- D. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1. Provide bolt-on type or plug-in type secured with locking mechanical restraints.
 - 2. Provide thermal magnetic circuit breakers unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Enclosures:
 - 1. Provide surface-mounted enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Fronts: Provide door-in-door trim with hinged cover for access to load terminals and wiring gutters, and separate lockable hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
 - 3. Provide metal circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE PANELBOARDS

- A. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch circuit type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Conductor Terminations:
 - 1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
 - 2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.
- C. Bussing:
 - 1. Phase Bus Connections: Arranged for sequential phasing of overcurrent protective devices.
 - 2. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Copper.
 - 3. Ground Bus Material: Copper.
 - a. Provide insulated ground bus where indicated.
- D. Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic bolt-on type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Enclosures:
 - 1. Provide surface-mounted or flush-mounted enclosures as indicated.
 - 2. Fronts: Provide door-in-door trim with hinged cover for access to load terminals and wiring gutters, and separate lockable hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
 - 3. Provide metal circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

2.5 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
 - 1. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, over center toggle, trip-free, trip-indicating circuit breakers listed and labeled as complying with UL 489, and complying with FS W-C-375 where applicable; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
 - 2. Interrupting Capacity:
 - a. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated, but not less than:
 - 1) 10,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 240 VAC or 208 VAC.
 - 2) 14,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 480 VAC.
 - b. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
 - 3. Conductor Terminations:
 - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
 - 4. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: For each pole, furnish thermal inverse time tripping element for overload protection and magnetic instantaneous tripping element for short circuit protection.

PANELBOARDS

- a. Provide field-adjustable magnetic instantaneous trip setting for circuit breaker frame sizes 225 amperes and larger.
5. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Furnish solid state, microprocessor-based, true rms sensing trip units.
 - a. Provide the following field-adjustable trip response settings:
 - 1) Long time pickup, adjustable by setting dial.
 - 2) Long time delay.
 - 3) Short time pickup and delay.
 - 4) Ground fault pickup and delay where ground fault protection is indicated.
6. Multi-Pole Circuit Breakers: Furnish with common trip for all poles.
7. Provide the following circuit breaker types where indicated:
 - a. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Listed as complying with UL 943, class A for protection of personnel.
 - b. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Combination type listed as complying with UL 1699.
8. Provide type HACR for air conditioning equipment circuits.
9. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
10. Provide the following features and accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
 - a. Shunt Trip: Provide coil voltage as required for connection to indicated trip actuator.
 - b. Handle Pad-Lock Provision: For locking circuit breaker handle in OFF position.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Factory test panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that the ratings and configurations of the panelboards and associated components are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive panelboards.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install panelboards in accordance with NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- E. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- F. Install panelboards plumb.
- G. Install flush-mounted panelboards so that trims fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered.

- H. Mount panelboards such that the highest position of any operating handle for circuit breakers or switches does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.
- I. Provide minimum of six spare 1 inch trade size conduits out of each flush-mounted panelboard stubbed into accessible space above ceiling.
- J. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- K. Install all field-installed branch devices, components, and accessories.
- L. Height: 6 feet to top of panelboard; install panelboards taller than 6 feet with bottom no more than 4 inches above floor.
- M. Provide filler plates to cover unused spaces in panelboards.
- N. Identify panelboards in accordance with Section 26 05 53.
- O. Provide typed circuit directory for each branch circuit panelboard. Revise directory to reflect circuiting changes required to balance phase loads.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.
- C. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- D. Fusible Switches: Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.5.1.1.
- E. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.6.1.1 for all main circuit breakers. Tests listed as optional are not required.
- F. Test GFCI circuit breakers to verify proper operation.
- G. Test AFCI circuit breakers to verify proper operation.
- H. Test shunt trips to verify proper operation.
- I. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective panelboards or associated components.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- B. Adjust alignment of panelboard fronts.
- C. Load Balancing: For each panelboard, rearrange circuits such that the difference between each measured steady state phase load does not exceed 20 percent and adjust circuit directories accordingly. Maintain proper phasing for multi-wire branch circuits.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from panelboard enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 27 26
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
- D. Wall plates and covers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices: Devices for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors, in-wall time switches, and in-wall interval timers.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS W-C-596 - Connector, Electrical, Power, General Specification for; 2014h (Validated 2022).
- B. FS W-S-896 - Switches, Toggle (Toggle and Lock), Flush Mounted (General Specification); 2017g (Validated 2023).
- C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- D. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2016.
- E. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- F. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2021.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.

2. Coordinate wiring device ratings and configurations with the electrical requirements of actual equipment to be installed.
3. Coordinate the installation and preparation of uneven surfaces, such as split face block, to provide suitable surface for installation of wiring devices.
4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

B. Sequencing:

1. Do not install wiring devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Product Evaluation and Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization engaged in evaluation of products and services, including those recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTL), and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging until ready for installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WIRING DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use with ratings adequate for load served.
- B. Wiring Device Applications:
 1. Receptacles Installed Outdoors or in Damp or Wet Locations: Use weather-resistant GFCI receptacles with weatherproof covers.
 2. Provide GFCI protection for:
 - a. Receptacles installed within 6 feet of sinks.
 - b. Receptacles installed in kitchens.
 - c. Receptacles serving electric drinking fountains.
 3. Single Receptacles Installed on Individual Branch Circuits: Provide receptacle ampere rating equal to branch circuit rating.
- C. Wiring Device Finishes:
 1. Provide wiring device finishes as described below, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Wiring Devices, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Color as selected by Architect with stainless steel wall plate.

2.2 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Hubbell Incorporated: www.hubbell.com/#sle.
 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: www.leviton.com/#sle.

3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

- B. General Requirements: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20 and where applicable, FS W-S-896; types as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring and screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
- C. Standard Wall Switches: Industrial specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.

2.3 WALL DIMMERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc; IP710-LFZ series: www.leviton.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. General Requirements: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 1472; types and ratings suitable for load controlled as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Control: Slide control type with separate on/off switch.
- D. Power Rating, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required to Control the Load Indicated on the Drawings:
 - 1. LED: 1200 VA.

2.4 RECEPTACLES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell Incorporated: www.hubbell.com/#sle.
 - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: www.leviton.com/#sle.
 - 3. Lutron Electronics Company, Inc; Designer Style: www.lutron.com/#sle.
 - 4. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: www.legrand.us/#sle.
 - 5. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. General Requirements: Self-grounding, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498, and where applicable, FS W-C-596; types as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
 - 2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.
- C. Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
 - 2. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SD suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
- D. GFCI Receptacles:
 - 1. General Requirements: Self-testing, with feed-through protection and light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection; listed as complying with UL 943, class A.
 - a. Provide test and reset buttons of same color as device.
 - 2. Standard GFCI Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
 - 3. Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SD suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.

WIRING DEVICES

- E. USB Charging Devices:
 - 1. USB Charging / Receptacle Combination Devices: Two-port (1 type A and 1 type C) USB 3.1 charging device and receptacle, commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; rectangular decorator style.

2.5 WALL PLATES AND COVERS

- A. Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
 - 1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.
 - 2. Size: Standard.
 - 3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.
- B. Basis of Design: Stainless Steel Wall Plates: Brushed satin finish, Type 302 stainless steel.
 - 1. Material type and color to be selected and approved by Owner and Architect.
- C. Weatherproof Covers for Damp Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with self-closing hinged cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations with cover closed. Hubbell #WP8M or approved equal.
- D. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected and identified as extra-duty type. Hubbell #WP26M or approved equal.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.
- F. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.
 - 1. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where multiple receptacles, wall switches, or wall dimmers are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.

3. Locate wall switches on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
 4. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains concealed behind drinking fountain according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install wiring devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - D. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
 - E. Where required, connect wiring devices using pigtails not less than 6 inches long. Do not connect more than one conductor to wiring device terminals.
 - F. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
 - G. Provide GFCI receptacles with integral GFCI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.
 - H. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.
 - I. Install wall switches with OFF position down.
 - J. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
 - K. Do not share neutral conductor on branch circuits utilizing wall dimmers.
 - L. Install vertically mounted receptacles with grounding pole on top and horizontally mounted receptacles with grounding pole on left.
 - M. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
 - N. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no wiring devices installed or designated for future use.
 - O. Identify wiring devices in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized to verify proper operation.
- D. Test each receptacle to verify operation and proper polarity.
- E. Test each GFCI receptacle for proper tripping operation according to manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective wiring devices.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust presets for wall dimmers according to manufacturer's instructions as directed by Architect.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 13
FUSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fuses.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- B. Section 26 28 16.16 - Enclosed Switches: Fusible switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses; 2012.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. UL 248-1 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 1: General Requirements; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 248-10 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 10: Class L Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 248-12 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 12: Class R Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate fuse clips furnished in equipment provided under other sections for compatibility with indicated fuses.
 - a. Fusible Enclosed Switches: See Section 26 28 16.16.
 - 2. Coordinate fuse requirements according to manufacturer's recommendations and nameplate data for actual equipment to be installed.
 - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Bussmann, a division of Eaton Corporation: www.cooperindustries.com/#sle.
- B. Littelfuse, Inc: www.littelfuse.com/#sle.

- C. Mersen: ep-us.mersen.com/#sle.
- D. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
 - 1. Fusible Switches up to 600 Amperes: Class RK1, time-delay.
 - 2. Fusible Switches Larger Than 600 Amperes: Class L, time-delay.
- B. General Purpose Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time-delay.
- C. Individual Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time-delay.

2.3 FUSES

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide fuses for all fusible equipment as required for a complete operating system.
- C. Provide fuses of the same type, rating, and manufacturer within the same switch.
- D. Comply with UL 248-1.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide cartridge type fuses complying with NEMA FU 1, Class and ratings as indicated.
- F. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- G. Class R Fuses: Comply with UL 248-12.
- H. Class L Fuses: Comply with UL 248-10.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that fuse ratings are consistent with circuit voltage and manufacturer's recommendations and nameplate data for equipment.
- B. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install fuses until circuits are ready to be energized.
- B. Install fuses with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 16.16
ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Enclosed safety switches.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 28 13 - Fuses.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- B. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- C. NEMA BS 31047 - Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum); 2013 (Reaffirmed 2023).
- D. NETA ATS - Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2025.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades. Avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and within working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 3. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
 - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for enclosed switches and other installed components and accessories.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- B. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to enclosed switch internal components, enclosure, and finish.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F during and after installation of enclosed switches.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Corporation; Cutler Hammer: www.eaton.com/#sle.
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: www.schneider-electric.us/#sle.
- C. Siemens Industry, Inc: www.usa.siemens.com/#sle.
- D. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- E. Source Limitations: Provide enclosed switches and associated components produced by same manufacturer as other electrical distribution equipment used for project and obtained from single supplier.

2.2 ENCLOSED SAFETY SWITCHES

- A. Description: Quick-make, quick-break enclosed safety switches listed and labeled as complying with UL 98; heavy duty; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
 - 1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
 - 2. Ambient Temperature: Between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- D. Horsepower Rating: Suitable for connected load.

- E. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- F. Enclosed Safety Switches Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.
- G. Provide with switch blade contact position that is visible when the cover is open.
- H. Fuse Clips for Fusible Switches: As required to accept fuses indicated.
- I. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- J. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each enclosed safety switch, with a suitable lug for terminating each equipment grounding conductor.
- K. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA EN 10250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
 - 1. Environment Type per NEMA EN 10250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
 - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
 - 2. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard, factory applied grey unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the switch in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
- M. Heavy Duty Switches:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA BS 31047.
 - 2. Conductor Terminations:
 - a. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
 - 3. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position, capable of accepting three padlocks.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that the ratings of the enclosed switches are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive enclosed safety switches.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install enclosed switches plumb.
- F. Except where indicated to be mounted adjacent to the equipment they supply, mount enclosed switches such that the highest position of the operating handle does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.

- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- H. Provide fuses complying with Section 26 28 13 for fusible switches as indicated or as required by equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
- I. Identify enclosed switches in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- C. Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.5.1.1.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective enclosed safety switches or associated components.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from switch enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 32 13
ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Packaged engine generator system and associated components and accessories:
 - 1. Engine and engine accessory equipment.
 - 2. Alternator (generator).
 - 3. Generator set control system.
 - 4. Generator set enclosure.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete equipment pads.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 26 36 00 - Transfer Switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- B. NECA/EGSA 404 - Standard for Installing Generator Sets; 2014.
- C. NEMA MG 00001 - Motors and Generators; 2024.
- D. NFPA 37 - Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines; 2024, with Amendment.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. NFPA 99 - Health Care Facilities Code; 2024, with Errata.
- G. NFPA 110 - Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems; 2025.
- H. UL 1236 - Battery Chargers for Charging Engine-Starter Batteries; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 2200 - Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate compatibility of generator sets to be installed with work provided under other sections or by others.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment or other potential obstructions within the spaces dedicated for engine generator system.
 - 3. Coordinate arrangement of equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.

4. Coordinate the work to provide electrical circuits suitable for the power requirements of the actual auxiliary equipment and accessories to be installed.
 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section; require attendance of all affected installers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each product, including ratings, configurations, dimensions, finishes, weights, service condition requirements, and installed features. Include alternator starting capabilities, engine fuel consumption rates, and cooling, combustion air, and exhaust requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plan views and sections indicating locations of system components, required clearances, and field connection locations. Include system interconnection schematic diagrams showing all factory and field connections.
- D. Manufacturer's factory emissions certification.
- E. Provide NFPA 110 required documentation from manufacturer where requested by authorities having jurisdiction, including but not limited to:
1. Certified prototype tests.
 2. Torsional vibration compatibility certification.
 3. NFPA 110 compliance certification.
 4. Certified rated load test at rated power factor.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the following:
1. NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code).
 2. NFPA 110 (Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems); meet requirements for Level 1 system.
 3. NFPA 37 (Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines).
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store generator sets in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NECA/EGSA 404.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to avoid damage to generator set components, enclosure, and finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Packaged Engine Generator Set:

1. Caterpillar Inc: www.cat.com/#sle.
2. Cummins Power Generation Inc: www.cumminspower.com/#sle.
3. Generac Power Systems: www.generac.com/industrial/#sle.
4. Rehlko: www.powersystems.rehlko.com/#sle.
5. Rolls-Royce Power Systems; MTU: www.mtu-solutions.com/#sle.

B. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 PACKAGED ENGINE GENERATOR SYSTEM

- A. Provide new engine generator system consisting of all required equipment, sensors, conduit, boxes, wiring, piping, supports, accessories, system programming, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system that provides the functional intent indicated.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. System Description:
 1. Application: Emergency/standby.
 2. Configuration: Single packaged engine generator set operated independently (not in parallel).
- D. Packaged Engine Generator Set:
 1. Type: Gaseous (spark ignition).
 2. Power Rating: As indicated on drawings, standby.
 3. Voltage: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Generator Set General Requirements:
 1. Prototype tested in accordance with NFPA 110 for Level 1 systems.
 2. Factory-assembled, with components mounted on suitable base.
 3. List and label engine generator assembly as complying with UL 2200.
 4. Power Factor: Unless otherwise indicated, specified power ratings are at 0.8 power factor for three phase voltages and 1.0 power factor for single phase voltages.
 5. Provide suitable guards to protect personnel from accidental contact with rotating parts, hot piping, and other potential sources of injury.
- F. Service Conditions: Provide engine generator system and associated components suitable for operation under the service conditions at the installed location.
- G. Starting and Load Acceptance Requirements:
 1. Cranking Method: Cycle cranking complying with NFPA 110 (15 second crank period, followed by 15 second rest period, with cranking limiter time-out after 3 cycles), unless otherwise required.
 2. Cranking Limiter Time-Out: If generator set fails to start after specified cranking period, indicate overcrank alarm condition and lock-out generator set from further cranking until manually reset.
 3. Start Time: Capable of starting and achieving conditions necessary for load acceptance within 10 seconds (NFPA 110, Type 10).
 4. Maximum Load Step: Supports 100 percent of rated load in one step.
- H. Exhaust Emissions Requirements:
 1. Comply with federal (EPA), state, and local regulations applicable at the time of commissioning; include factory emissions certification with submittals.
 2. Do not make modifications affecting generator set factory emissions certification without approval of manufacturer and Engineer. Where such modifications are made, provide field emissions testing as necessary for certification.

2.3 ENGINE AND ENGINE ACCESSORY EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide engine with adequate horsepower to achieve specified power output at rated speed, accounting for alternator efficiency and parasitic loads.
- B. Engine Fuel System - Gaseous (Spark Ignition):
 1. Fuel Source: Natural gas.

2. Engine Fuel Connections: Provide suitable, approved flexible fuel lines for coupling engine to fuel source.
 3. Provide components/features indicated and as necessary for operation and/or required by applicable codes, including but not limited to:
 - a. Carburetor.
 - b. Gas pressure regulators.
 - c. Fuel shutoff control valves.
 - d. Low gas pressure switches.
- C. Engine Starting System:
1. System Type: Electric, with DC solenoid-activated starting motor(s).
 2. Battery(s):
 - a. Battery Type: Lead-acid.
 - b. Battery Capacity: Size according to manufacturer's recommendations for achieving starting and load acceptance requirements under worst case ambient temperature; capable of providing cranking through two complete periods of cranking limiter time-outs without recharging.
 - c. Provide battery rack, cables, and connectors suitable for the supplied battery(s); size battery cables according to manufacturer's recommendations for cable length to be installed.
 3. Battery-Charging Alternator: Engine-driven, with integral solid-state voltage regulation.
 4. Battery Charger:
 - a. Provide dual rate battery charger with automatic float and equalize charging modes and minimum rating of 10 amps; suitable for maintaining the supplied battery(s) at full charge without manual intervention.
 - b. Capable of returning supplied battery(s) from fully discharged to fully charged condition within 24 hours, as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 applications while carrying normal loads.
 - c. Listed as complying with UL 1236.
 - d. Furnished with integral overcurrent protection; current limited to protect charger during engine cranking; reverse polarity protection.
 - e. Provide integral DC output ammeter and voltmeter with five percent accuracy.
 - f. Provide alarm output contacts as necessary for alarm indications.
- D. Engine Speed Control System (Governor):
1. Single Engine Generator Sets (Not Operated in Parallel): Provide electronic isochronous governor for controlling engine speed/alternator frequency.
 2. Frequency Regulation, Electronic Isochronous Governors: No change in frequency from no load to full load; plus/minus 0.25 percent at steady state.
- E. Engine Lubrication System:
1. System Type: Full pressure, with engine-driven, positive displacement lubrication oil pump, replaceable full-flow oil filter(s), and dip-stick for oil level indication. Provide oil cooler where recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Engine Cooling System:
1. System Type: Closed-loop, liquid-cooled, with unit-mounted radiator/fan and engine-driven coolant pump; suitable for providing adequate cooling while operating at full load under worst case ambient temperature.
 2. Fan Guard: Provide suitable guard to protect personnel from accidental contact with fan.
- G. Engine Air Intake and Exhaust System:
1. Air Intake Filtration: Provide engine-mounted, replaceable, dry element filter.
 2. Engine Exhaust Connection: Provide suitable, approved flexible connector for coupling engine to exhaust system.

2.4 ALTERNATOR (GENERATOR)

- A. Alternator: 4-pole, 1800 rpm (60 Hz output) revolving field, synchronous generator complying with NEMA MG 00001; connected to engine with flexible coupling; voltage output configuration as indicated, with reconnectable leads for 3 phase alternators.
- B. Exciter:
 - 1. Exciter Type: Brushless; provide permanent magnet generator (PMG) excitation system; self-excited (shunt) systems are not permitted.
 - 2. PMG Excitation Short-Circuit Current Support: Capable of sustaining 300 percent of rated output current for 10 seconds.
 - 3. Voltage Regulation (with PMG excitation): Plus/minus 0.5 percent for any constant load from no load to full load.
- C. Temperature Rise: Comply with UL 2200.
- D. Insulation System: NEMA MG 00001, Class H; suitable for alternator temperature rise.
- E. Enclosure: NEMA MG 00001, drip-proof.
- F. Total Harmonic Distortion: Not greater than five percent.

2.5 GENERATOR SET CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Provide microprocessor-based control system for automatic control, monitoring, and protection of generator set. Include sensors, wiring, and connections necessary for functions/indications specified.
- B. Control Panel:
 - 1. Control Panel Mounting: Unit-mounted unless otherwise indicated; vibration isolated.
 - 2. Generator Set Control Functions:
 - a. Automatic Mode: Initiates generator set start/shutdown upon receiving corresponding signal from remote device (e.g. automatic transfer switch).
 - b. Manual Mode: Initiates generator set start/shutdown upon direction from operator.
 - c. Reset Mode: Clears all faults, allowing generator set restart after a shutdown.
 - d. Emergency Stop: Immediately shuts down generator set (without time delay) and prevents automatic restarting until manually reset.
 - e. Cycle Cranking: Programmable crank time, rest time, and number of cycles.
 - f. Time Delay: Programmable for shutdown (engine cooldown) and start (engine warmup).
 - g. Voltage Adjustment: Adjustable through range of plus/minus 5 percent.
 - 3. Generator Set Status Indications:
 - a. Voltage (Volts AC): Line-to-line, line-to-neutral for each phase.
 - b. Current (Amps): For each phase.
 - c. Frequency (Hz).
 - d. Real power (W/kW).
 - e. Reactive power (VAR/kVAR).
 - f. Apparent power (VA/kVA).
 - g. Power factor.
 - h. Duty Level: Actual load as percentage of rated power.
 - i. Engine speed (RPM).
 - j. Battery voltage (Volts DC).
 - k. Engine oil pressure.
 - l. Engine coolant temperature.
 - m. Engine run time.
 - n. Generator powering load (position signal from transfer switch).
 - 4. Generator Set Protection and Warning/Shutdown Indications:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 110; configurable for NFPA 110 Level 1 or Level 2, or NFPA 99 systems including but not limited to the following protections/indications:
 - 1) Overcrank (shutdown).
 - 2) Low coolant temperature (warning).
 - 3) High coolant temperature (warning).
 - 4) High coolant temperature (shutdown).

- 5) Low oil pressure (shutdown).
- 6) Overspeed (shutdown).
- 7) Low fuel level (warning).
- 8) Low coolant level (warning/shutdown).
- 9) Generator control not in automatic mode (warning).
- 10) High battery voltage (warning).
- 11) Low cranking voltage (warning).
- 12) Low battery voltage (warning).
- 13) Battery charger failure (warning).
- b. In addition to NFPA 110 requirements, provide the following protections/indications:
 - 1) High AC voltage (shutdown).
 - 2) Low AC voltage (shutdown).
 - 3) High frequency (shutdown).
 - 4) Low frequency (shutdown).
 - 5) Overcurrent (shutdown).
- c. Provide contacts for local and remote common alarm.
- d. Provide lamp test function that illuminates all indicator lamps.
5. Other Control Panel Features:
 - a. Event log.

2.6 GENERATOR SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Enclosure Type: Sound attenuating, weather protective.
- B. Enclosure Material: Steel or aluminum.
- C. Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- D. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Access Doors: Lockable, with all locks keyed alike.
- F. Openings: Designed to prevent bird/rodent entry.
- G. External Drains: Extend oil and coolant drain lines to exterior of enclosure for maintenance service.
- H. Sound Attenuating Enclosures: Line enclosure with non-hydroscopic, self-extinguishing sound-attenuating material.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that the ratings and configurations of generator sets and auxiliary equipment are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that rough-ins for field connections are in the proper locations.
- D. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive equipment.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- C. Install generator sets and associated accessories in accordance with NECA/EGSA 404.
- D. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances and required maintenance access.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, mount generator set on properly sized, minimum 6 inch high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
- F. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- G. Use manufacturer's recommended oil and coolant, suitable for the worst case ambient temperatures.
- H. Do not insulate piping for engine components restricted by manufacturer.
- I. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- J. Identify system wiring and components in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Notify Owner and Architect at least two weeks prior to scheduled inspections and tests.
- C. Notify authorities having jurisdiction and comply with their requirements for scheduling inspections and tests and for observation by their personnel.
- D. Provide all equipment, tools, and supplies required to accomplish inspection and testing, including load bank and fuel.
- E. Preliminary inspection and testing to include, at a minimum:
 - 1. Inspect each system component for damage and defects.
 - 2. Verify tightness of mechanical and electrical connections are according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
 - 3. Check for proper oil and coolant levels.
- F. Prepare and start system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Perform acceptance test in accordance with NFPA 110.
- H. Provide field emissions testing where necessary for certification.
- I. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with Contract Documents.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed engine generator system from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 36 00
TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Transfer switches for low-voltage (600 V and less) applications.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete equipment pads.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 26 32 13 - Engine Generators: For interface with transfer switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- B. NEMA EN 10250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2024.
- C. NEMA IA 10042-1 - Industrial Control and Systems Part 1: Electromechanical AC Transfer Switch Equipment; 2025.
- D. NETA ATS - Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2025.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 1008 - Transfer Switch Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate compatibility of transfer switches to be installed with work provided under other sections or by others.
 - a. Engine Generators: See Section 26 32 13.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances required by NFPA 70.
 - 3. Coordinate arrangement of equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 4. Coordinate the work with placement of supports, anchors, etc. required for mounting.
 - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each product, including ratings, configurations, dimensions, finishes, weights, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plan views and sections indicating locations of system components, required clearances, and field connection locations. Include system interconnection schematic diagrams showing all factory and field connections.
- D. Source quality control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code).
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store transfer switches in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to avoid damage to transfer switch components, enclosure, and finish.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide minimum two year manufacturer warranty covering repair or replacement due to defective materials or workmanship.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Transfer Switches:
 - 1. ABB/GE: www.geindustrial.com/#sle.
 - 2. Eaton Corporation: www.eaton.com/#sle.
 - 3. Generac Power Systems: www.generac.com/industrial/#sle.
 - 4. Rehlko: www.powersystems.rehlko.com/#sle.
 - 5. Schneider Electric; ASCO Power Technologies: www.ascopower.com/#sle.
 - 6. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Provide complete power transfer system consisting of all required equipment, conduit, boxes, wiring, supports, accessories, system programming, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system that provides the functional intent indicated.
- B. Integrated Transfer Switch/Connection Cabinet Units:

1. Where separate transfer switches and connection cabinets/docking stations are specified, integrated combination units also complying with Section 26 36 33 are permitted where approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- D. Applications:
- E. Construction Type: Either "contactor type" (open contact) or "breaker type" (enclosed contact) transfer switches complying with specified requirements are acceptable.
- F. Automatic Transfer Switch:
 1. Transfer Switch Type: As indicated on the drawings.
 2. Transition Configuration: As indicated on the drawings.
 3. Voltage: As indicated on the drawings.
 4. Ampere Rating: As indicated on the drawings.
 5. Neutral Configuration: Solid neutral (unswitched), except as indicated.
 6. Load Served: As indicated on the drawings.
 7. Primary Source: As indicated on the drawings.
 8. Alternate Source: As indicated on the drawings.
 9. Products:
 - a. Schneider Electric; ASCO 7000 Series Automatic Transfer Switches: www.ascopower.com/#sle.
 - b. Schneider Electric; ASCO 300 Series Automatic Transfer Switches: www.ascopower.com/#sle.
 - c. Thomson Power Systems TS 870 Series: www.thomsonps.com/#sle.
 - d. Thomson Power Systems TS 880 Series: www.thomsonps.com/#sle.
- G. Nonautomatic Transfer Switch:
- H. Comply with NEMA IA 10042-1, and list and label as complying with UL 1008 for the classification of the intended application (e.g. emergency, optional standby).
- I. Do not use double throw safety switches or other equipment not specifically designed for power transfer applications and listed as transfer switch equipment.
- J. Load Classification: Classified for total system load (any combination of motor, electric discharge lamp, resistive, and tungsten lamp loads with tungsten lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of the continuous current rating) unless otherwise indicated or required.
- K. Switching Methods:
 1. Open Transition:
 - a. Provide break-before-make transfer without a neutral position that is not connected to either source, and with interlocks to prevent simultaneous connection of the load to both sources.
 - b. Where in-phase transfer is indicated, utilize in-phase monitor to initiate transfer when phase angle difference between sources is near zero to limit in-rush currents.
 2. Obtain control power for transfer operation from line side of source to which the load is to be transferred.
- L. Service Conditions: Provide transfer switches suitable for continuous operation at indicated ratings under the service conditions at the installed location.
- M. Enclosures:
 1. Environment Type per NEMA EN 10250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Short Circuit Current Rating:
- O. Automatic Transfer Switches:

1. Description: Transfer switches with automatically initiated transfer between sources; electrically operated and mechanically held.
 2. Control Functions:
 - a. Automatic mode.
 - b. Test Mode: Simulates failure of primary/normal source.
 - c. Voltage and Frequency Sensing:
 - 1) Undervoltage sensing for each phase of primary/normal source; adjustable dropout/pickup settings.
 - 2) Undervoltage sensing for alternate/emergency source; adjustable dropout/pickup settings.
 - 3) Underfrequency sensing for alternate/emergency source; adjustable dropout/pickup settings.
 - d. Outputs:
 - 1) Contacts for engine start/shutdown (except where direct generator communication interface is provided).
 - 2) Auxiliary contacts; one set(s) for each switch position.
 - e. Adjustable Time Delays:
 - 1) Engine generator start time delay; delays engine start signal to override momentary primary/normal source failures.
 - 2) Transfer to alternate/emergency source time delay.
 - 3) Retransfer to primary/normal source time delay.
 - 4) Engine generator cooldown time delay; delays engine shutdown following retransfer to primary/normal source to permit generator to run unloaded for cooldown period.
 - f. In-Phase Monitor (Open Transition Transfer Switches): Monitors phase angle difference between sources for initiating in-phase transfer.
 - g. Engine Exerciser: Provides programmable scheduled exercising of engine generator selectable with or without transfer to load; provides memory retention during power outage.
 3. Status Indications:
 - a. Connected to alternate/emergency source.
 - b. Connected to primary/normal source.
 - c. Alternate/emergency source available.
 4. Automatic Sequence of Operations:
 - a. Upon failure of primary/normal source for a programmable time period (engine generator start time delay), initiate starting of engine generator where applicable.
 - b. When alternate/emergency source is available, transfer load to alternate/emergency source after programmable time delay.
 - c. When primary/normal source has been restored, retransfer to primary/normal source after a programmable time delay. Bypass time delay if alternate/emergency source fails and primary/normal source is available.
 - d. Where applicable, initiate shutdown of engine generator after programmable engine cooldown time delay.
- P. Nonautomatic Transfer Switches:
1. Description: Transfer switches with manually initiated transfer between sources; electrically operated and mechanically held.
 2. Control Functions:
 - a. Manual source selection.
 - b. Outputs:
 - 1) Auxiliary contacts; one set for each switch position.
 3. Status Indications:
 - a. Connected to alternate/emergency source.
 - b. Connected to primary/normal source.
 - c. Alternate/emergency source available.
- Q. Interface with Other Work:
1. Interface with engine generators as specified in Section 26 32 13.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Perform production tests on transfer switches at factory to verify operation and performance characteristics prior to shipment. Include certified test report with submittals.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that the ratings and configurations of transfer switches are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that rough-ins for field connections are in the proper locations.
- D. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive transfer switches.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances and required maintenance access.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install transfer switches plumb and level.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, mount floor-mounted transfer switches on properly sized 3 inch high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- H. Identify transfer switches and associated system wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Prepare and start system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Automatic Transfer Switches:
 - 1. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
 - 2. Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.22.3. The insulation-resistance tests listed as optional are not required.
- D. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with Contract Documents.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed transfer switches from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 51 00
INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior luminaires.
- B. Exit signs.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices.
 - 1. Includes automatic controls for lighting including occupancy sensors, outdoor motion sensors, time switches, outdoor photo controls, and daylighting controls.
- E. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Manual wall switches and wall dimmers.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA/IESNA 500 - Standard for Installing Indoor Commercial Lighting Systems; 2025.
- B. NECA/IESNA 502 - Standard for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems; 2006.
- C. NEMA LE 4 - Recessed Luminaires, Ceiling Compatibility; 2023.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of luminaires with mounting surfaces installed under other sections or by others. Coordinate the work with placement of supports, anchors, etc. required for mounting. Coordinate compatibility of luminaires and associated trims with mounting surfaces at installed locations.
 - 2. Coordinate the placement of luminaires with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
 - 3. Coordinate the placement of exit signs with furniture, equipment, signage or other potential obstructions to visibility installed under other sections or by others.
 - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, installed accessories, and ceiling compatibility; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of luminaires and any associated remote components.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Receive, handle, and store products according to NECA/IESNA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA/IESNA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Keep products in original manufacturer's packaging and protect from damage until ready for installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.

- F. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
 - 1. Ceiling Compatibility: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
 - 2. Luminaires Recessed in Sloped Ceilings: Provide suitable sloped ceiling adapters.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Exit signs complying with NFPA 101 and applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
 - 1. Number of Faces: Single- or double-face as indicated or as required for installed location.
 - 2. Directional Arrows: As indicated or as required for installed location.
- B. Powered Exit Signs: Internally illuminated with LEDs unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Self-Powered Exit Signs:
 - a. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
 - b. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel cadmium unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
 - d. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Chain hang pendant luminaires in utilitarian spaces.
- B. Provide accessory plaster frames for luminaires recessed in plaster ceilings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.

- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 500 (commercial lighting) and NECA 502 (industrial lighting).
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- F. Suspended Ceiling Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Do not use ceiling tiles to bear weight of luminaires.
 - 2. Do not use ceiling support system to bear weight of luminaires unless ceiling support system is certified as suitable to do so.
 - 3. Secure surface-mounted and recessed luminaires to ceiling support channels or framing members or to building structure.
 - 4. Secure pendant-mounted luminaires to building structure.
 - 5. Secure lay-in luminaires to ceiling support channels using listed safety clips at four corners.
 - 6. In addition to ceiling support wires, provide two galvanized steel safety wire(s), minimum 12 gauge, connected from opposing corners of each recessed luminaire to building structure.
 - 7. See appropriate Division 9 section where suspended grid ceiling is specified for additional requirements.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
 - 1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
 - 2. Non-IC Rated Luminaires: Maintain required separation from insulation and combustible materials according to listing.
- H. Suspended Luminaires:
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to bottom of luminaire.
 - 2. Install using the suspension method indicated, with support lengths and accessories as required for specified mounting height.
 - 3. Provide minimum of two supports for each luminaire equal to or exceeding 4 feet nominal length, with no more than 4 feet between supports.
 - 4. Install canopies tight to mounting surface.
- I. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
- J. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- K. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- L. Exit Signs:
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
- D. Test self-powered exit signs and emergency lighting units to verify proper operation upon loss of normal power supply.
- E. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Aim and position adjustable luminaires to achieve desired illumination as indicated or as directed by Architect. Secure locking fittings in place.
- B. Aim and position adjustable emergency lighting unit lamps to achieve optimum illumination of egress path as required or as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.
- C. Exit Signs with Field-Selectable Directional Arrows: Set as indicated or as required to properly designate egress path as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.

3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. Just prior to Substantial Completion, replace all lamps that have failed.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed luminaires from subsequent construction operations.

3.9 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Luminaire schedule located on contract drawings.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 05 26
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Hardware.
- B. Grounding Busbars.
- C. Telecommunications Equipment Bonding Conductors.
- D. Beam Grounding Clamps.
- E. Bonding Hardware.
- F. Wire.
- G. Mechanical connectors.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. BICSI TDMM - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 15th Edition; 2024.
- B. NECA/BICSI 607 - Standard for Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding Planning and Installation Methods for Commercial Buildings; 2011.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. TIA-607 - Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises; 2024e.
- E. UL 1581 - Reference Standard for Electrical Wires, Cables, and Flexible Cords; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, For submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit product data on grounding and bonding equipment and connections.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate overall resistance to earth ground.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Submit for active electrodes.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify Products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- G. Installer's Qualification Statement.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for submittals.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and grounding electrodes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide grounding, surge protection and lightning protection of telecommunications system in accordance with latest version of Grounding, Bonding and Electrical Protection chapter of the BICSI TDMM Manual, TIA-607, and NFPA 70.
 - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- B. Assure that the "as installed" system is correctly and completely documented including engineering drawings, manuals, and operational procedures in such a manner as to support maintenance and future expansion of the system.
- C. Cables and cable assemblies shall be VW-1 flame rated and comply with UL 1581 and CSA Certified.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, such as UL.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum five years documented experience.

1.8 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.
- B. Convene minimum one week prior to commencing work of this section.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.
- B. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification.
- C. Protect from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original packaging.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Requirements for coordination.
- B. Complete grounding and bonding of building reinforcing steel prior concrete placement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

- A. Panduit: www.panduit.com.
- B. Or Approved Equal.

- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for substitution procedures.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The purpose of this grounding system is to create a low impedance path to earth ground for electrical surges and transient voltages. Lightning, fault currents, circuit switching (motors turning on and off), and electrostatic discharge (ESD) are common causes of these surges and transient voltages. An effective grounding system minimizes the detrimental effects of these electrical surges, which include degraded network performance and reliability and increased safety risks.
- B. The grounding system must be intentional, visually verifiable, adequately sized to handle expected currents safely, and directs these potentially damaging currents away from sensitive network equipment. As such, grounding must be purposeful in its design and installation. The following four issues require special consideration:
1. Although AC powered equipment typically has a power cord that contains a ground wire, the integrity of this path cannot be easily verified. Thus, many equipment manufacturers require grounding above and beyond that which is specified by local electrical codes, such as the National Electrical Code. Always follow the grounding recommendations of the manufacturer when installing equipment.
 2. While the building steel and metallic water piping must be bonded to the grounding system for safety reasons, neither may be substituted for the telecommunications bonding backbone (TBB).
 3. Electrical continuity throughout each rack or cabinet is required to minimize safety risks. Hardware typically supplied with bolt-together racks is not designed for grounding purposes. Additionally, most racks are painted and paint is an insulator. Unless rack members are deliberately bonded, continuity between members is incidental, and in many cases, unlikely.
 4. Any metallic component that is part of the data center, including equipment, racks, ladder racks, enclosures, cable trays, etc. must be bonded to the grounding system.
- C. The communications grounding systems shall use the Building Grounding Electrode as the grounding element.
1. The following elements shall not be acceptable as grounding electrodes:
 - a. Building Plumbing System.
 - b. Gas Piping System.
 - c. Fire Sprinkler System.

2.3 GENERAL

- A. Two-hole lugs shall be used wherever possible to resist loosening when twisted (bumped) or exposed to vibration. All lugs shall be irreversible compression and meet NEBS Level 3 as tested by Telcordia. Lugs with inspection windows shall be used in all non-corrosive environments so that connections may be inspected for full conductor insertion.
- B. Die index numbers shall be embossed on all compression connections to allow crimp inspection.
- C. Lugs, HTAPs, grounding strips, and busbars shall be UL Listed and made of premium quality tin-plated electrolytic copper that provides low electrical resistance while inhibiting corrosion.
- D. Antioxidant shall be used when making bonding connections in the field.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. General:
1. Meeting NECA/BICSI 607 and TIA-607 requirements for network systems bonding applications.
 2. Rectangular copper bar, tin-plated to inhibit corrosion.
 3. Pre-assembled mounting bracket, fully insulated from busbar.
 4. Pre-drilled paired holes to accommodate two hole lugs, quantity as determined by size of busbar required:
 - a. 1/4 inch stud holes, 5/8 inch on center.
 - b. 3/8 inch stud holes, 1 inch on center.

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

2.5 GROUNDING AND BONDING WIRE

- A. All grounding and bonding conductors shall be insulated stranded copper wire.
1. Jackets shall be VW-1 Flame Rated in accordance with UL 1581.
 - a. Color: Distinctive green or green/yellow.
- B. The Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB) in each telecommunications space shall be grounded / earthed to the Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB) located at the service entrance. The gauge of the connecting copper ground / earth cable, known as the Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB) shall follow BICSI TDMM Manual and TIA-607 guidelines, as is shown in the table below.

TBB Length in Linear feet	TBB Size (AWG)
Less than 13	6
14 - 20	4
21 - 26	3
27 - 33	2
34 - 41	1
42 - 52	1/0
53 - 66	2/0
Greater than 66	3/0

- C. The TMGB will be bonded to building steel and grounded to the electrical service ground according to BICSI TDMM Manual and TIA-607 guidelines. In telecommunications spaces with only one rack, the rack jumper cable shall be connected directly to the TGB. The gauge of connecting copper ground cables shall be sized as shown in the table below.

Equipment / Purpose	Copper Cable Size (AWG)
Bonding conductor to each PDU or panel board serving the room	Size per NEC 250.122 and manufacturer requirements
Conduits, water pipes, and ducts	6
Bonding conductor to HVAC equipment	6
Cable trays / ladder racks	6
Building columns	4
Aisle grounds (over head or under floor) of the common bonding network	1/0

2.6 COMPRESSION LUGS

- A. Lugs shall meet NEBS Level 3 requirements as tested by Telcordia.
- B. Two hole lugs for connection of grounding wire to busbars, racks, cabinets, all data equipment, cable runway, building steel, etc.
1. Combination hole and slot may be used for greater flexibility in connectivity.
 - a. Field modification of mounting holes shall not be accepted.
- C. Long barrel to maximize number of crimps and reduce pullout of copper conductors.
1. Barrel shall have inspection window to ensure full conductor insertion.
 2. Ground conductor shall be fully crimped by compatible power crimper and dies.
 - a. Hand crimping of lugs shall not be accepted.
- D. Tin plated copper to inhibit corrosion.
- E. Product:
1. Code Conductor
- Model: LCC-W Series

2.7 RACK / CABINET EQUIPMENT GROUNDING JUMPER CABLES GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

- A. Bolt-on bonding jumper that connects rack to the vertical rack grounding bar.
 - 1. Conductor: #6 AWG insulated stranded copper.
 - 2. Factory terminated with one straight slotted lug, and one 90 degree bent slotted lug.
 - 3. Length: 60 inches, minimum.
- B. Product:
 - 1. Equipment Jumper Kit Model RGEJ660U

2.8 VERTICAL RACK GROUND BAR KIT

- A. Tin plated copper conductor that attaches vertically to the rack equipment mounting rails to provide connection of rack mounted equipment with jumper to the telecommunications grounding busbar.
 - 1. 78.65 inch long, 0.67 inch wide, 0.05 inch thick, nominal.
- B. Product:
 - 1. Ground Bar Kit- Threaded Rail Model RGS134-1Y
 - 2. Ground Bar Kit- Cage Nut Rail Model RGS134B-1

2.9 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) PORT KIT AND WRIST STRAP

- A. Two hole ESD port with 5/8 inch hole spacing.
 - 1. Bent at 45 degree angle to hold wrist strap.
 - 2. Permanently marked with protective earth (ground) symbol.
- B. Wrist strap: Adjustable fabric to provide rapid and continuous drain of electrostatic charge between a person and the surface that the wrist strap is bonded to.
 - 1. Connection: Six foot coiled cord with 1 megohm resistor and banana plug for insertion into ESD port.
- C. Provide one wrist strap and ESD port at each rack or cabinet to prevent damaging static discharge into equipment.
- D. Product:
 - 1. ESD Wrist Strap Model RGEDWS
 - 2. ESD Port Kit for Threaded Rails Model RGED2-1
 - 3. ESD Port Kit for Cage Nut Rails Model RGED2B-1

2.10 CABLE TRAY / LADDER RUNWAY GROUNDING BRACKETS

- A. Grounding brackets for cable trays and ladder runway within telecommunications spaces.
 - 1. Serves as routing and support for overhead grounding conductors along cable trays and ladder runways.
 - 2. Provides bonding between cable trays or ladder runways when used with ladder runway bonding jumper kit.
- B. Product:
 - 1. Auxiliary Cable Brackets Model GACB-2

2.11 LADDER RUNWAY BONDING JUMPER KIT

- A. Bolt-on bonding jumper that connects cable tray and ladder runway brackets.
 - 1. Conductor: #6 AWG insulated stranded copper.
 - 2. Factory terminated with two straight long barrel two hole lugs.
- B. Provides grounding pathway between ladder runway or cable tray splices when used with auxiliary cable brackets.
- C. Product:
 - 1. Auxiliary Cable Bracket Jumper Kit
 - a. Length: 8" Model GACBJ68U

- b. Length: 12" Model GACBJ612U
c. Length: 18" Model GACBJ618U

2.12 GROUNDING CLAMP FOR CONDUITS

- A. Dual rated for copper conductors to copper pipe, galvanized pipe or steel conduit.
- B. High strength aluminum alloy.
 1. Tin plated for corrosion and oxidation resistance.
- C. Product:
 1. Pipe Grounding Clamp (0.5"- 1" Pipe) Model GC-15A-Q
 2. Pipe Grounding Clamp (1.25" - 2" Pipe) Model GC-18A-X
 3. Pipe Grounding Clamp (2.5"- 4" Pipe) Model GC-22A-4

2.13 UNIVERSAL BEAM GROUNDING CLAMP

- A. Copper grounding clamp in conformance with UL 467.
 - 1. Provides mounting pad suitable for a two-hole compression lug.
 - 2. Suitable on steel flanges from 1/4 inch through 5/8 inch.
- B. Provide for any grounding connections made to beams.
- C. Product:
 - 1. Universal Beam Grounding Clamp Model GUBC500-6

2.14 SPLIT BOLT COPPER GROUNDING CLAMP

- A. High strength copper alloy.
 - 1. Pressure bar with hex nut tightening.
- B. Grounding connection for wire tray / baskets.
- C. Product:
 - 1. Split Bolt - Copper Model SBC3-C
 - 2. Split Bolt - Copper: Tin-Plated for galvanized Model SBCT3-C

2.15 BONDING HARDWARE KITS

- A. Bonding studs and nuts: Steel.
1. Paint piercing serrations to create bonding point between the rack or cabinet and painted patch panels, mounted equipment, servers, busbars, and jumpers.
 2. Color: Green, to indicate bonding application.
- B. Product:
1. Bonding Stud Kit:
 - a. For threaded #12-24 rail fasteners Model TRBSK
 - b. For threaded M6 rail fasteners Model TRBSM6K
 - c. For cage nut rail fasteners Model CGNBSK
 2. Bonding Nuts:
 - a. For threaded #12-24 rail fasteners Model BGN-C
 - b. For cage nut rail fasteners Model BGN-C
 - c. For 1/4" thru-hole rail fasteners Model BGN-C
 - d. For threaded M6 rail fasteners Model BGNM6-C

2.16 PAINT PIERCING GROUNDING WASHER KIT

- A. Bonds frame members on bolt-together racks.
- B. Product:

1. Paint Piercing Grounding Washer Kit Model RGW-100-1Y

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove paint, rust, mill oils, surface contaminants at connection points using an abrasive pad and provide antioxidant compound.
- B. Antioxidant shall be used when making all bonding connections in the field.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with BICSI TDMM Manual, TIA-607, and NFPA 70.
- B. Install all components in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Install all components of the grounding system in a manner so that they are intentional, visually verifiable, adequately sized to handle expected currents safely, and to direct potentially damaging currents away from sensitive network equipment.
- D. Install grounding for each rack / cabinet using 6 AWG THHN, rated for 90 degrees C, insulated, copper stranded conductor to copper communication grounding bus bar located in main telecommunications entrance facility.
- E. No "daisy chaining" of racks / cabinets, each rack / cabinet shall have it's own independent connection to the telecommunications grounding bar within the data room either through a main common bonding network or homerun.
- F. Bond main telecommunications grounding system to building grounding electrode system at main electrical service entrance location with 3/0 AWG copper stranded conductor.
- G. Install routing for grounding conductor as short and direct as practical.
- H. Install routing of bonding conductors with minimum number of bends and splices. Use sweeping bends.
- I. Position grounding busbars near associated equipment and insulate from supports.
- J. Ground data cabinets, racks, cable trays, air conditioning unit, building structure, metal piping and metal conduit located in all data rooms to the Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB).
- K. Install ground from each piece of equipment to MDF Room and IDF Room to grounding bar via an insulated cable no smaller than 6 AWG stranded copper wire. Power crimp proper grounding lug on cable where connecting to grounding bar.
- L. Label grounding conductors and grounding bus bars in accordance with BICSI guidelines and Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.
- M. Permanently attach equipment and grounding conductors prior to energizing equipment.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Visually inspect from each bus bar to main grounding electrode service location.

- D. Test in accordance with BICSI TDMM Manual, TIA-607 and NFPA 70.
- E. When improper grounding is found during testing, check entire project, perform corrections, and perform retesting.
- F. Installations not conforming to BICSI TDMM Manual, TIA-607 and NFPA 70 shall be subject to manufacturer grounding audit to identify correction requirements. Grounding audit and corrections required shall be at the expense of the contractor performing the improper installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 29
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and attachment requirements and components for equipment, conduit, cable, boxes, and other communications work.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 27 05 33.13 - Conduit for Communications Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for conduits.
- C. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2023.
- C. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2023.
- D. BICSI ITSIMM - Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), 8th Edition; 2022.
- E. BICSI N1 - Installation Practices for Telecommunications and ICT Cabling and Related Cabling Infrastructure, 1st Edition; 2019.
- F. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- G. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. TIA-569 - Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2019e, with Addendum (2022).

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate sizes and arrangement of supports and bases with actual equipment and components to be installed.
 - 2. Coordinate work to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
 - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at installed locations.
 - 4. Coordinate arrangement of supports with ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts.
 - 5. Notify Architect of conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:

1. Do not install products on or provide attachment to concrete surfaces until concrete has cured; see Section 03 30 00.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for cable supports, channel/strut framing systems, and post-installed concrete/masonry anchors.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include details for fabricated hangers and supports where materials or methods other than those indicated are proposed for substitution.
- D. Installer's qualification statement.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications for Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Certified by fastener system manufacturer with current operator's license.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Comply with the following. Where requirements differ, comply with most stringent.
 - a. TIA-569.
 - b. NFPA 70.
 - c. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Provide required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for complete installation of communications work.
 3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended, where applicable.
 4. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
 5. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
 6. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
 7. Steel Components: Use corrosion-resistant materials suitable for environment where installed.
 - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel, stainless steel, or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.

- d. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Conduit Supports: Straps and clamps suitable for conduit to be supported.
 - 1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.
 - 2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Noncontinuous Cable Supports: Suitable for cables to be supported, including but not limited to J-hooks, bridle rings, drive rings, and flexible harnesses/slings.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Panduit; J Pro Cable Support: www.panduit.com/#sle.
 - b. Or Approved Equal.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Applications:
 - a. Do not exceed 5 feet between cable supports.
 - b. Maximum Number of Cables per Cable Support:
 - c. Allowable Cable Types:
 - 1) J-Hooks: Category 5e, Category 6, and Category 6A.
 - 3. J-Hooks: Noncontinuous cabling support with removable top retainer.
 - a. Material: Use galvanized steel, stainless steel, or nylon.
 - b. Provide non-metallic support surfaces with smooth, beveled edges and radius not less than minimum allowable bend radius of cables supported.
 - c. Bundle Capacity: Two inches, minimum.
 - d. Provide multitiered J-hooks where required to support multiple cabling systems.
- D. Cable Ties
 - 1. Reusable and releasable hook-and-loop style ties.
 - a. Width: 0.75 inch, minimum.
 - b. Operating range: -22 to 194 degrees F.
 - c. Color: Black.
 - 2. Zip Ties shall not be permitted.
- E. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers and brackets suitable for boxes to be supported.
- F. Metal Channel/Strut Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated, continuous-slot, metal channel/strut and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field assembly of supports.
 - 2. Comply with MFMA-4.
 - 3. Channel Material:
 - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel.
 - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel.
 - 4. Minimum Channel Thickness: Steel sheet, 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch.
 - 5. Minimum Channel Dimensions: 1-5/8 inch wide by 13/16 inch high.
- G. Hanger Rods: Threaded, zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
 - a. Equipment Supports: 1/2-inch diameter.
 - b. Single Conduit up to 1-inch (27 mm) Trade Size: 1/4-inch diameter.
 - c. Single Conduit Larger than 1-inch (27 mm) Trade Size: 3/8-inch diameter.
 - d. Trapeze Support for Multiple Conduits: 3/8-inch diameter.
 - e. Outlet Boxes: 1/4-inch diameter.
- H. Anchors and Fasteners:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Mechanical Anchors:
 - a. Dewalt: anchors.dewalt.com/#sle.
 - b. Hilti, Inc: www.hilti.com/#sle.
 - c. ITW Red Head, a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc: www.itwredhead.com/#sle.
 - 2. Manufacturers - Powder-Actuated Fastening Systems:
 - a. Dewalt: anchors.dewalt.com/#sle.

- b. Hilti, Inc: www.hilti.com/#sle.
- c. ITW Ramset, a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc: www.ramset.com/#sle.
- 3. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use anchor and fastener types indicated for specified applications.
- 4. Concrete: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
- 5. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
- 6. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
- 7. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
- 8. Steel: Use beam clamps or machine bolts.
- 9. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
- 10. Wood: Use wood screws.
- 11. Powder-actuated fasteners are permitted only as follows:
 - a. Use only threaded studs; do not use pins.
- 12. Hammer-driven anchors and fasteners are not permitted.
- 13. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal channel/strut and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.
 - a. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal channel/strut framing system.
 - b. Comply with MFMA-4.
 - c. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
 - d. Minimum Channel Thickness: Steel sheet, 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch minimum base metal thickness.
- 14. Post-Installed Concrete and Masonry Anchors: Evaluated and recognized by ICC Evaluation Service, LLC (ICC-ES) for compliance with applicable building code.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive support and attachment components.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install hangers and supports in accordance with NECA 1, BICSI ITSIMM, and BICSI N1.
- C. Install anchors and fasteners in accordance with ICC Evaluation Services, LLC (ICC-ES) evaluation report conditions of use where applicable.
- D. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- F. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- G. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- H. Equipment Support and Attachment:
 - 1. Use metal, fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel/strut to support equipment as required.
 - 2. Use metal channel/strut secured to studs to support equipment surface mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.

3. Use metal channel/strut to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide 1 inch minimum space between equipment and mounting surface.
 4. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
 5. Rigidly weld support members or use hexagon-head bolts to present neat appearance with adequate strength and rigidity. Use spring lock washers under all nuts.
 6. Install surface-mounted cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors.
 7. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panelboards recessed in hollow partitions.
- I. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
- J. Secure fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- K. Remove temporary supports.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect support and attachment components for damage and defects.
- C. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective support and attachment components.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 05 33.13
CONDUIT FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Stainless steel intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- B. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic utilities duct.
- C. Inside-plant flexible nonmetallic communications raceway/innerduct.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 27 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems.
- C. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C80.6 - American National Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit; 2025.
- B. ASTM F512 - Standard Specification for Smooth-Wall Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Conduit and Fittings for Underground Installation; 2019 (Reapproved 2024).
- C. BICSI ITSIMM - Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), 8th Edition; 2022.
- D. BICSI N1 - Installation Practices for Telecommunications and ICT Cabling and Related Cabling Infrastructure, 1st Edition; 2019.
- E. BICSI TDMM - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 15th Edition; 2024.
- F. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- G. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- H. NEMA BI 50063 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installations; 2025.
- I. NEMA TC 9 - Fittings for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installation; 2020.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. TIA-569 - Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2019e, with Addendum (2022).
- L. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 1242 - Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate minimum sizes of conduits with actual type and quantity of cables to be installed.
 - 2. Coordinate arrangement of conduits with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts.
 - 3. Verify exact conduit termination locations required for boxes, enclosures, and equipment.
 - 4. Coordinate work to provide roof penetrations that preserve integrity of roofing system and do not void roof warranty.
 - 5. Notify Architect of conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not begin installation of communications cables until installation of conduit between termination points is complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conduits and fittings.
- C. Shop Drawings:
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing for conduits installed underground, conduits embedded within concrete slabs, and conduits 2-inch (53 mm) trade size and larger.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Documents at Project Site: Maintain at project site one copy of manufacturer's instructions and shop drawings.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: Organization recognized by OSHA as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for packaging waste requirements.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conduit and fittings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conduit and associated fittings for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70, TIA-569, BICSI ITSIMM, BICSI TDMM, manufacturers' instructions, and product listing.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use conduit types indicated for specified applications. Where more than one listed application applies, comply with most restrictive requirements. Where conduit type for particular application is not specified, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.

2.2 CONDUIT - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA-569.

- B. Existing Work: Where existing conduits are indicated to be reused, they may be reused only where they comply with specified requirements, are free from corrosion, and integrity is verified by pulling mandrel through them.
- C. Provide conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for complete communications pathway.
- D. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended.
- E. Maximum Number of Communications Outlet Boxes per Continuous Conduit Homerun: Two.
- F. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70, TIA-569, and BICSI TDMM, but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified. Where specified standards differ, comply with most stringent.

2.3 STAINLESS STEEL INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
- B. Fittings:
 - 1. Nonhazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B or UL 1242.
 - 2. Material: Use stainless steel with corrosion resistance equivalent to conduit.
 - 3. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded fittings only. Threadless fittings, including set screw and compression/gland types, are not permitted.
 - 4. Conduit Bodies: Standard conduit bodies designed for electrical raceways are not permitted.

2.4 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) PLASTIC UTILITIES DUCT

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ABB; Carlon: www.electrification.us.abb.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: Rigid polyvinyl chloride plastic utilities duct complying with NEMA BI 50063 and ASTM F512; Type EB-20 listed and labeled as complying with UL 651 suitable for burial with concrete encasement.
- C. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 9.
 - 1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of duct to be connected.

2.5 UNDERGROUND MARKING

- A. Underground markings shall comply with AWWA Uniform Color Code.
- B. Tracer Wire: Continuous 12 AWG, Solid, Copper clad high strength steel, with minimum 30 mil HDPE insulation, orange in color, suitable for direct burial.
- C. Warning Tape:

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install conduit in accordance with NECA 1, BICSI ITSIMM, and BICSI N1.
- C. Conduit Support:

1. Secure and support conduits in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- D. Connections and Terminations:
1. Use suitable adapters where required to transition from one type of conduit to another.
 2. Provide insulating bushings, insulated throats, or listed metal fittings with smooth, rounded edges at conduit terminations to protect cables.
 3. Secure joints and connections to provide mechanical strength and electrical continuity.
- E. Penetrations:
1. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members, including footings and grade beams, without approval of Structural Engineer.
 2. Make penetrations perpendicular to surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Provide sleeves and/or slots for penetrations as indicated or as required to facilitate installation.
 4. Conceal bends for conduit risers emerging above ground.
 5. Where conduits penetrate waterproof membrane, seal as required to maintain integrity of membrane.
 6. Make penetrations for roof-mounted equipment within associated equipment openings and curbs where possible to minimize roofing system penetrations. Where penetrations are necessary, seal as indicated or as required to preserve integrity of roofing system and maintain roof warranty.
 7. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements; see Section 07 84 00.
- F. Conduit Movement Provisions: Where conduits are subject to movement, provide expansion and expansion/deflection fittings to prevent damage to enclosed cables or connected equipment. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits cross structural joints intended for expansion, contraction, or deflection.
 2. Where conduits are subject to earth movement by settlement or frost.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conduits.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of conduits to remove moisture and foreign matter.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation of conduit, use suitable manufactured plugs to provide protection from entry of moisture and foreign material and do not remove until ready for installation of cables.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Labels
- B. Wire markers
- C. Conduit markers

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
- B. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.
- C. Section 27 11 16 - Communications Cabinets, Racks, Enclosures, & Accessories.
- D. Section 27 15 23 - Communications Optical Fiber Cabling.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. TIA-606 - Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure; 2021d.
- B. TIA-606-B - Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure; Rev B, 2012 (with Addenda; 2015).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard product data sheet, including part number and description for each product
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit labeling plan for review and approval prior to commencing labeling.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

- A. Panduit: www.panduit.com.
- B. Or approved equal.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for substitution procedures.

2.2 LABELS AND WIRE MARKERS

- A. Comply with the requirements of TIA-606 and TIA-606-B standards.
- B. Thermal transfer, laser, or inkjet type.
- C. Lettering: Black on white background.

- ### 2.3 CONDUIT AND RACEWAY MARKERS

- ## PART 3 EXECUTION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials.
- B. Follow manufacturer's requirements for preparation.
- C. Install identifying devices after completion of any painting.

- A. Follow manufacturer's requirements for installation.
- B. Mark data cabling within 2 inches from each end. Install additional marking at accessible locations along the cable run.
- C. All labels shall be installed such that they will be visible following installation.
 - 1. Install parallel to cables or equipment lines.
- D. Contractor shall install identification on all of the following:
 - 1. Copper Horizontal Cabling at each end.
 - 2. Data Outlets and connectors at each end.
 - 3. Copper Patch Panels.
 - 4. Fiber Cabling at each end.
 - 5. Fiber connectors at each end.
 - 6. Fiber Patch Panels.
 - 7. Communications Grounding Busbars.
 - 8. Communications Grounding and Bonding Conductors.
 - 9. Security Cameras.
 - 10. Wireless Access Points.
 - 11. Speaker Cabling.
- E. All labeling nomenclature shall comply with TIA-606-B cable labeling standards and as further outlined below:
 - 1. Data Outlets (any faceplate or surface mount box containing cat-6 data jacks)
 - a. Data outlet labels to indicate TR-RK-PP-PRT where:
 - 1) TR = 2-digit number of Telecommunications Room
 - 2) RK = 2-digit number of Rack
 - 3) PP = 2-digit number of Patch-Panel
 - 4) PRT = 2-digit number port designation of patch-panel

- b. Data Outlets serving security cameras and wireless access points shall follow the same protocol outlined above.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 10 05
COMMUNICATIONS COPPER CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Communications system design requirements.
- B. Communications pathways.
- C. Copper communications cable and terminations.
- D. Copper Communications cable and interconnecting devices.
- E. Communications equipment room fittings.
- F. Communications outlets.
- G. Communications grounding and bonding.
- H. Communications identification.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 27 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems.
- D. Section 27 05 33.13 - Conduit for Communications Systems.
- E. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
- F. Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.
- G. Section 27 15 55 - Communications Cable Testing.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. BICSI N1 - Installation Practices for Telecommunications and ICT Cabling and Related Cabling Infrastructure, 1st Edition; 2019.
- B. EIA/ECA-310 - Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment; 2005e.
- C. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide; Current Edition.
- D. ICEA S-90-661 - Category 3 and 5E Individually Unshielded Twisted Pairs, Indoor Cables (With or Without an Overall Shield) for Use in General Purpose and LAN Communication Wiring Systems; 2021.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. NFPA 262 - Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air Handling Spaces.
- G. TIA-568 (SET) - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Set; 2024.

- H. TIA-569 - Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2019e, with Addendum (2022).
- I. TIA-606 - Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure; 2021d.
- J. TIA-607 - Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises; 2024e.
- K. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; Current Edition.
- L. UL 444 - Communications Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 1863 - Communications-Circuit Accessories; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate requirements for service entrance and entrance facilities with Communications Service Provider.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of other utilities or obstructions within the spaces dedicated for communications equipment.
 - 3. Coordinate arrangement of communications equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages, specifications and data sheets for each product incorporated into the Work.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show compliance with requirements on isometric schematic diagram of network layout, showing cable routings, telecommunication closets, rack and enclosure layouts and locations, service entrance, and grounding, prepared and approved by BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
- D. Evidence of qualifications for installer.
- E. Installer certification from the cable manufacturer MUST be submitted as part of the bid de-scoping process. The Certified Installer certificate cannot be site specific to this project and must be pre-existing for 12 months prior to the bid due date.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and operation of product.
- G. Test Plan: Complete and detailed plan, with list of test equipment, procedures for inspection and testing, and intended test date; submit at least 60 days prior to intended test date.
- H. Field Test Reports.
- I. Project Record Documents: Prepared and approved by BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
 - 1. Record actual locations of outlet boxes and distribution frames.
 - 2. Show as-installed color coding, pair assignment, polarization, and cross-connect layout.
 - 3. Identify distribution frames and equipment rooms by room number on drawings.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Data: List of all components with part numbers, sources of supply, and operation and maintenance instructions; include copy of project record documents.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: At least 3 years experience manufacturing products of the type specified.
- C. All work shall be provided in a neat and workmanlike manner. All methods of construction that are not specifically described or indicated in the contract documents, shall be provided in accordance with industry standards and shall be subject to the control and approval of the Owner's representative.
- D. Equipment and materials shall be of the quality and manufactures indicated. The equipment specified is based on the acceptable manufacturers listed. Where "approved equal" is stated, equipment shall be equivalent in every way to that of the equipment specified, and subject to the approval of the Engineer.
- E. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Company specializing in installing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience, and with service facilities within 120 miles of project. The contractor must be approved by the manufacturer for cabling solutions – a qualified BICSI trained installer who also is certified to install the solution able to be warranted by the Manufacturer.
 - 2. The contractor is responsible for workmanship and installation practices in accordance with the Manufacturer's Certified Program. Contractor Project Manager on site must be manufacturer certified in the copper information transport systems to be installed. At least 30 percent of the installation and termination crew must be certified by Manufacturer with a Technicians Level of Training.
 - 3. Manufacturer accepted installer qualifications based on the following:
 - a. Panduit Corp.
 - 1) Panduit Certified Installer (PCI)
 - 2) Panduit Certified Technician (PCT)
 - b. Belden Partner Alliance Program
 - c. Legrand Ortronics
 - 1) Ortronics Certified Installer (CI)
 - 2) Ortronics Certified Technician (CIT)
- F. Contractor must have 3 years experience in the installation and testing of the type of system specified, and:
 - 1. Employing a BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
 - 2. All Supervisors and a minimum of 30% of installers factory certified by manufacturers of products to be installed.
 - 3. Employing BICSI Registered Cabling Installation Technicians (RCIT) for supervision of all work.
 - 4. Provide evidence from at least two projects that have been in use for at least 18 months; submit project name, address, and written certification by user.
 - 5. Field technicians shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of the type of system specified.
- G. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- H. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Keep stored products clean and dry.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

- B. Correct defective Work within a one year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer shall provide a complete Cable Products Static, Dynamic, and Applications Warranty for a period of 20 years for high performance cabling systems that meet application requirements. The warranty shall include all cable installed in the structured cabling system.
- D. Warranty shall be written in the name of the Owner, and include the following:
 - 1. Identification of the Manufacturer's Certified Installer.
 - 2. That the Installer has completed the Manufacturer's Certification Program.
 - 3. That the Installer has fulfilled all the requirements of the Manufacturer's Certified Program.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CATEGORY 6A HORIZONTAL CABLE (PLENUM RATED)

- A. Product Description: Category 6A, 100-ohm, plenum rated cable, 23 AWG copper conductors twisted in 4 pairs and separated by a cross-divider. The cable shall be compliant with IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at POE applications. The cable shall be capable of 10GBase-T Ethernet.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Panduit CAT-6A Cable Model - PUP6AV04BU-G
 - 2. Belden CAT-6A Cable Model - 10GXS13D15A1000
 - 3. Berk-Tek CAT-6A Cable Model - 11082057
 - 4. Superior Essex CAT-6A Cable Model - 6S-220-2P
 - 5. General Cable CAT-6A Cable Model - 7151839
- C. Color:
 - 1. General Use Data White
 - 2. Wireless Access Points White
 - 3. Security Cameras White
 - 4. BAS White

2.2 CATEGORY 6A DATA JACKS

- A. Product Description: Augmented Category 6, 8-position, 8-wire universal module. Contacts plated with 50 micro inches of gold. Compatible with Mini-Com Modular Patch Panels, Faceplates, and Surface Mount Boxes. Terminates 4 pair 22-26 AWG, 100 ohm cable and shall not require the use of a punch down tool. Wiring Scheme: T568B
 - 1. Shuttered CAT6A Jacks to be used for all above ceiling applications unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. Corrosive Resistant Jacks to be used in harsh/humid environments.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. CAT6A - Panduit Mini-Com TX6 10Gig Jack Model CJ6X88TG
 - 2. CAT6A - Panduit Mini-Com TX6 10Gig Shuttered Jack Model CJH6X88TG
 - 3. CAT6A - Belden CAT 6A REVConnect CAT6A Jack Bulk Model RVAMJKU
 - 4. CAT6A - Ortronics Clarity HDJ6A Jack Model OR-HDJ6A
- C. Color:
 - 1. General Use Data White
 - 2. Wireless Access Points Blue
 - 3. Security Cameras Orange
 - 4. BAS

2.3 CATEGORY 6A PATCH CABLES

- A. Product Description: Category 6A, 28 AWG, 10 Gb/s UTP patch cord with TX6A 10Gig Modular Plugs on each end.

- B. Manufacturers:
1. Panduit Patch Cables (for Data Room End - 1 Per Data drop) Model UTP28X[X]**
 2. Panduit Patch Cables (for Device End - 1 Per Data drop) Model UTP28X[X]**
 3. Panduit 36" Patch Cables (for Surge Protection Device - 1 Per Data drop requiring surge protection) Model UTP6A3
 4. Belden Patch Cables (for Data Room End - 1 Per Data drop) Small Diameter Patch Cords (where xxx equals footage length) Model CAD11006xxx
 5. Belden Patch Cables (for Device End - 1 Per Data drop) Small Diameter Patch Cords (where xxx equals footage length) Model CAD11006xxx
 6. Belden Patch Cables (for Surge Protection Device - 1 Per Data drop requiring surge protection) Small Diameter Patch Cords (where xxx equals footage length) Model CAD11006004
 7. Ortronics Patch Cables (for Data Room End - 1 Per Data drop) Model OR-MC6A[xx]-06
 8. Ortronics Patch Cables (for Device End - 1 Per Data drop) Model OR-MC6A[xx]-06
 9. Ortronics 36" Patch Cables (for Surge Protection Device - 1 Per Data drop requiring surge protection) Model OR-MC6A03-03
- C. Lengths:
1. Data room end Locations with Data Cabinets 3 foot ([x] = 3)
 2. Data room end Locations with Data Racks 6 foot ([x] = 6)
 3. Wireless access point device location 6 foot ([x] = 6)
 4. Security Camera device location 6 foot ([x] = 6)
 5. General Data outlet location 10 foot ([x] = 10)
- D. Color:
1. General Use Data White
 2. Wireless Access Points Blue
 3. Security Cameras Orange
 4. BAS
- E. Additional Installation notes:
1. Contractor to establish proper wire management for patch cables from patch panels to switches. "Spider Webbing" with patch cables will not be accepted.
 2. Patch cables shall not be shorter than 36".

2.4 DATA FACEPLATES

- A. Product Description: Single gang vertical faceplate accepts two to six Mini-Com® Modules, includes label pockets.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Panduit Mini-Com Classic Series
 - a. Two Module Model CFPSL2S
 - b. Four Module Model CFPSL4S
 - c. Six Module Model CFPL6SY
 - d. Provide Blank Modules for all unused module spaces. Model CMBIG-X

2.5 DATA OUTLET BOXES

- A. Product Description: Shuttered surface mount box accepts up to two Modules.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Panduit Mini-Com Shuttered Surface Mount Box Model CBX2IW-AY
 - a. For all above ceiling terminations and/or outlet locations.
- C. Mounting:
1. Panduit magnets to mount Surface Mount Boxes to structural steel or other permanent metal surface where possible. Model CBM-X

2. Hook and Loop Cable ties may be used to mount Surface Mount Boxes where magnets cannot be used.
3. Wall anchors may be used where the Surface Mount Box is located in an exposed area (such as gymnasium) AND there is no possible asbestos material.

2.6 DATA PATCH PANELS

- A. Product Description: TIA/EIA 568, rack-mounted assembly of terminals and accessory patch cords, with adequate capacity for active and spare circuits. 1RU. For all unused positions provide blank module.
- B. Manufacturers:
 1. Panduit Mini-Com 48 Port HD Blank Patch Panel Model CPA48HDBL
 - a. Provide with each Patch Panel:
 - b. Strain Relief Bar Model SRB19BLY
 - 1) Panduit quick release brackets for SRB Model SRBBRKT
 2. Belden Modular Patch Panel Empty 48 port 1U Model AX103121
 - a. Belden strain relief bar is included with the patch panel.
 3. Ortronics Clarity HDJ 48 Port Patch Panel Model OR-PHAHJU48
 - a. Ortronics strain relief bar is included with the patch panel.
- C. Patch panel to be mounted at a minimum of 4 points.

2.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions Allowed: None
- B. Contractor shall be responsible and assume all costs for removal and replacement of any substituted product installed without prior written approval. Such costs shall include, but not be limited to labor, materials as well as any penalties, fees or costs incurred for late completion.

2.8 SYSTEM DESIGN

- A. Provide a complete permanent end to end system of cabling and pathways for data communications, including but not limited to cables, conduits and wireways, pull wires, support structures, support devices, racks and cabinets, outlets, patch panels, and patch cables.
 1. Comply with TIA-568 (SET) (cabling) and TIA-569 (pathways) (commercial standards).
 2. Provide fixed cables and pathways that comply with NFPA 70 and TIA-607 and are UL listed or third party independent testing laboratory certified.
 3. Provide connection devices that are rated for operation under conditions of 32 to 140 degrees F at relative humidity of 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
 4. In this project, the term plenum is defined as return air spaces above ceilings, inside ducts, under raised floors, and other air-handling spaces.
- B. Main Distribution Frame (MDF): Centrally located support structure for terminating horizontal cables that extend to telecommunications outlets, functioning as point of presence to external service provider.
 1. Locate main distribution frame as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Intermediate Distribution Frames (IDF): Support structures for terminating horizontal cables that extend to telecommunications outlets.
 1. Locate intermediate distribution frames as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Cabling to Outlets: Specified horizontal cabling, wired in star topology to distribution frame located at center hub of star; also referred to as "links".

2.9 GROUNDING AND BONDING COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with TIA-607.

- B. Comply with Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems .

2.10 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA-606.
- B. Comply with 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Factory test cables according to TIA-568 (SET).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Comply with latest editions and addenda of TIA-568 (SET) (cabling), TIA-569 (pathways), TIA-607 (grounding and bonding), BICSI N1, NFPA 70, and SYSTEM DESIGN as specified in PART 2.
- B. All Networks shall be installed per applicable standards and manufacturer's requirements.
- C. Comply with Communication Service Provider requirements.
- D. Grounding and Bonding: Perform in accordance with TIA-607 and NFPA 70.
- E. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- F. Contractor must remove all abandoned cable per Article 800 of the National Electrical Code and per TIA and BICSI standards, recycling these materials where possible. Removal of orphaned cable is mandatory. Contractors must consider this when placing bids.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with 27 05 28 - Pathways For Communications Systems
- B. Outlet Boxes:
 - 1. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of telecommunications outlets provided under this section.
 - a. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1) Telephone and Data Outlets: 18 inches above finished floor.
 - 2) Telephone Outlets for Side-Reach Wall-Mounted Telephones: 48 inches above finished floor to top of telephone.
 - 3) Telephone Outlets for Forward-Reach Wall-Mounted Telephones: 48 inches above finished floor to top of telephone.
 - b. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Provide minimum of 24 inches horizontal separation between flush mounted outlet boxes installed on opposite sides of fire rated walls.
 - d. Unless otherwise indicated, provide separate outlet boxes for line voltage and low voltage devices.
 - e. Locate outlet boxes so that wall plate does not span different building finishes.
 - f. Locate outlet boxes so that wall plate does not cross masonry joints.
 - g. Outlet boxes shall be secured to building with mechanical fasteners. Adhesive fasteners are not allowed.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND CABLING

COMMUNICATIONS COPPER CABLING

- A. Copper Cabling:
1. Use only type CMP plenum-rated cable, do not install below 32°F. If cable is stored below 32°F allow the cable to condition to room temperature 68°F as close to room temperature +/- 10°F 48 hours prior to installation.
 2. Horizontal distribution cables shall be bundled in groups of no more than manufacturers recommendations. Cable bundle quantities in excess of manufacturers recommendations may cause deformation of the bottom cables within the bundle and degrade cable performance.
 3. Maintain cable geometry; do not untwist more than .125 inch from point of termination.
 4. Any cable installed by the contractor exceeding 90 meters (295 feet) long must be replaced and routed to reduce length to 90 meters or less. Complete all cable re-routing at no additional cost to the Owner. Identify in writing to Architect/Engineer prior to installation of any cables that cannot be reduced to 90 meters or less in length.
 5. Do not bend cable at radius less than manufacturer's recommended bend radius; for unshielded twisted pair use bend radius of not less than 4 times cable diameter.
 6. Do not pre pull cable out of box / reel prior to installing.
 7. Do not over-cinch or crush cables.
 8. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended cable pull tension.
 9. When installing in conduit, use only lubricants approved by cable manufacturer and do not chafe or damage outer jacket.
 10. Protect from paint and other damaging contaminants. (any painted / contaminated cables shall be replaced at contractor's expense).
 11. Leave sufficient slack in the ceiling to reach any telecommunications outlet/connector within room.
 12. Cable shall be installed above fire-sprinkler systems and shall not be attached to the system or any ancillary equipment or hardware. The cable system and support hardware shall be installed so that it does not obscure any valves, fire alarm conduit, boxes, or other control devices.
 13. Where cables are housed in conduits, the backbone and horizontal cables shall be installed in separate conduits
 14. Cables shall not be attached to ceiling grid or lighting fixture wires. Where support for horizontal cable is required, the contractor shall install appropriate carriers to support the cabling.
 15. Install category 6,6A cable in a separate open cable hanger segment. Do not install with coaxial, optical fiber cable or any other cable type.
 16. If cables have more than 12" of sag, install more hangers.
 17. Cables shall be installed in continuous lengths from origin to destination (no splices) except for transition points, or consolidation points.
 18. Cable shall have no physical defects such as cuts, tears or bulges in the outer jacket. Cables with defects shall be replaced.
 19. The Contractor shall be responsible for replacing all cables that do not pass required bandwidth and throughput tests.
- B. Service Loops (Slack or Excess Length): Provide the following minimum extra length of cable, looped neatly:
1. Cabinet / Rack end: 10 feet
 2. Outlet end: 10 feet
 - a. At Distribution Frames: 10 feet.
 - b. At Outlets - Copper: 12 inches.
- C. Identification:
1. Use mechanically generated wire and cable markers to identify cables at each end.
 2. Use manufacturer-furnished label inserts, identification labels, or engraved wallplate to identify each jack at communications outlets with unique identifier.
 3. Use identification nameplate to identify cross-connection equipment, equipment racks, and cabinets.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

- B. Comply with inspection and testing requirements of specified installation standards.
- C. Visual Inspection:
 - 1. Inspect cable jackets for certification markings.
 - 2. Inspect cable terminations for color coded labels of proper type.
 - 3. Inspect outlet plates and patch panels for complete labels.
- D. Testing per 27 15 55 - Communications Cable Testing
- E. Labeling per 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems
- F. Inspect patch cords for complete labels.
- G. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- H. Final Testing: After all work is complete, including installation of telecommunications outlets, and telephone dial tone service is active, test each voice jack for dial tone.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Provide manufacturer warranty documentation, ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name, and registered with the manufacturer.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations and sizes of pathways, outlets, and jacks.
 - 1. Field Test Reports, one hard copy, one PDF copy and one software based copy (ex.: .FLW).

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 11 16
COMMUNICATIONS CABINETS, RACKS, ENCLOSURES, & ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Communication Racks.
- B. Wire Management.
- C. Uninterruptible Power Supplies.
- D. Power Distribution Units.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
- B. Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 2. Installation methods.
- C. Manufacturer Qualification Statement.
- D. Installers Qualification Statement.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: At least 5 years experience manufacturing products of the type specified.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A company having at least 3 years experience in the installation and testing of the type of system specified, and:
 - 1. Supervisors and installers factory certified by manufacturers of products to be installed.
 - 2. Employing BICSI Registered Cabling Installation Technicians (RCIT) for all work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Keep stored products clean and dry.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a 2 year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All cabinet, racks, panels, and associated equipment shall comply with EIA/ECA-310 and TIA-606 standards.
- B. All cabinet, racks, panels, and associated equipment shall be properly grounded and bonded. See Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems for related equipment and requirements.

2.2 COMMUNICATION RACKS:

- A. 4 Post Racks:
 - 1. 4 Post Cable Management Rack System
 - a. Panduit 19" EIA rack, 30" D, steel (7') Model R4PCN
 - b. Panduit Rack Anchor Kit Model RFAKIT

2.3 WIRE MANAGEMENT

- A. Vertical Wire Managers:
 - 1. Panduit 7' Double Sided Vertical Cable Manager
 - a. 8 inch wide with doors Model PR2VD08
- B. Horizontal Wire Managers:
 - 1. Panduit 2U Horizontal Wire Management Model NMF2

2.4 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLIES

- A. LIEBERT GXT4 UPS, 500VA-3000VA, 120V
 - 1. Liebert GXT4 UPS, 2,000VA

2.5 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS (PDU'S)

- A. Vertical PDU (Include all of the following for each IDF/MDF rack location)
 - 1. Panduit SmartZone G5 Monitored Input Rack PDU
 - a. Model: P16D21M
 - 1) Features:
 - (a) 20A Single Phase.
 - (b) 120V.
 - (c) (16) 5-20R receptacles.
 - (d) NEMA 5-20P plug.
 - 2. Panduit SmartZone G5 Sensor Hub
 - a. Model: EF001
 - 1) Features:
 - (a) 4-Port hub for 3 additional sensor ports.
 - 3. Panduit SmartZone G5 Three Temperature and Humidity Sensor
 - a. Model: EC001
 - 4. Panduit SmartZone G5 Water Rope Sensor
 - a. Model: ED001

2.6 SYSTEM DESIGN

- A. Provide a complete permanent system of cabling and pathways for voice and data communications, including cables, conduits and wireways, pull wires, support structures, enclosures and cabinets, and outlets.
 - 1. Provide connection devices that are rated for operation under conditions of 32 to 140 degrees F at relative humidity of 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
 - 2. In this project, the term plenum is defined as return air spaces above ceilings, inside ducts, under raised floors, and other air-handling spaces.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Comply with latest editions and addenda of TIA-568 (SET), TIA-569, NECA/BICSI 607, NFPA 70, and SYSTEM DESIGN as specified in PART 2.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Wall-Mounted Racks and Enclosures:
 - 1. Install to plywood backboards only, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Floor-Mounted Racks and Enclosures: Permanently anchor to floor in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Comply with inspection and testing requirements of specified installation standards.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 15 23
COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. System Design
- B. Campus Fiber Optic Backbone Cabling
- C. Rack Mounted Housings
- D. Wall Mounted Housings
- E. Pig Tail Cassettes
- F. Fiber Optic Patch Cables

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. EIA/ECA-310 - Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment; 2005e.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. TIA/EIA-568 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard. (consists of 3 Parts, listed below); Rev C, 2012, and latest addenda.
- D. TIA-455-21 - FOTP-21 - Mating Durability of Fiber Optic Interconnecting Devices; 1988a (Reaffirmed 2012).
- E. TIA-492AAAB-A - Detail Specification for 50-um Core Diameter/125-um Cladding Diameter Class Ia Graded-Index Multimode Optical Fibers; 2009a.
- F. TIA-492CAAA - Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers; 1998 (Reaffirmed 2002).
- G. TIA-526-14 - Optical Power Loss Measurement of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant; IEC 61280-4.1 Edition 3.1, Fiber Optic Communications Subsystem Test Procedures- Part 4-1: Installed Cable Plant- Multimode Attenuation Measurement; 2023d.
- H. TIA-526-7 - Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant, Adoption of IEC 61280-4-2 Edition 2: Fibre-Optic Communications Subsystem Test Procedures – Part 4-2: Installed Cable Plant – Single-Mode Attenuation and Optical Return Loss Measurement; 2015a (Reaffirmed 2022).
- I. TIA-568.1 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard; 2020e.
- J. TIA-568.3 - Optical Fiber Cabling and Components Standard; 2022e.
- K. TIA-569 - Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2019e, with Addendum (2022).
- L. TIA-606 - Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure; 2021d.
- M. TIA-607 - Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises; 2024e.
- N. UL 1863 - Communications-Circuit Accessories; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 444 - Communications Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate requirements for service entrance and entrance facilities with Communications Service Provider.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of other utilities or obstructions within the spaces dedicated for communications equipment.
 - 3. Coordinate arrangement of communications equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
 - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work of this section to review service requirements and details with Communications Service Provider representative.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used. The exact part numbers, colors and counts that are intended to be used shall be marked clearly on the submittal or it will be marked Revise and Re-Submit.
- C. Installer certification from the cable manufacturer MUST be submitted as part of the bid de-scoping process. The Certified Installer certificate cannot be site specific to this project and must be pre-existing for 12 months prior to the bid due date.
- D. Test Plan: Complete and detailed plan, with list of test equipment, procedures for inspection and testing, and intended test date; submit at least 60 days prior to intended test date.
- E. Shop Drawings: Show compliance with requirements on isometric schematic diagram of network layout, showing cable routings, telecommunication closets, rack and enclosure layouts and locations, service entrance, and grounding, prepared and approved by BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
- F. Field Test Reports must be submitted bi-weekly to the construction manager that updates the status of each fiber optic cable installation, termination, testing and warranty.
- G. Project Record Documents shall be submitted at the conclusion of the project with the following information..
 - 1. Record actual locations of cable routing, IDF locations, enclosures and panels.
 - 2. Show as-installed color coding, pair assignment, polarization, and cross-connect layout.
 - 3. Fiber Test Results
 - 4. Warranty Information
 - 5. Operations & Maintenance Data
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data: List of all components with part numbers, sources of supply, and operation and maintenance instructions; include copy of project record documents.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: At least 3 years experience manufacturing products of the type specified.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A company having at least 3 years experience in the installation and testing of the type of system specified, and:
 - 1. Supervisors and installers factory certified by manufacturers of products to be installed.
 - 2. Employing experienced technicians for all work; show at least 3 years experience in the installation of the type of system specified, with evidence from at least 2 projects that have been in use for at least 18 months; submit project name, address, and written certification by user.

- C. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- D. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and shown.
- E. All work shall be provided in a neat and workmanlike manner. All methods of construction that are not specifically described or indicated in the contract documents, shall be provided in accordance with industry standards and shall be subject to the control and approval of the Owners representative.
 - 1. Any violations of applicable standards or codes committed by the Contractor shall be remedied at the Contractor's expense.
- F. Equipment and materials shall be of the quality and manufactures indicated. The equipment specified is based on the acceptable manufacturers listed. Where "approved equal" is stated, equipment shall be equivalent in every way to that of the equipment specified, and subject to the approval of the Engineer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Keep stored products clean and dry.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a 2 year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. System Warranty
 - 1. A Certification / System Warranty shall provide a complete system warranty to guarantee end-to-end high performance cabling systems that meet application requirements. The guarantee shall include all fiber optic connectivity components. The system shall be warranted for a period of a minimum of 20 years.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESIGN

- A. Provide a complete permanent fiber optic communication cabling system including cables, connectors, housings and support structures. The basis of design is 10GBase-T for all fiber optic links with additional 40GBase-T & 100GBase-T requirements for Single-Mode Fiber Optic LAN applications.
 - 1. Campus Backbone Cabling - Interconnection between campus buildings using OS2 fiber optic cabling.
 - 2. LAN Backbone Cabling - Interconnection between MDF & Multiple IDFs throughout the building using OS2 fiber optic cabling.
 - 3. Service Entrance Fiber Optic Cabling
 - 4. Field Device Fiber Optic Cabling
- B. Main Distribution Frame (MDF): Centrally located support structure for terminating backbone cables, functioning as point of presence to external service provider.
 - 1. For the entire campus there is one main Network Operations Center (NOC) and for each building there is a main distribution frame (MDF) that functions as the central frame for that building. Locate main distribution frame as indicated on the drawings.
 - 2. Capacity: As required to terminate all cables required by design criteria plus minimum 25 percent spare space.

- C. Intermediate Distribution Frames (IDF): Support structures for terminating horizontal cables that extend to telecommunications outlets. Locate intermediate distribution frames as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Backbone Cabling: Cabling, pathways, and terminal hardware connecting intermediate distribution frames (IDF's) with main distribution frame (MDF), wired in star topology with main distribution frame at center hub of star.
- E. Fiber optic cabling not to exceed the max distance listed below to support 10 Gigabit transmission (including all patch cables).

Fiber Optic Type	Max Distance (Feet)	Max Distance (Meters)
OS2 Singlemode	32,808	10,000

2.2 CAMPUS BACKBONE SINGLE MODE COMMUNICATIONS CABLING (INDOOR/OUTDOOR)

- A. Description: Fiber Optic (nonmetallic, Plenum Rated, flame-retardant, UV-resistant, 900 µm buffered fibers) indoor/outdoor single mode cable designed for aerial, duct and direct-buried applications with no need for a transition splice when entering the building. Shall be installed between the MDF's of the buildings identified on the drawings.
- B. Manufacturer: Corning: www.corning.com
 - 1. Corning FREEDM One **OS2** 12-Strand Model: 012E8P-31131-29
 - 2. Corning FREEDM One **OS2** 24-Strand Model: 024E8P-31131-29

2.3 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. This is a performance-based solution. Substitutions must follow the same rigid standards for quality and termination style as those described above.
- C. ANY CONTRACTOR WISHING TO OFFER FIBER OPTIC CABLING PRODUCTS OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN SHALL SUBMIT A REQUEST FOR PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION IN WRITING NO LESS THAN ONE WEEK IN ADVANCE OF BID. WRITTEN REQUESTS FOR SUBSTITUTION SHALL BE ACCOMPANIED BY ALL DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATION SHEETS AND ENGINEERING DOCUMENTS, AS WELL AS THIRD PARTY LABORATORY PERFORMANCE TEST RESULTS PROVING EQUIVALENCY IN PERFORMANCE AND MANUFACTURING STYLE.
- D. This written documentation shall be accompanied by samples of the substitution product offered for evaluation. Equal product acceptance must be received in writing.
- E. Contractor shall be responsible and assume all costs for removal and replacement of any substituted product installed without prior written approval. Such costs shall include, but not be limited to labor, materials as well as any penalties, fees or costs incurred for late completion.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Comply with latest editions and addenda of TIA/EIA-568, TIA/EIA-569, ANSI/J-STD-607, NFPA 70, and SYSTEM DESIGN as specified in PART 2.
- B. Comply with TIA-570, latest edition.
- C. Provide fixed cables and pathways that comply with NFPA 70 and ANSI/J-STD-607 and are UL listed or third party independent testing laboratory certified.
- D. Provide connection devices that are rated for operation under conditions of 32 to 140 degrees F at relative humidity of 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.

COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER CABLING

- E. Cabling terminations to follow industry standard color code as follows:
 - 1. Blue
 - 2. Orange
 - 3. Green
 - 4. Brown
 - 5. Slate
 - 6. White
 - 7. Red
 - 8. Black
 - 9. Yellow
 - 10. Violet
 - 11. Rose
 - 12. Aqua
 - 13. Fiber 13 to 24: Repeated, but with a black tracer added (except for black, which has a white tracer).
- F. Contractor must remove all abandoned cable per Article 800 of the National Electrical Code and per TIA and BICSI standards, recycling these materials where possible. Removal of orphaned cable is mandatory. Contractors must consider this when placing bids.

3.2 PATHWAYS

- A. Install with the following minimum clearances:
 - 1. 48 inches from motors, generators, frequency converters, transformers, x-ray equipment, and uninterruptible power systems.
 - 2. 12 inches from power conduits and cables and panelboards.
 - 3. 5 inches from fluorescent and high frequency lighting fixtures.
 - 4. 6 inches from flues, hot water pipes, and steam pipes.
- B. Conduit:
 - 1. Do not install more than 2 (two) 90 degree bends in a single horizontal cable run.
 - 2. Leave pull cords in place where cables are not initially installed.
 - 3. Conceal conduit under floor slabs and within finished walls, ceilings, and floors except where specifically indicated to be exposed.
 - a. Conduit may remain exposed to view in mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, and telecommunications rooms.
 - b. Treat conduit in crawl spaces and under floor slabs as if exposed to view.
 - c. Where exposed to view, install parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members.
 - d. Under floor slabs, locate conduit at 12 inches, minimum, below vapor retarder; seal penetrations of vapor retarder around conduit.
- C. Grounding and Bonding: Perform in accordance with ANSI/J-STD-607 and NFPA 70.
 - 1. Conform to requirements as specified in 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
 - 2. Where metallically shielded cables are used, grounding and bonding shall be accomplished by methods prescribed by the Engineer.
- D. Firestopping: Seal openings around pathway penetrations through fire-rated walls, partitions, floors, and ceilings in accordance with Section 07 84 00.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLING

- A. Service Loops (Slack or Excess Length): Provide the following minimum extra length of cable, looped neatly:
 - 1. At Distribution Frames: 120 inches.
- B. Fiber Optic Cabling:

1. Prepare for pulling by cutting outer jacket for 10 inches from end, leaving strength members exposed. Twist strength members together and attach to pulling eye.
 2. Support vertical cable at intervals as recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Cable shall have no physical defects such as cuts, tears or bulges in the outer jacket. Cables with defects shall be replaced.
 4. The Contractor shall be responsible for replacing all cables that do not pass required bandwidth and throughput tests.
 - 5.
- C. Field-Installed Labels: Comply with TIA/EIA-606 using encoded identifiers.
1. Comply with requirements of 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.
 2. Cables: Install color coded labels on both ends.
 3. Patch Panels: Label each jack as to its type and function, with a unique numerical identifier.
 4. Patch Cords: Label with jack identifier corresponding to initial installation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Comply with inspection and testing requirements as specified in Section 27 15 55.
- B. Visual Inspection:
1. Inspect cable jackets for certification markings.
 2. Inspect cable terminations for color coded labels of proper type.
 3. Inspect outlet plates and patch panels for complete labels.
 4. Inspect patch cords for complete labels.
- C. Final Testing: After all work is complete, including installation of telecommunications outlets, and telephone dial tone service is active, test each voice jack for dial tone.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for closeout procedures.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations and sizes of pathways, outlets, and jacks.
1. Field Test Reports, one hard copy, one PDF copy and one software based copy (ex.: .FLW).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 15 55
COMMUNICATIONS CABLE TESTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Provide all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and field-test instruments required for the complete testing, identification and administration of the work called for in the Contract Documents.
- B. To conform to the overall project schedule, the cabling contractor shall survey the work areas and coordinate cabling testing with other applicable trades.
- C. In addition to the tests detailed in this document, the contractor shall notify the Owner or the Owner's representative of any additional tests that are deemed necessary to guarantee a fully functional system. The contractor shall carry out and record any additional measurement results at no additional charge.
- D. Minimum requirements for the test certification, identification and administration of backbone and horizontal optical fiber cabling.
 - 1. Category 6 Copper Cabling.
 - 2. Multimode Fiber Cabling.
 - 3. Single-Mode Fiber Cabling.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling
- B. Section 27 15 23 - Communications Optical Fiber Cabling

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. TIA-455-21 - FOTP-21 - Mating Durability of Fiber Optic Interconnecting Devices; 2012.
- B. TIA-492AAAA-B - Detail Specification for 62.5-um Core Diameter/125-um Cladding Diameter Class Ia Graded-Index Multimode Optical Fibers; 2009.
- C. TIA-492AAAB-A - Detail Specification for 50-um Core Diameter/125-um Cladding Diameter Class Ia Graded-Index Multimode Optical Fibers; 2009.
- D. TIA-492CAAA - Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers; 1998 (R 2002).
- E. TIA/EIA-568-C.1 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 1: General Requirements; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-7.
- F. TIA/EIA-568-C.2 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 2: Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-11.
- G. TIA/EIA-568-C.3 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard, and Addendum 1 - Additional Transmission Performance Specifications for 50/125 um Optical Fiber Cables
- H. ANSI/TIA/EIA 455 61A, Measurement of Fiber or Cable Attenuation Using an OTDR.
- I. ANSI/TIA/EIA-455-59A, Measurement of Fiber Point Discontinuities Using an OTDR.
- J. ANSI/TIA/EIA 455 60A, Measurement of Fiber or Cable Length Using an OTDR.

- K. ANSI Z136.2, ANS for Safe Use Of Optical Fiber Communication Systems Utilizing Laser Diode And LED Sources.
- L. ANSI/TIA/EIA 526 7, Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Singlemode Fiber Cable Plant.
- M. ANSI/EIA/TIA 455 50B, Light Launch Conditions For Long-Length Graded-Index Optical Fiber Spectral Attenuation Measurements
- N. ANSI/TIA 526 14 B, Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant; IEC 61280-4-1 edition 2, Fiber Optic Communications Subsystem Test Procedure- Part 4-1: Installed cable plant- Multimode attenuation measurement.
- O. TIA/EIA-606 - Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure; Rev B, 2012.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers catalog sheets and specifications for fiber optic and copper field-test instruments.
- B. Sample test reports.
- C. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer / Tester Qualifications:
 - 1. Trained technicians who have successfully attended an appropriate training program and have obtained a certificate as proof thereof shall execute the tests. Appropriate training programs include but are not limited to installation certification programs provided by BiCSi or the ACP (Association of Cabling Professionals).
 - a. Manufacturer of the copper cable and copper connectors, manufacturer of the fiber optic cable and/or the fiber optic connectors.
 - b. Manufacturer of the test equipment used for the field certification.
- B. Testing Equipment Qualifications:
 - 1. Field test instruments shall comply with the accuracy requirements for level III field testers as defined in ANSI/TIA-1152. The tester including the appropriate interface adapter must meet the specified accuracy requirements. The accuracy requirements for the permanent link test configuration (baseline accuracy plus adapter contribution) are specified in Table 3 of ANSI/TIA-1152 (Table 3 in this TIA document also specifies the accuracy requirements for the Channel configuration).
 - 2. Field-test instruments shall have the latest software and firmware installed.
 - 3. Field-test instruments (tester) shall be within the calibration period recommended by the vendor in order to achieve the vendor-specified measurement accuracy.
 - 4. The RJ45 test plug shall fall within the values specified in ANSI/TIA-568-C Annex C for NEXT, FEXT and Return Loss.
 - 5. Testing of the fiber cabling shall be performed using high-quality test cords of the same fiber type as the cabling under test. The test cords for OLTS testing shall be between 1 m and 5 m in length. The test cords for OTDR testing shall be approximately 100 m for the launch cable and at least 25 m for the receive cable.
 - 6. The copper tester interface adapters must be of high quality and the cable shall not show any twisting or kinking resulting from coiling and storing of the tester interface adapters. In order to deliver optimum accuracy, preference is given to a permanent link interface adapter for the tester that can be calibrated to extend the reference plane of the Return Loss measurement to the permanent link interface. The contractor shall provide proof that the interface has been calibrated within the period recommended by the vendor. To ensure that normal handling on the job does not cause measurable Return Loss change, the adapter cord cable shall not be of twisted-pair construction.
 - 7. Field-test instruments (tester) shall be within the calibration period recommended by the vendor in order to achieve the vendor-specified measurement accuracy.

8. Field-test instruments shall have the latest software and firmware installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 COPPER

- A. Every cabling link in the installation shall be tested in accordance with the field test specifications defined in ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 "Commercial Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standard". This document will be referred to as the "Category 6 Standard."
- B. Every cabling link in the installation shall be tested for the following:
 1. Wire Map
 2. Length
 3. Insertion Loss
 4. NEXT Loss
 5. PS NEXT Loss
 6. ACR-F Loss
 7. PS ACR-F Loss
 8. Return Loss
 9. Propagation Delay
 10. Delay Skew
 11. DC Resistance Unbalance.
- C. The cable type must be set to match the cable manufacturer and type installed, do not set to the default Cat 6 UTP. If the manufacturer of the cable installed is not listed in the field test equipment, only then, the default Cat 6 UTP may be used.
- D. The location of the "Main" shall be at the MDF or IDF and the location of the "Remote" shall be at the outlet. If the location of the "Main" and "Remote" are reversed, it must be noted in the test report documentation for any and all instances.
- E. The installed twisted-pair horizontal links shall be tested from the IDF in the telecommunications room to the telecommunication wall outlet in the work area for compliance with the "Permanent Link" performance specification as defined in the Category 6 Standard.
- F. One hundred percent of the installed cabling links must pass the requirements of the Category 6 Standard and as further detailed in this Section. Any failing link must be diagnosed and corrected. The corrective action shall be followed with a new test to prove that the corrected link meets the performance requirements. The final and passing result of the tests for all links shall be provided in the test results documentation in accordance with this Section.
- G. A Pass or Fail result for each parameter is determined by comparing the measured values with the specified test limits for that parameter. The test result of a parameter shall be marked with an asterisk " * " when the result is closer to the test limit than the accuracy of the field tester. The field tester manufacturer must provide documentation as an aid to interpret results marked with asterisks. To which extent " * " results shall determine approval or disapproval of the element under test shall be defined in the relevant detail specification, or agreed on as a part of a contractual specification.
- H. The Pass or Fail condition for the link-under-test is determined by the results of the required individual tests (detailed in Section 4.2.2 of ANSI/TIA-1152). Any Fail or Fail* result yields a Fail for the link-under-test. In order to achieve an overall Pass condition, the results for each individual test parameter must Pass or Pass*.

3.2 FIBER

- A. Every fiber cable link shall be tested in accordance with this document. This includes testing the attenuation and polarity of the installed cable plant with an optical loss test set (OLTS) and the installed condition of the cabling system and its components with an optical time domain reflectometer (OTDR). The condition of the fiber end faces shall also be verified.
- B. Testing shall not include any active devices or passive devices within the link or channel other than cable, connectors, and splices, i.e. link attenuation does not include such devices as optical bypass switches, couplers, repeaters, or optical amplifiers.
- C. All tests performed on optical fiber cabling that use a laser or LED in a test set shall be carried out with safety precautions in accordance with ANSI Z136.2.
- D. All outlets, cables, patch panels and associated components shall be fully assembled and labeled prior to field-testing. Any testing performed on incomplete systems shall be redone on completion of the work.
- E. Link and channel test results from the OLTS and OTDR shall be recorded in the test instrument upon completion of each test for subsequent uploading to a PC in which the administrative documentation (reports) may be generated.
- F. Fiber end faces shall be inspected at x200 or x400 magnification. x200 magnification is suitable for inspecting multimode and singlemode fibers. x400 magnification may be used for detailed examination of singlemode fibers. Scratched, pitted or dirty connectors shall be diagnosed and corrected.
 - 1. End face images shall be recorded in the memory of the test instrument for subsequent uploading to a PC and reporting.
- G. Testing shall be performed on each cabling segment (connector to connector).
- H. Testing shall be performed on each cabling channel (equipment to equipment) that is planned for use per the owner's instructions.
- I. Optical loss testing - Horizontal / Backbone link
 - 1. Multimode links shall be tested at 850 nm and 1300 nm in accordance with ANSI/TIA-526-14-B, one-cord reference method.
 - 2. Singlemode backbone links shall be tested at 1310 nm and 1550 nm in accordance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7, Method A.1, One Reference Jumper equivalent method.
 - 3. Link attenuation does not include any active devices or passive devices other than cable, connectors, and splices, i.e. link attenuation does not include such devices as optical bypass switches, couplers, repeaters, or optical amplifiers.
- J. OTDR Testing
 - 1. Fiber links shall be tested at the appropriate operating wavelengths for anomalies and to ensure uniformity of cable attenuation and connector insertion loss.
 - a. Multimode: 850 nm and 1300 nm
 - b. Singlemode: 1310 nm and 1550 nm
 - 2. Each fiber link and channel shall be tested in both directions.
 - 3. A launch cable shall be installed between the OTDR and the first link connection.
 - 4. A receive cable shall be installed after the last link connection.
- K. Length Measurement
 - 1. The length of each fiber shall be recorded.
 - 2. It is preferable that the optical length be measured using an OLTS or OTDR.
- L. Polarity Testing
 - 1. Paired duplex fibers in multi-fiber cables shall be tested to verify polarity in accordance with Clause E.5.3 of ANSI/TIA 568 C.0. The polarity of the paired duplex fibers shall be verified using an OLTS.

3.3 DOCUMENTATION

- A. The test results / measurements saved within the field test instrument shall be transferred into a Windows™-based database utility that allows for the maintenance, inspection and archiving of the test records. A guarantee shall be made that the measurement results are transferred to the PC unaltered, i.e., "as saved in the field test instrument" at the end of each test and that these results cannot be modified at a later time. The file format, CSV (comma separated value), does not provide adequate protection of these records and shall not be used.
- B. The test results documentation shall be available for inspection by the Owner or the Owner's representative during the installation period and shall be passed to the Owner's representative within 5 working days of completion of tests on cabling served by a telecommunications room or of backbone cabling. The installer shall retain a copy to aid preparation of as built information.
- C. The database for the completed job shall be stored and delivered on CD-ROM or DVD prior to Owner acceptance. This CD-ROM or DVD shall include the software tools required to view, inspect, and print any selection of test reports.
- D. Circuit IDs reported by the test instrument should match the specified label ID.
- E. Detailed test result documentation shall be provided in an electronic data base and shall include the following information for each link:
 - 1. Identification of the customer site as specified by the owner.
 - 2. Identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - 3. The name of the test limit selected to execute the stored test results.
 - 4. The name of the personnel performing the test.
 - 5. The overall Pass/Fail evaluation of the link-under-test.
 - a. Including the NEXT Headroom (overall worst case) number for copper.
 - b. Including OLTS and OTDR measurements for fiber.
 - 6. Identification of the tester interface.
 - 7. Date and time the test results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 - 8. The manufacturer, model and serial number of the field-test instrument.
 - 9. The version of the test software and the version of the test limit database held within the test instrument
 - 10. Test results information must contain information on each of the required test parameters that are listed in this Section and as further detailed below.
- F. Copper
 - 1. Detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for must contain the following information:
 - a. For each of the frequency-dependent test parameters, the value measured at every frequency during the test is stored. The PC-resident database program must be able to process the stored results to display and print a color graph of the measured parameters. The PC-resident software must also provide a summary numeric format in which some critical information is provided numerically as defined by the summary results (minimum numeric test results documentation) as outlined above for each of the test parameters.
 - 1) Length: Identify the wire-pair with the shortest electrical length, the value of the length rounded to the nearest 0.1 m (1) and the test limit value.
 - 2) Propagation delay: Identify the pair with the shortest propagation delay, the value measured in nanoseconds (ns) and the test limit value.
 - 3) Delay Skew: Identify the pair with the largest value for delay skew, the value calculated in nanoseconds (ns) and the test limit value.
 - 4) Insertion Loss (Attenuation): Minimum test results documentation as explained in this Section for the worst pair.
 - 5) Return Loss: Minimum test results documentation as explained in this Section for the worst pair as measured from each end of the link.
 - 6) NEXT, ACR-F: Minimum test results documentation as explained in this Section for the worst pair combination as measured from each end of the link.
 - 7) PS NEXT and PS ACR-F: Minimum test results documentation as explained in this Section for the worst pair as measured from each end of the link.

COMMUNICATIONS CABLE TESTING

- 8) DC Resistance Unbalance.
 - b. Cable type and the value of NVP used for length calculations.
- G. Fiber
 - 1. Detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for must contain the following information:
 - a. The fiber identification number.
 - b. The length for each optical fiber.
 - c. The length for each optical fiber as calculated by the OTDR.
 - d. Test results to include OTDR link and channel traces and event tables at the appropriate wavelength(s).
 - e. Test results to include OLTS attenuation link and channel measurements at the appropriate wavelength(s) and the margin (difference between the measured attenuation and the test limit value).
 - f. End face inspection images.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. A representative of the owner shall reserve the right to be invited to witness field testing. The representative shall be notified of the start date of the testing phase five business days before testing commences.
- B. A representative of the owner shall reserve the right to select a random sample of 5% of the installed links. The representative (or his / her authorized delegate) shall test these randomly selected links and the results are to be stored in accordance with the prescriptions in this Section. The results obtained shall be compared to the data provided by the installation contractor. If more than 2% of the sample results differ in terms of the pass/fail determination, the installation contractor under supervision of the end-user representative shall repeat 100% testing and the cost shall be borne by the installation contractor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 10 00
ACCESS CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Access control system requirements.
- B. Access control units and software.
- C. Access control point peripherals, including readers.
- D. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
 - 1. Includes door hardware with integral request to exit devices.
- C. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- D. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- E. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems.
- F. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- G. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- H. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems
- I. Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems
- J. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling: Data cables for access control system IP network connections.
- K. Section 28 20 00 - Video Surveillance: For interface with access control system.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- C. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. NFPA 262 - Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-Handling Spaces.
- G. NFPA 730 - Guide for Premises Security.

- H. NFPA 731 - Standards for the Installation of Electronic Premises Security
- I. UL 294 - Access Control System Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the work with other installers to provide suitable door hardware as required for both access control functionality and code compliance.
 - 2. Coordinate the placement of readers with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
 - 3. Coordinate the work with other installers to provide power for equipment at required locations.
 - 4. Coordinate the work with Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for access control equipment, installation, testing, adjusting, integration, and system start-up.
 - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Preinstallation Meetings:
 - 1. Conduct meeting with facility representative to review reader and equipment locations.
 - 2. Conduct meeting with facility representative and other related equipment manufacturers to discuss access control system interface requirements.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plan views indicating locations of system components and proposed size, type, and routing of conduits and/or cables. Include elevations and details of proposed equipment arrangements. Include system interconnection schematic diagrams. Include requirements for interface with other systems.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each system component. Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, finishes, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- D. Design Data: Standby battery/UPS calculations.
- E. Certify that proposed system design and components meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Evidence of qualifications for installer.
- G. Evidence of qualifications for maintenance contractor (if different entity from installer).
- H. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and operation of product.
- I. Manufacturer's detailed field testing procedures.
- J. Field quality control test reports.
- K. Maintenance contracts.
- L. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of system components and installed wiring arrangements and routing.
- M. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on system operation, equipment programming and setup, replacement parts, and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
 - 1. Include contact information for entity that will be providing contract maintenance and trouble call-back service.

- N. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- O. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Deliver blank credentials to Owner as directed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 70.
 - 2. NFPA 101 (Life Safety Code).
 - 3. The requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Applicable TIA/EIA standards.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience with access control systems of similar size, type, and complexity and providing contract maintenance service as a regular part of their business; authorized manufacturer's representative.
 - 1. Contract maintenance office located within 100 miles of project site.
- E. Maintenance Contractor Qualifications: Same entity as installer.
- F. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging, keep dry and protect from damage until ready for installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide minimum one year manufacturer warranty covering repair or replacement due to defective materials or workmanship.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The intent of this specification is to lay out the infrastructure requirements for an expansion of the Owner's Access Control System (ACS) and coordinate the installation of the security equipment furnished to the electrical contractor at points indicated on the Drawings.

- B. Provide all structured cabling, terminations, boxes, conduit, penetrations, sleeves, wire-mold, fasteners, and common installation material such that the project has a complete and workable access control system compliant with this Section. Hardware products which do not meet this design as laid out in Sections 27 05 28 - Pathways For Communications Systems and 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling, shall not be acceptable.
- C. Install all equipment furnished by the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier referred to in this specification as the Integrator. The electrical contractor shall coordinate with the Integrator the transmittal of equipment, verification of the access control schedule, field installation, and commissioning of the communications cabling system that supports the system.
- D. The electrical contractor shall provide all necessary coordination with the Integrator to produce a fully commissioned Access Control System.

2.2 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

- A. ACS equipment for the project shall be purchased by the Owner via New York State Contract.
 - 1. Identified products shall be installed by the Owner or System Integrator.
 - 2. Remaining products identified as furnished by the Owner shall be turned over to the Electrical Contractor for installation.
 - 3. Refer to the Responsibility Matrix later in this Section for product listing.
- B. The Owner has further entered into a separate contract for Manufacturer's Representative Services.
 - 1. The term Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier shall be synonymous with and interchangeable with the terms Integrator or System Integrator.
 - 2. The Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for the project is:
 - a. Day Automation Systems, Inc. 7931 Rae Boulevard Rochester, NY 14475 phone: 800-836-0969.
 - 3. Refer to Responsibility Matrix later in this Section for description of services provided.
- C. For a complete listing of Owner-Furnished products including Manufacturer, model, and description, contact the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier.

2.3 PRODUCTS

- A. Provide such equipment as outlined in the responsibility matrix below, including but not limited to:
 - 1. Patch Cables: As specified in Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.
 - 2. Data Cable Surge Suppression: As specified in Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
 - 3. Patch Panels: As specified in Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.
- B. Install equipment, identified in the responsibility matrix below, as supplied by the Owner, but not installed by the Owner or Integrator.
- C. Provide wiring, conduit, wire terminations, back boxes, wire-mold, fasteners and common installation material required to connect devices furnished as part of, or integral to the Access Control System regardless of the source of the supply.
 - 1. Provide all wiring and terminations for the Access Control System in accordance with the specifications, contract drawings, and detailed engineered drawings provided by factory representative.
- D. Provide all other devices required for proper complete system operation including, but not limited to, electrical switches, transformers, disconnect switches, sensors, safety devices, power supplies, enclosure, and circuit breakers.
- E. **Reference the responsibility matrix below:**
 - EC - Prime Electrical Contractor
 - Owner - Project Owner
 - Integrator - System Integrator

<u>Products</u>	<u>Furnished By</u>	<u>Installed By</u>	<u>Control Wiring By</u>	<u>Programmed By</u>
Access Control Panels	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
Access Door Control Modules	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
Input/Output Boards	Owner	EC	EC	N/A
Proximity Card Readers	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
Door Contacts	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
Request To Exit Sensors	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
Relays	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator
ADA Panels	Owner	EC	EC	Integrator

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that ratings and configurations of system components are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive system components.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to system.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install access control system in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Wiring Method: Unless otherwise indicated, use cables (not in conduit).
 1. Use suitable listed cables in wet locations, including underground raceways.
 2. Use suitable listed cables for vertical riser applications.
 3. Use listed plenum rated cables in spaces used for environmental air.
 4. Install wiring in conduit for the following:
 - a. Where required for rough-in.
 - b. Where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - c. Where exposed to damage.
 - d. Where installed outside the building.
 - e. For exposed connections from outlet boxes to devices.
 5. Conduit: Comply with Section 26 05 33.13.
 6. Conceal all cables unless specifically indicated to be exposed.
 7. Use power transfer hinges complying with Section 08 71 00 for concealed connections to door hardware.
 8. Cables in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Equipment closets.
 - b. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
 9. Route exposed cables parallel or perpendicular to building structural members and surfaces.
 10. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum cable length between components.
- D. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 27 05 26.

- E. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- F. Identify system wiring and components in accordance with Section 27 05 53.
- G. Provide wiring in conduit per NEC and Local codes.
- H. Provide wiring and connections to door hardware devices.
- I. Ground and bond security access equipment and circuits in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- J. Electronic locking devices shall have a separate power supply. Provide and install power supplies as required to support the locks. The unit shall incorporate integral battery charging capabilities and a fused line voltage input for individual locks. All power supplies shall be equipped with optional battery pack for up to 24 hours of backup. As required, the unit shall be equipped with a module to accommodate fire alarm NC contacts when a fire alarm activates.
- K. Provide all interface wiring, relays, connections and programming required to interface electric locking/unlocking of door hardware with powered door openers/actuator buttons.
 - 1. Entry from exterior through door during scheduled lock times: Exterior ADA actuator button/powered opener will be disabled until authorized credentials (card, fob) are presented to Access system reader. Access control system to activate door opener actuator buttons so that when in a locked position, an entry door powered opener will NOT engage against a door with the latch in the locked position. User must first present an authorized credential to the card reader to unlock the door. Authorized credential will unlock door and either initiate opening of door or activate the pushbutton for powered opening activation.
 - a. When entry point has second set of interior Vestibule doors with powered opener, and no actuator button inside the Vestibule, the interior opened door must have programmed time delay to stay open for a sufficient time to allow the persons to pass through.
 - 2. Exit at powered door in scheduled lock times: Upon pushing interior located actuator button(s), the access control system will unlock associated doors and allow the person to pass through door(s) and exit the building. Doors to close and lock after (adjustable) set time period.
- L. At locations with removable mullions and electric strikes, provide quick disconnect plugs in order to facilitate the removal of the mullion without cutting the wires to the electric strike.
- M. All conduit sleeves and holes shall be ground smooth to remove all sharp edges and burrs that could potentially damage cabling. All cabling shall be supported and protected at all holes, penetration points, boxes, conduit, etc. with protective grommets or material that will protect the cabling from any abrasive contact with surfaces that might cause damage.
- N. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of product in the applications indicated. Anchor products securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other work.
- O. It is the installer's / contractor's responsibility to test every aspect of the ACS system and document the location and performance of every cable, termination point, riser, control panel, Card Reader, Door contact, rex, Input point, and all associated software functions.
- P. All cable management (troughs) are mounted tight, level and square with all fasteners installed and be free of debris on the inside and outside.
- Q. All cabling outside enclosures are installed free from sharp edges and dressed neatly.
- R. Cables installed using approved method when not in cable management trays.
- S. Cable management not to use adhesive tie wraps, due to loss of secure mounting.
- T. Cables enter and leave junction boxes using proper bushings, fittings, grommets.
- U. All wiring to be neatly dressed. All Bend radii are sufficient, and equate to cable type requirements.

- V. Cable runs are continuous and not spliced. Field splice connections will be documented and only as necessary to end of line device to minimize points of failure/DB loss. Field splice connections will be in secured enclosure.
- W. All terminations at field devices are visually inspected to ensure properly soldered-no dolphins, wire nuts or b-connects.
- X. All field devices mounted using approved installation fasteners and hardware to ensure serviceability (field devices can be removed and remounted)
- Y. All field devices mounted tight, level, square and sealed as needed for weatherproof applications.
- Z. All terminations at field devices are inspected to ensure there are no bare wire conductors and all is insulated and shrink wrapped. All spare un-terminated conductors are properly safe-ended with shrink wrap.
- AA. Supervision EOL resistors are located at the field device to be supervised.
- BB. Cable installation shall not impact any existing cabling infrastructure.

3.3 SYSTEM PROGRAMMING

- A. The Contractor and the ACS Vendor are jointly responsible for Initial Programming and report formatting of the ACS as specified herein and as directed by the owner/owner representative. The owner will convey their programmable operational requirements for all system functions in lay terms, and Initial System programming will be completed to satisfy the owner's requirements.
- B. The Contractor and the ACS Vendor will be required to meet with the owner's representatives a Min. 3 times to discuss, recommend and document the owner's needs for programming and sequences of operation.
- C. Programming Functions to be provided shall include but not be limited to:
 - 1. Schedules, groups and sequence of operation(s) for:
 - a. Access Groups
 - b. Access Levels
 - c. Actions
 - d. Action Groups
 - e. Alarm Inputs
 - f. Alarm Mask Groups
 - g. Alarm Outputs
 - h. Areas
 - i. Badge Types
 - j. Badge creation
 - k. Card Formats
 - l. Cardholders
 - m. Card Readers
 - n. Global I/O Function Lists
 - o. Global I/O Links
 - p. Holidays
 - q. Maps
 - r. Monitor Zones
 - s. Receiver Accounts
 - t. System Operators
 - u. User Permission Groups
 - v. Time Zones
 - w. Visitor management
 - 2. Initial Graphic Map creation with icons and programming setup
 - 3. Set-up and pathing of all alarm notifications
 - 4. Report generation and formats for printing and notifications.
 - 5. Door Monitoring Status: Alarm Conditions; Graphic Annunciation

ACCESS CONTROL

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Provide services of a manufacturer's authorized representative to observe installation and assist in inspection and testing. Include manufacturer's detailed testing procedures and field reports with submittals.
- C. Prepare and start system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Program system parameters according to requirements of Owner.
- E. Test for proper interface with other systems.
- F. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with contract documents.
- G. Submit detailed reports indicating inspection and testing results and corrective actions taken.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION AND MANUALS

- A. Manuals: Final copies of the manuals shall be delivered after completing the installation test with signed (owner/owner representative) proof of receipt. Each manual's contents shall be identified on the cover. The manual shall include names, addresses, and telephone numbers of the contractor responsible for the installation and maintenance of the system and the factory representatives for each item of equipment for each system. The manuals shall have a table of contents and labeled sections. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test shall include all modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance testing. The manuals shall consist of the following:
- B. Functional Design Manual: The functional design manual shall identify the operational requirements for the system and explain the theory of operation, design philosophy, and specific functions. A description of hardware and software functions, interfaces, and requirements shall be included.
- C. Hardware Manual: The manual shall describe all equipment furnished including:
 - 1. General description and specifications
 - 2. Installation and check out procedures
 - 3. Equipment layout and electrical schematics to the component level
 - 4. System layout drawings and schematics
 - 5. Alignment and calibration procedures
 - 6. Manufacturers repair parts list indicating sources of supply
- D. Software Manual: The software manual shall describe the functions of all software and shall include all other information necessary to enable proper loading, testing, and operation. The manual shall include:
 - 1. Definition of terms and functions
 - 2. System use and application software
 - 3. Initialization, start up, and shut down
 - 4. Reports generation
 - 5. Details on forms customization and field parameters
 - 6. Operators Manual: The operators manual shall fully explain all procedures and instructions for the operation of the system including:
 - 7. Computers and peripherals
 - 8. System start up and shut down procedures
 - 9. Use of system, command, and applications software
 - 10. Recovery and restart procedures

11. Graphic alarm presentation
12. Use of report generator and generation of reports
13. Data entry
14. Operator commands
15. Alarm messages and reprinting formats
16. System permissions functions and requirements

- E. Maintenance Manual: The maintenance manual shall include descriptions of maintenance for all equipment including inspection, periodic preventive maintenance, fault diagnosis, and repair or replacement of defective components.
- F. As-Built Drawings: During system installation, the Contractor shall maintain a separate hard copy set of drawings, elementary diagrams, and wiring diagrams of the ACS to be used for record drawings. This set shall be accurately kept up to date by the Contractor with all changes and additions to the ACS. Copies of the final as-built drawings shall be provided to the end user in DXF format.

3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of system to Owner, and correct deficiencies or make adjustments as directed.
- C. Training: Train Owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, and maintenance of system.
1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.
 2. Provide minimum of four hours of training.
 3. Instructor: Manufacturer's authorized representative.
 4. Location: At project site.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed system components from subsequent construction operations.

3.9 MAINTENANCE

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.
- B. Provide to Owner, a proposal as an alternate to the base bid, a separate maintenance contract for the service and maintenance of access control system for two years from date of Substantial Completion; Include a complete description of preventive maintenance, systematic examination, adjustment, cleaning, inspection, and testing, with a detailed schedule.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 28 15 00
INTEGRATED ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This Section includes access control door hardware for the following:

1. Swinging doors.
2. Other doors to the extent indicated.
3. Electrified and Integrated Access Control Card Key Door Hardware

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 06 71 - Door Schedule
- B. Section 08 12 13 - Hollow Metal Frames
- C. Section 08 14 16 - Flush Wood Doors
- D. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware
- E. Division 26 – Electrical: for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring work.
- F. Division 27 – Communications: for connections to the LAN.
- G. Section 28 10 00 - Access Control: for access control devices and equipment installed at door openings and provided as part of a security and site management system.
- H. Section 28 46 21.16 – Existing Fire Alarm System: for connections to building fire alarm system.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A117.1 (1998) - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
- B. IBC - International Building Code
- C. NFPA 70 (2002) - National Electrical Code.
- D. NFPA 80 (1999) - Fire Doors and Windows.
- E. NFPA 101 (2006) - Life Safety Code.
- F. UL 294 - Access Control Systems.
- G. UL 1076 - Proprietary Burglar Alarm Units and Systems.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.

- B. System Operational Descriptions: Complete system operational narratives for the integrated access controlled openings defining the owner's prescribed requirements for the opening functionality. Narratives include, but are not limited to, the following situations: normal secured/unsecured state of door; authorized access; authorized egress; unauthorized access; unauthorized egress; fire alarm and loss of power conditions, and interfaces with other building control systems.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified integrated locking hardware and access control firmware, indicating the following:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Upon receipt of approved schedules, submit detailed system wiring diagrams for power, signaling, monitoring, communication and control of the access control system electrified hardware and firmware. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:
 - a. Elevation diagram of each unique access controlled opening showing location and interconnection of major system components with respect to their placement in the respective door openings.
 - b. Complete (risers, point-to-point) access control system block wiring diagrams.
 - 2. Electrical Coordination: Coordinate with related Electrical Sections the voltages and wiring details required at electrically controlled and operated hardware openings.
- D. Proof of Certification: Upon request provide a copy of manufacturer(s) official certification or accreditation document indicating proof of status as a qualified and authorized provider of the primary access control components.
- E. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete access control and site management installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals. The manual to include the name, address, and telephone number of the supplier/integrator providing the installation and the nearest service representatives for each item of equipment included in the system. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test to include "as built" modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance.
 - 1. As-Built Drawings: During system installation, the Contractor to maintain a separate hard copy set of drawings, elevation diagrams, and wiring diagrams of the access control system to be used for record drawings. This set to be kept up to date by the Contractor with all changes and additions to the access control system accurately recorded.
- F. Warranties and Maintenance: Special warranties and maintenance agreements specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum of five (5) years of documented experience in providing access control and security systems equipment and software similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Software and access control systems components to have been previously and thoroughly tested together with proven installations similar in size and functionality to the design requirements indicated for this Project.

- B. Supplier Qualifications: Supplier/Dealers, verifiably authorized and in good standing with the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum of three (3) years of experience supplying integrated access control systems similar in material, design, and scope to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a proven record of successful in-service performance.
1. ASSA ABLOY access control products are required to be supplied only through designated "Authorized Channel Partners."
 - a. List Qualified ACP Companies
- C. System Integrator Qualifications: Systems Integrators, verifiably factory trained and certified by the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum of three (3) years documented experience installing complete integrated access control systems similar in material, design, and scope to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a proven record of successful in-service performance. Qualifications include, but are not necessarily limited, to the following:
1. References: Provide a list of references for similar projects including contact name, phone number, name and type of project.
 2. Professional Staffing: Firms to have a dedicated access control systems integration department with full time, experienced professionals on staff experienced in providing on site consulting services for both electrified door hardware and integrated access control systems installations.
 3. Factory Training: Installation and service technicians are to be competent factory trained and certified personnel capable of maintaining the system.
 4. Service Center: Firms to have a service center capable of providing training, in-stock parts, and emergency maintenance and repairs at the Project site with 24-hour/7-days a week maximum response time.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Certified technicians, verifiably authorized with the primary product manufacturers for installation of IP-Enabled, Wireless, and Power-over-Ethernet Access Control products in accordance with documented instructions and NFPA 80.
1. ASSA ABLOY access control products are required to be installed only through designated "Preferred Installers."
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain the access control door hardware, system firmware and application software specified in this Section from a single source, qualified supplier/integrator unless otherwise indicated.
1. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
 2. Provide integrated access control door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and ANSI A117.1 requirements and guidelines as directed in the model building code including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Comply with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code", including electrical components, devices, and accessories listed and labeled as defined in Article 100 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

2. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," ANSI A117.1.
3. Comply with NFPA 101 "Life Safety Code" for doors in a means of egress.
4. Comply with NFPA 80 "Fire Doors and Windows" for fire labeled opening assemblies.
5. The installed access control system shall conform to all local jurisdiction requirements.

G. Keying Conference: Reference Division 8 Section "Door Hardware".

H. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier/Dealer, Systems Integrator, and Contractor to review proper methods and procedures for receiving, handling, and installing the access control system hardware. At completion of installation, provide written documentation that components were applied to manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and according to approved schedules.

1. Inspect and discuss Division 26 electrical roughing-in and similar preparatory work performed by other trades.
2. Review and verify sequence of operation descriptions for each unique access controlled opening.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
4. Review the required inspecting, testing, commissioning, and demonstration procedures.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or related accessories at Project site without prior authorization.

1. Access control firmware and software: Where approved and directed, inventory upon receipt and store electronic access control equipment in a secure, temperature and humidity controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Access Control Door Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.

C. Deliver permanent keys, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner established at the "Pre-Submittal Conference".

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate quantity and arrangement of assemblies with ceiling space configuration and with components occupying ceiling space, including structural members, pipes, air-distribution components, raceways, cable trays, recessed lighting fixtures, and other items.

B. Access Control System Electrical Coordination: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled electrified door hardware, and related access control equipment, with required connections to source power junction boxes, power supplies, detection and monitoring hardware and fire alarm system.

1. Door Hardware Interface: The card key access control system to interface and be connected to electronic door control hardware (electromechanical locks, electric strikes,

magnetic locks, door position switches, other monitoring contacts, and related auxiliary control devices) as described under Division 8 "Door Hardware". Coordinate the installation and configuration of specified door hardware being monitored or controlled with the controls, software and access control hardware specified in this Section.

- C. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing electrified door hardware and access control system components. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing access control system hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- D. Door and Frame Preparation: Related Division 08 Sections (Steel, Aluminum and Wood) doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article will not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and are in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of the installed access control system hardware and software that fails in materials or workmanship, including all related parts and labor, within specified warranty period after final testing and acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - 2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
 - 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.
- C. Standard Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Special Warranty Periods (Electrified Access Control Door Hardware):
 - 1. Two years for Electrified, Wiegand Output, and IP-Enabled Access Control Door Hardware.
- E. Maintenance Support and Extended Service Agreement: Submit for Owner's consideration an optional extended Service Agreement for the installed access control system, including support for software related issues. The extended Service Agreement is considered elective and is without manufacturer's requirement stipulating mandatory coverage for owner and/or vendor system support.
 - 1. A published copy of this agreement to be included with the submittal package
 - 2. Support for the installed access control system components is provided through the vendor under a 24 hour technical assistance program.
 - 3. Access control and management system components are to be available on a one-day turn around time frame from the manufacturer.

4. Primary systems manufacturer to offer and provide remote modem or internet access for direct factory support to the vendor. The factory level support to include diagnostics and troubleshooting support on systems related issues at no additional cost to the owner.
- F. Access Control Software Upgrades: Version upgrades and "fix" releases to the access control system software are available at no extra charge as long as the version of software provided under this specification remains the current manufacturer's version or for up to (2) years after a new version release.
1. Major access control software revisions that provide new functionality to the product provided free of charge for up to one (1) year from the date of substantial completion.
 2. Access control system software is to be upgradable as may be required or as necessary, to expand and manage the owner's site or sites. Upgrades are to be offered at a published flat fee for the primary system software, with single license modules included in the primary fee structure. System upgrades offered at a costing structure based upon the original number of licensed modules issued, or on those to be purchased at a future date, are not allowed.
 3. As part of the submittal package, provide a list of available software upgrades and/or expansions modules. List to identify related costs for upgrades, or expansions to the original system, up to the next qualifying operational level.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of the installed access control system hardware and components.
- B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, and running concurrent with the specified warranty period, provide continuous (6) months full maintenance by skilled employees of the Systems Integrator. Include repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door opening operation. Provide parts and supplies as used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

1.10 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. On-Line Electronic Access Control System: Furnish and install at the indicated locations the specified electrified and integrated door hardware and access control firmware and software for a completely operational access control and security site management system. System includes, but is not necessarily limited, to the following:
1. Electrified integrated card reader locks and exit hardware, permanent and temporary override cylinders, network control processors, reader controller panels, I/O monitor/control interfaces, door position switches, remote card readers, keypads, and display terminals, access cards and credentials, system application software, special tools, operating manuals, and required cabling and accessories as detailed below and listed in the Access Control Hardware Sets in Section 08 06 71.
 - a. Provide the appropriate number of reader controller panels and I/O monitoring/control expansion interfaces as needed to handle the number of card readers, locking devices, door status devices, and identified alarm inputs specified in this section, and as shown on the security drawings.

INTEGRATED ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

- b. Provide manufacturer approved integrated card reader locks, exit hardware, and remote mounted card readers, keypads, and display terminals that are functionally compatible with the specified access control equipment interfaces.
2. Access control system equipment to be installed in an enclosure box compatible with the specified components. This enclosure to include, but is not necessarily limited to, the network control processor, I/O monitor/control interface panels, power supplies, terminal strips, wire ducts, keyed lock cylinder, integrated outlet for A/C power, and standoffs.
 - a. Enclosure box to be located in the designated IT/Telecom room(s) with connection to local area network for communication back to the central server host.
3. Owner to provide the following:
 - a. Central server host computer, client workstations, and hardware peripherals to be from an approved, major line computer manufacturer. Specific information detailing compliance with system requirements to be included in the project submittal package as specified.
 - b. Owner will be responsible for ensuring that each computer hardware component includes the required interfaces, expansion boards, and peripherals that will be necessary to allow the system to operate as described within this specification and as indicated on the drawings.
 - c. Power Sourcing and Network Switches: Quantity as required to accommodate installed access control (and video surveillance) devices.
 - d. Network Control Processor Connections:
 - 1) LAN/Ethernet communication ports (jacks) and network interface cards as needed, CAT5e cabling from network router/switch to network control processor, outlet and cover plates and/or patch cables required for network connection within each designated IT/Telecom room.
 - 2) Required static IP addresses.
4. Power Supplies, including battery back up and separately fused surge protection, required for the electrified door hardware and access control equipment.
5. Installation, final configuration and commissioning of electrified door and access control system hardware, communication firmware, power supplies and related accessories.
6. System application software including installation, programming, and end user training of the access control system demonstrating operating, repair, and maintenance procedures. Include no fewer than 8 hours of on-site central server training for designated personnel (facilities maintenance, security, IT, administration) by a factory certified representative.
7. Provide manufacturer required power controllers, interface boards, and programming that may be required for approved electric latch retraction exit devices supplied under Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
8. Controls contractor, to provide the following:
 - a. Source power wiring (120VAC) as required for the electrified locking and access control hardware, equipment, accessories and power supplies. This includes quad outlets as required on a dedicated circuit in the designated IT/Telecom room(s) and the related conduit, stub-in, junction boxes and connectors required for the source power delivery and connections.
 - b. Provide required conduit, stub-in, junction and back boxes for both the electrified locking hardware and access control equipment at each of the access controlled or monitored openings per plan drawings and specs. Supply and install conduit between each of the aforementioned devices and between the electrical junction

INTEGRATED ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

boxes, power supplies and access control equipment located on or above the door opening.

- 1) At wall mounted remote readers, provide conduit on the secured side of the door, 36" from the finish floor and 6" from the edge of the frame, to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
 - 2) At electrical hardware power transfers provide conduit on the secured side of the opening from the power transfer, thru-wire hinge, or serviceable panel location on the frame jamb to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
- c. Controls Contractor to provide all 120VAC cabling connections and terminations from the electrical junction boxes to these electrical devices.
- d. Low voltage wiring (12/24VDC) and communication cabling (RS-232/RS-485) from network control processors to reader controllers, I/O monitor/control interface panels, electrified and integrated locking hardware, remote card readers, keypads, or display terminals, monitoring and signaling switches, and power supplies. Work includes related connectors, final terminations, and hook-ups required for a complete and functional access controlled opening in accordance with applicable codes and specified system operational narratives.
- e. Interface or landing of interface cable onto the elevator call button will be performed by a certified elevator contractor.
- f. Coordinate with access control systems integrator provisions for a card reader with output allowing the elevator call button to be activated. A validated card read will be required for activation.
9. Final connections to fire alarm system, if required, by Electrical Contractor.
10. Provide permits, submittals and approvals required by the authority having jurisdiction, prior to commencing with work.
11. Provide manufacturer required power controllers, interface boards, and programming that may be required for approved electric latch retraction exit devices supplied under Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
12. Controls Contractor to provide the following:
 - a. Provide required conduit, stub-in, junction and back boxes for both the electrified locking hardware and access control equipment at each of the access controlled or monitored openings per plan drawings and specs. Supply and install conduit between each of the aforementioned devices and between the electrical junction boxes, power supplies and access control equipment located on or above the door opening.
 - 1) At off-line remote readers, provide conduit on the secured side of the door, 36" from the finish floor and 6" from the edge of the frame, to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
 - 2) At electrified hardware power transfers provide conduit on the secured side of the opening from the power transfer, thru-wire hinge, or serviceable panel location on the frame jamb to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
 - b. Controls Contractor to provide all 120VAC cabling connections and terminations from the electrical junction boxes to these electrical devices.
 - c. Low voltage wiring (12/24VDC) for the electrified locking hardware, remote card readers, monitoring and signaling switches, and power supplies. Work includes

INTEGRATED ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

related connectors, final terminations and hook-ups required for a complete and functional access controlled opening in accordance with applicable codes and specified system operational narratives.

13. Typical System Requirements (Owner Provided): Central server host computer, client workstations, and hardware peripherals to be from an approved, major line computer manufacturer. Specific information detailing compliance with system requirements to be included in the project submittal package as specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 APERIO WIRELESS ACCESS CONTROL

- A. Wireless Access Control Mortise Locks: Wireless technology ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Grade 1 mortise lockset with integrated card reader, deadbolt monitoring, and request-to-exit and door position switch signaling in one complete unit. Motor driven locking/unlocking control of the lever handle trim, 3/4" stainless steel latch, and optional 1" deadbolt with hardened inserts. Lock is U.L listed and labeled for use on up to 3 hour fire rated openings. Available with or without keyed high security cylinder override.
 1. Wireless access control lock interface using local wireless connection between the lock unit and a nearby communication hub. Communication hub connected via RS-485 or Wiegand to a new or existing online electronic access control system platform.
 2. Fully-encrypted AES 128 wireless communication between lock and communication hub (IEEE 802.15.4, 2.4 GHz) with no proprietary programming device requirements. Locks will continue functional operation independent of wireless connection slowdown or failure.
 3. Integrated card reader supports 125kHz proximity credentials; 13.56 MHz contactless credentials: HID® iCLASS (full authentication, all formats, including SEOS), Mifare Classic (Sector and UID), DESFire, NFC-enabled mobile phones.
 4. Support for HID Mobile Access via Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) short-range wireless communication.
 5. Lockdown capability with maximum 10 second response.
 6. Patent pending credential cache to ensure offline access.
 7. Power Source: 6 AA alkaline batteries power supply with LED indication of locked, programming mode and low capacity warning status conditions.
 8. Energy Efficient Design: Provide lock bodies which have a holding current draw of 15mA maximum, and can operate on either 12 or 24 volts. Locks are to be field configurable for fail safe or fail secure operation.
 9. Outside lever rigid except when valid user code is entered. Emergency override access capability with optional mechanical key cylinder retraction of lock latch bolt without necessary electronic activation.
 10. Communication Hub: Provide the necessary number of hubs which is connected to the access control system via RS-485 or Wiegand as required by the system. Provide hubs factory paired with the locks, but allow for field configuration as needed.
 11. Complete installation to include manufacturer's Installation Tool and USB Radio Dongle for initial lock set-up and configuration. Electronic on-line access control system platform, including communication cabling and software, by others.
12. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) – IN100 – ML2000 Series.
 - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) – IN100 – 8200 Series.

- B. Wireless Access Control Electric Strikes: Non-handed standard fail-secure electric strikes of stainless steel construction with 2.4 GHz wireless technology and battery powered operation designed to work with mortise and cylindrical locks. Strikes shall have a minimum static strength of 1,500 pounds and a minimum dynamic strength of 70 ft.-pounds.
1. Strikes can operate as a stand-alone device or integrate with existing access control systems, auditing, and credentials.
 2. Card reader supports HID multiclass SE® card technologies and NFC/BLE mobile credentials with bi-color LED visual status indicators.
 3. Manufacturers:
 - a. HES (HS) – ES100 Series.
- C. Wireless Access Control Exit Hardware: Wireless technology ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 rim and mortise exit device hardware with integrated card reader. Separate DPS connects directly to exit hardware electronics for door position (open/closed status) monitoring. Motor driven locking/unlocking control of the lever handle exit trim with 3/4" throw latch bolt. U.L listed and labeled for either panic or "fire exit hardware" for use on up to 3 hour fire rated openings. Available with or without keyed high security cylinder override trim.
1. Wireless access control exit hardware interfaces using local wireless connection between the electronic exit trim and a communication hub located directly above the door. Communication hub connected via RS-485 to a new or existing online electronic access control system platform.
 2. Fully-encrypted AES 128 wireless communication between lock and communication hub (IEEE 802.15.4, 2.4 GHz) with no proprietary programming device requirements. Locks will continue functional operation independent of wireless connection slowdown or failure.
 3. Integrated card reader supports 125kHz proximity credentials; 13.56 MHz contactless credentials: HID® iCLASS (full authentication, all formats, including SEOS), Mifare Classic (Sector and UID), DESFire, NFC-enabled mobile phones.
 4. Support for HID Mobile Access via Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) short-range wireless communication.
 5. Lockdown capability with maximum 10 second response.
 6. Patent pending credential cache to ensure offline access.
 7. Power Source: 6 AA alkaline batteries power supply with LED indication of locked, programming mode and low capacity warning status conditions.
 8. Outside lever rigid except when in "passage" mode, or valid user code is entered. Emergency override access capability with optional mechanical key cylinder retraction of exit device latch without necessary electronic activation.
 9. Complete installation to include manufacturer's Installation Tool and USB Radio Dongle for initial lock set-up and configuration. Electronic on-line access control system platform, including communication cabling and software, by others.
 10. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) – IN100 – ED5000 Series.
 - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - IN100 – 80 Series.

2.2 INTEGRATED WIRED OUTPUT ACCESS CONTROL, MULTI-CLASS READER

2.3 CABLES AND WIRING

- A. Comply with Division 27 Section "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."
- B. Data Line Supervision: System to include alarm initiation capability in response to opening, closing, shorting, or grounding of data transmission lines.
- C. Install appropriate number of conductor pairs, in the wire gage (AWG) recommended by manufacturer, corresponding to the electronic locking functions specified, amperage drawn and distances covered between the power supplies, power transfer devices, electrified hardware and access control equipment.

2.4 ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE FINISHES

- A. Standard: Comply with BHMA A156.18.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying temporary protective coverings before shipping.
- C. Where specified, finishes on integrated card key locksets or exit hardware to incorporate an FDA recognized antimicrobial coating (i.e., MicroShield™) listed for use on equipment as a suppressant to the growth and spread of a broad range of bacteria, algae, fungus, mold and mildew.
- D. BHMA Designations: Comply with base material and finish as specified.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the installed access control system.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical source power to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified and integrated access control door hardware installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
- D. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the specifications, drawings and scheduled access controlled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Doors and frames at scheduled access controlled openings to be properly prepared to receive specified electrified and access control hardware and connections without additional in-field modifications.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each item of electronic integrated door hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.
- B. Mounting Heights: Mount electronic integrated door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - 2. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
 - 3. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
- C. Boxed Power Supplies: Verify locations.
 - 1. Configuration: Provide the least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with access control hardware and equipment.
- D. Final connect the system control switches (integrated card key locking hardware, remote readers, keypads, display terminals, biometrics), and monitoring, and signaling equipment to the related Controller devices at each opening to properly operate the electrified door and access control hardware according to system operational narratives.
- E. Retrofitting: Install each door hardware and access control item to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- F. System Application Software: Install, and test application(s) software and databases for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license(s) to Owner.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection (Punch Report): Reference Division 01 Sections "Closeout Procedures". Produce project punch report for each installed door opening indicating compliance with approved submittals and verification hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted. Include list of items to be completed and corrected, indicating the reasons or deficiencies causing the Work to be incomplete or rejected.
 - 1. Organization of List: Include separate Door Opening and Deficiencies and Corrective Action Lists organized by Mark, Opening Remarks and Comments, and related Opening Images and Video Recordings.

INTEGRATED ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

B. Commissioning and Testing Schedule: Prior to final acceptance of the access control system installation, the following testing and documentation to be performed and provided to the Owner.

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pre-testing: Program and adjust the system and pretest all components, wiring, and functions to verify they conform to specified requirements. Provide testing reports indicating devices tested, pass/fail status, and actions taken to resolve problem(s) on failed tests.
3. Acceptance Test Schedule: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
4. Provide "as designed" drawings showing each device and wiring connection and electronic enclosure legends indicating cabling in and out.
5. Provide a complete set of operating instructions for access control hardware devices and a complete software user manual. The documentation includes module reference guides for each electronic enclosure.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust and check each operating item of integrated access control door hardware, and each door opening to ensure proper secured operation and function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by access control system installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish and provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure access control door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage an authorized systems manufacturer representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain electronic integrated door hardware and the access control system.

3.8 ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE SETS

A. The supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products and providing the correct option for the appropriate door type and material where more than one is presented in the hardware sets. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.

B. Refer to Section 08 06 71, Door Hardware Sets, for hardware sets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 20 00
VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Video surveillance system requirements.
- B. Video recording and viewing equipment.
- C. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- C. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems
- E. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
- F. Section 27 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems
- G. Section 27 05 33.13 - Conduit for Communications Systems
- H. Section 27 05 53 - Identification For Communications Systems.
- I. Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling: Data cables for IP video surveillance system network connections.
- J. Section 27 15 55 - Communications Cable Testing.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Coordinate the placement of cameras with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, luminaires, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
 - 2. Coordinate the work with Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for cameras and equipment, installation, testing, adjusting, integration, and system start-up.
 - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Preinstallation Meetings:
 - 1. Conduct meeting with facility representative to review camera and equipment locations and camera field of view objectives.
 - 2. Conduct meeting with facility representative and other related equipment manufacturers to discuss video surveillance system interface requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plan views indicating locations of system components and proposed size, type, and routing of conduits and/or cables. Include elevations and details of proposed equipment arrangements. Include system interconnection schematic diagrams. Include requirements for interface with other systems.
- C. Evidence of qualifications for installer.
- D. Field quality control test reports.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of cameras and routing of cables.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on system operation, equipment programming and setup, replacement parts, and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
 - 1. Include contact information for entity that will be providing contract maintenance and trouble call-back service.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 70.
 - 2. Applicable TIA/EIA standards.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience and with service facilities within 100 miles of project.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience with video surveillance systems of similar size, type, and complexity.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NECA 303.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's packaging, keep dry and protect from damage until ready for installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide minimum one year manufacturer warranty covering repair or replacement due to defective materials or workmanship.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The intent of this specification is to lay out the infrastructure requirements for an expansion of the Owner's Digital Video Management System (DVMS) and coordinate the installation of the security equipment furnished to the electrical contractor at points indicated on the Drawings.
- B. Provide all structured cabling, terminations, boxes, conduit, penetrations, sleeves, wire-mold, fasteners, and common installation material such that the project has a complete and workable video surveillance system compliant with this Section. Hardware products which do not meet this design as laid out in Sections 27 05 28 - Pathways For Communications Systems and 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling, shall not be acceptable.
- C. Install all equipment furnished by the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier referred to in this specification as the Integrator. The electrical contractor shall coordinate with the Integrator the transmittal of equipment, verification of the camera schedule, field installation, final aiming and commissioning of the communications cabling system that supports the system.
- D. The electrical contractor shall provide all necessary coordination with the Integrator to produce a fully commissioned DVMS & IP Security Camera system.

2.2 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

- A. DVMS equipment for the project shall be purchased by the Owner via New York State Contract.
 - 1. Identified products shall be installed by the Owner or System Integrator.
 - 2. Remaining products identified as furnished by the Owner shall be turned over to the Electrical Contractor for installation.
 - 3. Refer to the Responsibility Matrix later in this Section for product listing.
- B. The Owner has further entered into a separate contract for Manufacturer's Representative Services.
 - 1. The term Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier shall be synonymous with and interchangeable with the terms Integrator or System Integrator.
 - 2. The Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for the project is:
 - a. Day Automation Systems, Inc. 7931 Rae Boulevard Rochester, NY 14475 phone: 800-836-0969.
 - 3. Refer to Responsibility Matrix later in this Section for description of services provided.
- C. For a complete listing of Owner-Furnished products including Manufacturer, model, and description, contact the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier.

2.3 PRODUCTS

- A. Provide such equipment as outlined in the responsibility matrix below, including but not limited to:
 - 1. Patch Cables: As specified in Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.
 - 2. Data Cable Surge Suppression: As specified in Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding For Communications Systems.
 - 3. Patch Panels: As specified in Section 27 10 05 - Communications Copper Cabling.
- B. Install equipment, identified in the responsibility matrix below, as supplied by the Owner, but not installed by the Owner or Integrator.
- C. Provide wiring, conduit, wire terminations, back boxes, wire-mold, fasteners and common installation material required to connect devices furnished as part of, or integral to the DVMS system regardless of the source of the supply.
 - 1. Provide all wiring and terminations for the DVMS system in accordance with the specifications, contract drawings, and detailed engineered drawings provided by factory representative.
- D. Provide all other devices required for proper complete system operation including, but not limited to, electrical switches, transformers, disconnect switches, sensors, safety devices, power supplies, enclosure, and circuit breakers.

E. Reference the responsibility matrix below:

EC - Prime Electrical Contractor

Owner - Project Owner

Integrator - System Integrator

PRODUCTS	FURNISHED BY	INSTALLED BY	SIGNAL WIRING BY	PROGRAMMED BY
NETWORK VIDEO RECORDER	OWNER	OWNER / INTEGRATOR	EC	INTEGRATOR
CAMERAS & MOUNTS	OWNER	EC	EC	INTEGRATOR
CAMERA SOFTWARE LICENSE	OWNER	INTEGRATOR	N/A	INTEGRATOR
PATCH CABLES	EC	EC	EC	N/A
DATA CABLE SURGE SUPPRESSION	EC	EC	EC	N/A
PATCH PANELS	EC	EC	EC	N/A
UPS	OWNER	OWNER / INTEGRATOR	EC	INTEGRATOR
NETWORK SWITCHES	OWNER	OWNER / INTEGRATOR	EC	INTEGRATOR
ENCODERS	OWNER	OWNER / INTEGRATOR	EC	INTEGRATOR

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that ratings and configurations of system components are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive system components.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to system.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install video surveillance system in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and NECA 303.
- B. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of product in the applications indicated. Anchor products securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other work.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Wiring Method: Unless otherwise indicated, use cables (not in conduit).
 - 1. Use listed plenum rated cables in all spaces.
 - 2. Conduit: Comply with Section 26 05 33.13.

3. Conceal all cables unless specifically indicated to be exposed.
 4. Cables in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Equipment closets.
 5. Route exposed cables parallel or perpendicular to building structural members and surfaces.
 6. Include service loop cable lengths to allow relocation of cameras within 10 ft of installed location.
- F. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 27 05 26.
- G. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- H. Identify system wiring and components in accordance with Section 27 05 53.
- I. Label all cameras per Owner requirements and to match as in software naming convention.
- J. For IP Cameras: Test all cabling per Section 27 15 55.
- K. The Contractor shall carefully follow instructions in documentation provided by the manufacturers to insure all steps have been taken to provide a reliable system.
- L. Coordinate with the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier to ensure the following:
 1. All cameras are verified for start up and software programming.
 2. All equipment has been tested and configured in accordance with instructions provided by the manufacturer prior to installation.
- M. Coordinate all final locations with owner. Get sign off from owner on final view of camera.

3.3 DVMS - GROUNDING

- A. The Grounding wires connected from the Surge devices and earth ground to be grounded according to NEC and NFPA related codes. Grounding to common electrical building ground to be verified prior to install via measurement of resistance to ground in grounding system connection points. Grounding shall eliminate potential equipment damage from possible ground loops created by multiple ground rods. It shall allow the electrical potential of the entire facility to rise and fall in a uniform manner, reducing the possibility of excessive current flow on the grounding system.
- B. Whenever possible, the conductor length to earth ground should be less than the conductor length from the surge suppression device to the protected equipment.
- C. When connecting a parallel surge suppression device to a building ground system, the leads from the surge suppression device should be as short and straight as possible.
- D. The ground system should have a maximum resistance of 25 ohms. 5 ohms, or less, is the preferred level for optimum performance of the surge suppression device.

3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Interface installation of video surveillance with security access and intrusion detection systems.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Coordinate with the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for the following:
 1. Perform inspection and testing.
 2. Prepare and start system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 3. Adjust cameras to provide desired field of view and produce suitable images under all service lighting conditions.
 4. Program system parameters according to requirements of Owner.
 5. Test for proper interface with other systems.

- C. Each shall correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with contract documents.
- D. Submit detailed reports indicating inspection and testing results and corrective actions taken.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. Coordinate with the Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier for the following:
 - 1. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of system to Owner.
 - a. Provide personnel to correct deficiencies or make adjustments as directed.
- C. The Contractor and Manufacturer's Representative Services supplier shall each provide a Hardware Manual as it relates to the products supplied under their scope of work.
 - 1. The manual shall describe all equipment furnished including:
 - a. General description and specifications.
 - b. Installation and check out procedures.
 - c. Equipment layout and electrical schematics to the component level.
 - d. System layout drawings and schematics.
 - e. Alignment and calibration procedures.
 - f. Manufacturers' repair parts list indicating sources of supply.
- D. As-Built Drawings: During system installation, the Contractor shall maintain a separate hard copy set of drawings, elementary diagrams, and wiring diagrams of the DVMS to be used for record drawings. This set shall be accurately kept up to date by the Contractor with all changes and additions to the DVMS. Copies of the final as-built drawings shall be provided to the end user in PDF format.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed system components from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 46 21.16
EXISTING FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Extension of existing Addressable Fire Detection and Alarm system components, wiring, and conduit indicated, in full compliance with National and Local Codes.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping: Materials and methods for work to be performed by this installer.
- B. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems; Marking Fire Alarm components and raceways.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C; 2024c.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2025.
- D. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide; Current Edition.
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2023.
- F. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- I. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2024.
- J. UL (ECMD) - Electrical Construction Materials Directory; current edition.
- K. UL (FPED) - Fire Protection Equipment Directory; current edition.
- L. UL 1480 - Standard for Speakers for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 1971 - Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 2075 - Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 268 - Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 268A - Standard for Smoke Detectors for Duct Application; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

- Q. UL 38 - Standard for Manual Signaling Boxes for Fire Alarm Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 464 - Standard for Audible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 521 - Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- T. UL 864 - Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Meeting: Schedule and convene one week prior to beginning the work of this Section. Include all trades affected by the work of this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Complete manufacturer's catalog data including supervisory power usage, alarm power usage, physical dimensions, and finish and mounting requirements.
- C. Power calculations. Battery capacity calculations. Battery size shall be a minimum of 125% of the calculated requirement. Provide the following supporting information:
 - 1. Supervisory power requirements for all equipment.
 - 2. Alarm power requirements for all equipment.
 - 3. Power supply rating justification showing power requirements for each of the system power supplies. Power supplies shall be sized to furnish the total connected load in a worst-case condition plus 25% spare capacity.
 - 4. Voltage drop calculations for wiring runs demonstrating worst-case condition.
 - 5. NAC circuit design shall incorporate a 15% spare capacity for future expansion.
- D. The installation contractor shall submit for approval prior to installation of wire, a proposed color code for system conductors to allow rapid identification of circuit types.
- E. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- G. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, Applicator, manufacturer, fabricator, professional engineer, testing agency, and factory-authorized service representative.
- H. Source quality-control reports.
- I. Field quality-control reports.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Data: For all fire alarm equipment, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service:
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative from Fire Alarm Service Technology (FAST), Elmira, NY (607) 733-0404 to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

2. Prior to bid, the Electrical Contractor shall coordinate with the factory-authorized service representative to evaluate the existing system, and identify additional components required to support a fully functioning system, including spare capacities as outlined in this specification. All required devices, associated equipment and programming shall be included in the Electrical Contractor's bid, including, but not limited to:
 - a. Additional NAC power supplies required to support all new devices.
 - b. Battery calculations including additional batteries as needed for new devices.
 - c. Any additional initiating device hardware installed in the existing panel that is required for new devices.
 - d. An additional "sub-panel" to the FACP if needed and as determined by the factory-authorized service representative.
 - e. Software updates and required programming of the existing panel to accept all new devices.
 - f. Additional remote annunciator(s) as indicated on the drawings.
 - g. Coordination with kitchen hood fire suppression system installer, including any additional relays or hardware required.
 - h. Coordination with elevator installer and any required connections, hardware or programming as it relates to elevator recall.

B. Installer Qualifications:

1. Firm with a minimum three years documented experience installing fire alarm systems of the same scope, type and design as specified.
2. The contractor shall submit copies of all required Licenses and Bonds as required in the State of New York.
3. The contractor shall employ on staff a minimum of one NICET level II technician or a professional engineer, registered in the State of New York.
4. The contractor shall be qualified by UL for certifying fire alarm systems.
5. Contractors unable to comply with the provisions of Qualification of Installers shall present proof of engaging the services of a subcontractor qualified to furnish the required services.

C. Source Limitations: In the interest of job coordination and responsibilities the installing contractor shall contract with a single supplier for fire alarm equipment, engineering, programming, inspection and tests, and shall be capable of providing a "UL Listing Certificate" for the complete system.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified for testing indicated.

E. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E136.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Comply with all applicable Codes as they relate to the products, installation, testing and operation of the complete system.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to project site in original, unopened packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, and shelf life if applicable.
- B. Store materials inside, under cover, above ground, and kept dry and protected from physical damage until ready for use. Remove from site and discard wet or damaged materials.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Installed products or materials shall be free from any damage including, but not limited to, physical insult, dirt and debris, moisture, and mold damage.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install products or materials until spaces are enclosed and weather-tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire alarm equipment that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for one year.
- B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
 - 1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. At the Elmira City School District Elementary School, the existing Simplex 4010ES control panel(s) shall be upgraded to allow for Emergency Voice / Alarm Communication. New devices are to be added in areas of renovation only, as indicated on the drawings.
- B. The existing system shall be extended to serve the Pre-K addition. All areas of the addition shall be served by an Emergency Voice/ Alarm Communication System providing notification by both an alert tone followed by voice instruction, as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- C. The system shall include all required hardware, raceways, interconnecting wiring and software to accomplish the requirements of this specification and the contract drawings, whether or not specifically itemized herein.
- D. The system as specified shall be supplied, installed, tested and approved by the local Authority Having Jurisdiction, and turned over to the owner in an operational condition.
- E. All equipment furnished shall be new and the latest state of the art products of the existing installed manufacturer.

2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Batteries
 - 1. Fire Alarm System: Batteries shall be of sufficient capacity to provide power for the entire system upon loss of normal AC power for a period of 24 hours with (12) hours of alarm signal at the end this 24-hour period, as required by NFPA 72, Local Systems.
 - 2. Carbon Monoxide Detection System: Batteries shall be dedicated to the Carbon Monoxide Detection System as required by NFPA 72, Secondary Power Supply.
- B. Notification Appliance Circuits (NACs):

1. Two Independent Notification Appliance Circuits: Provided on basic module, polarized and rated at 1.5 amperes DC per circuit, individually overcurrent protected and supervised for opens, grounds, and short circuits.
 - a. Shall be capable of being wired Class B, Style Y.
 - b. With installation of optional Class A Option Module (CAOM), Shall be capable of being wired Class A, Style Z.
 2. Power Output: Shall be regulated so that UL Listed notification appliances with an operating voltage range of 17-26 VDC may be installed on the circuits.
 - a. Voltage: 24 VDC regulated.
 - b. Current: 1.5 amps, maximum alarm.
 3. Notification appliance circuits to provide synchronization of all strobe lights at a rate of 1Hz and shall operate the horns with a march time cadence signal. The circuit shall provide the capability to silence the audible signals, while maintaining the visual strobe signals. Notification circuits shall consist of a single pair of wires for each circuit. The ability to synchronize multiple notification circuits shall be provided.
 4. Provide additional NACs, as required, to supply power to all new devices that are being added to the existing system, and to maintain a 15% spare capacity for future expansion.
 5. Provide updated graphic display indicating new and renovated areas with room numbers as they physically appear at each space:
 - a. UV fade-resistant inks with unlimited color selection.
 - b. Heavy-duty aluminum anodized frame.
 - c. Security mounting hardware.
 - d. Polycarbonate clear protective window.
 - e. Approximately 24" x 18".
- C. Emergency Voice/Alarm Communication Systems and Mass Notification Systems.
1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 864.
 2. Add-on voice message capable unit to non-voice FACP.
 3. Capable of producing the following selectable options:
 - a. Multiple pre-audio tones.
 - b. Multiple pre-recorded audio messages or custom user recorded message.
 - c. Multiple post-audio tones.
 4. Strobe circuit activation.
 5. Internal push-to-talk microphone for operator control.
 6. Power: 120 VAC with cabinet mounted 12 Ah batteries.
 7. Class D amplifier providing 40W @ 25 or 70.7 VRMS.

2.3 INTELLIGENT INITIATING DEVICES

- A. General
1. All initiation devices shall be insensitive to initiating loop polarity. Specifically, the devices shall be insensitive to plus/minus voltage connections.
- B. Smoke Detectors – Standard Addressable
1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 268.
 2. The detector shall have a multicolor LED to streamline system maintenance/inspection by plainly indicating detector status as follows: green for normal operation, amber for maintenance required, red for alarm.
 3. The multi-criteria smoke detector shall be an intelligent digital photoelectric detector with a programmable heat detector. Detectors shall be listed for use as open area protective coverage, in duct installation and sampling assembly installation and shall be insensitive to air velocity changes. The detector communications shall allow the detector to provide alarm input to the system and alarm output from the system within four (4) seconds. So as to minimize the effort required by the installing and maintenance technician to appropriately configure the detector to ensure optimal system design, the detectors shall be programmable as application specific. Application settings shall be selected in software for a minimum of eleven environmental fire profiles unique to the devices installed location.

4. The detector shall be designed to eliminate the possibility of false indications caused by dust, moisture, RFI/EMI, chemical fumes and air movement while factoring in conditions of ambient temperature rise, obscuration rate changes and hot/cold smoke phenomenon into the alarm decision to give the earliest possible real alarm condition report.
 - a. The detector shall be guaranteed in writing not to false alarm when configured by the factory trained certified technician. The detector must provide up to 11 different environmental algorithms that allow the detector to provide superior false alarm immunity without the need for additional alarm verification delays.
 5. The intelligent smoke detector shall be capable of providing three distinct outputs from the control panel. The outputs shall be from an input of smoke obscuration, a thermal condition or a combination of obscuration and thermal conditions. The detector shall be designed to eliminate calibration errors associated with field cleaning of the chamber.
 6. The detector shall support the use of a relay, or LED remote indicator without requiring an additional software address. Low profile, white case shall not exceed 2.5 inches of extension below the finish ceiling.
 7. For the detector where required, there shall be available a locking kit and detector guard to prevent unauthorized detector removal.
 8. Where required, there shall be available a programmable remote lamp configurable to remotely duplicate the on-board LED status of another system device with the same software address.
- C. Heat Detectors – Addressable
1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 521.
 2. The detectors furnished shall have a listed spacing for coverage up to 2,500 square feet and shall be installed according to the requirements of NFPA 72 for open area coverage.
 3. Heat detector shall have the following temperature settings:
 - a. Fixed temperature at 135°F, 195°F.
 - b. Rate of Rise at 15°F/ min (8.3°C) at 135°F (57°C)
- D. Duct Smoke Detectors – Addressable
1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 268.
 2. For duct detector applications, the smoke detector shall be an intelligent digital photoelectric detector. Detectors shall be listed for use as open area protective coverage, in duct installation and sampling assembly installation and shall be insensitive to air velocity changes.
 3. The detector communications shall allow the detector to provide alarm input to the system and alarm output from the system within four (4) seconds. The detector shall be mounted in a duct detector housing listed for that purpose. The duct detector shall support the use of a remote test switch, relay or LED remote indicator. The duct detector shall be supplied with the appropriate sampling tubes to fit the installation.
 4. Where duct detectors are exposed to the weather a weatherproof enclosure shall be available. The duct housing cover shall include a test port for functional testing of the detector without cover removal. The duct housing shall include a cover removal switch capable of indicating cover removal status to the fire alarm control panel.
 5. Where required there shall be available a duct housing with an on-board relay. Also where required, there shall be a standalone housing available with its own power supply and test/reset switch that does not require connection to a fire alarm control panel.
 6. Duct smoke detector housing shall allow use in duct systems with air velocity ranging from 100 to 4,000 feet per minute, within temperature ranges of 32°F to 120°F per minute, and with relative humidity ranging from 0 to 95%.
 7. Duct Housings and Accessories:
 - a. Global Air Duct Housing for Conventional and Addressable Detectors
 - b. Global Air Duct Housing for Addressable P2 Detectors with Relay Application
 - c. Global Air Duct Housing for Conventional Detectors with Relay Application
 - d. Global Air Duct Housing for Conventional Detectors with Relay Application and Built-in Power Source
 - e. Weather-Proof housing to accommodate all versions of Global Air Duct Housings
 - f. Remote Test Lamp for Conventional Detectors
- E. Detector Bases – Addressable

1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 2075.
2. Detector bases shall be low profile twist lock type with screw clamp terminals and self-wiping contacts. Bases shall be installed on an industry standard, 4" square or octagonal electrical outlet box.
3. Detectors shall be listed per UL 268A as "direct in duct" without need for a duct housing.
4. Multi-Criteria Fire Detector shall be listed as providing CO detection in duct application.
5. Provide 6" Base.
6. Provide 4" Base.

F. Manual Pull Stations – Addressable

1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 38.
2. Provide Double action pull stations, unless otherwise indicated to be:
 - a. Break Glass.
 - b. Explosion Proof.
 - c. Weatherproof.
 - d. Reset key options.
 - e. Metal housing.
3. Intelligence for reporting address, identity, alarm and trouble to the fire alarm control panel.
4. Communications shall allow the station to provide alarm input to the system and alarm output from the system within less than four (4) seconds.
5. Connection: Terminal strip and pressure style screw terminals for field wiring.
6. Mounting: Flush or surface mount, as required.
 - a. Surface mount: Provide matching red enamel outlet box.
7. Location: As indicated on drawings.

G. Addressable Interface Devices

1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 864.
2. Addressable Interface Devices shall be provided to monitor contacts for such items as water-flow, tamper, and PIV switches connected to the fire alarm system. These interface devices shall be able to monitor a single or dual contacts. An address will be provided for each contact. Where remote supervised relay is required the interface shall be equipped with a SPDT relay rated for 4 amps resistive and 3.5 amps inductive.
3. Where needed a Conventional Zone Module shall connect to the Signal Line Circuit, which will allow the use of conventional initiation devices. This module shall have the ability to support up to 15 conventional smoke detectors and an unlimited number of contact devices. This module shall also be capable of monitoring Linear Beam detectors and conventional Flame detectors. Where required, there shall be an intrinsically safe detection solution for NEMA defined intrinsically safe installations compatible with the conventional zone module.
4. Single Device Damper Monitoring and Control: A single switch input shall be able to monitor all 3 states of a damper – open, closed, and in transit. A single device shall be able to fully control a damper (through the relay connected to the motor control) while also using its switch input for monitoring all 3 states of the damper.
5. Addressable input/output module shall be insensitive to polarity and shall have capability for up to 4 separate inputs (Class B) or 2 separate Class A inputs and 4 separate outputs (Class B).

2.4 DEVICE PROGRAMMING UNIT

- A. Device Programming Unit: The programming tool shall program the intelligent devices with addresses. The unit shall test the device to respond to its address. Dip switches and rotary switches shall not be acceptable. The programmer shall have a carrying case.

2.5 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. General

1. All notification appliances shall be listed for "Special Applications"
2. All notification appliances shall be backward compatible.
3. All inputs shall be compatible with standard, reverse polarity supervision of circuit wiring by a Fire-Alarm Control Panel (FACP).

EXISTING FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

- B. Strobes
 - 1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1971 for Indoor Fire Protection Service, and meeting the requirements of FCC Part 15, Class B.
 - 2. Strobe appliances shall produce a flash rate of one (1) flash per second over the Regulated Voltage Range, and shall incorporate a Xenon flashtube enclosed in a rugged Lexan® lens.
 - 3. The Strobe shall be of low-current design.
 - 4. The strobe intensity shall have field-selectable settings, and shall be rated per UL 1971 for 15/30/75/95cd or 115/177cd for ceiling mount where Multi-Candela appliances are specified.
 - 5. The selector switch for selecting the candela shall be tamper resistant.
 - 6. The appliance shall be compatible with sync modules or strobe power panel supply with built-in sync protocol when synchronization is required.
 - 7. The strobes shall not drift out of synchronization at any time during operation.
 - 8. If the sync module or Power Supply fails to operate, (i.e. - contacts remain closed), the strobe shall revert to a non-synchronized flash rate.
 - 9. The strobes shall be designed for indoor surface of flush mounting
 - 10. The Strobe Appliances shall incorporate a Patented, Integral Strobe Mounting Plate that shall allow mounting to single-gang, double-gang, 4-inch square, 100mm European type back boxes, or the surface back box.
 - 11. The Multi-Candela or Single-Candela Strobe Plate shall mount to either a standard, 4-inch square back box for flush mounting, or shall mount to a box for surface mounting.
- C. AC Horn
 - 1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 464.
 - 2. Material: Die-cast metal housing to protect the horn mechanism.
 - a. Finish: Textured enamel.
 - 3. Sound output: 95 dBA minimum at 10 feet.
 - 4. Mounting options shall include surface mounting for indoor or outdoor applications and semi-flush for indoor applications
 - 5. All models shall have screw terminal inputs for in / out field wiring.
- D. Mini Horn Appliances
 - 1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 464.
 - 2. Notification appliance shall be electronic, and shall have field-selectable settings for Temporal (Code 3) or continuous horn and support coded-systems operation.
 - 3. The anechoic sound pressure measurement on Temporal (Code 3) and Continuous Horn settings shall each be 87 dBA minimum at 24VDC.
 - 4. IN / OUT wiring using terminals that accept #12 to #18 AWG wiring.
 - 5. The appliances shall be mounted indoors, and mount on standard, single-gang electrical back boxes requiring no additional trim plates or adapters
- E. Horn and Horn Strobe Appliances
 - 1. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1971, UL 464, and meeting the requirements of FCC Part 15, Class B.
 - 2. Horn Strobe and standalone Horn Appliances shall have a minimum of three (3) field selectable setting for dBA levels, and shall have a choice of continuous or temporal (Code 3) audible outputs.
 - 3. Devices shall be of low-current design.
 - 4. Strobe portion of the appliance shall produce a flash rate of one (1) flash per second over the Regulated Input Voltage Range, and shall incorporate a Xenon flashtube enclosed in a rugged Lexan® lens.
 - 5. Strobe intensity, where Multi-Candela appliances are specified, shall have field-selectable settings, and shall be rated per UL 1971 for:
 - a. 15/30/75/110cd.
 - b. 135/185cd.
 - 6. The selector switch for selecting the candela setting shall be tamper resistant.
 - 7. The appliance, when synchronization is required, shall be compatible with sync modules or Power Supplies with built-in Sync Protocol.
 - 8. The strobes shall not drift out of synchronization at any time during operation.

9. The strobes shall revert to a non-synchronized flash-rate, if the sync module or Power Supply should fail to operate (i.e. – contacts remain closed).
10. All candela ratings represent minimum-effective Strobe intensity, based on UL 1971.

F. Speaker Strobe Appliances

1. Speaker Strobe Appliances shall meet and be listed for UL 1480.
2. Speaker shall operate on a standard 25VRMS or 70.7VRMS NAC using twisted / shielded wire.
3. Speaker shall have the following taps: 0.25W, 0.50W, 1.0W and 2.0W.
4. The speaker frequency shall be 400Hz to 4000Hz for fire alarm, and 125Hz to 12kHz for general signaling.
5. The speaker shall install directly to a 4 inch square, 1-1/2 inch deep box with 1-1/2 inch extension.
6. Strobe portion of the appliance shall produce a flash rate of one (1) flash per second over the Regulated Input Voltage Range, and shall incorporate a Xenon flashtube enclosed in a rugged Lexan® lens.
7. Strobe intensity, where Multi-Candela appliances are specified, shall have field-selectable settings, and shall be rated per UL 1971 for:
 - a. 15/30/75/110cd
 - b. 135/185cd
8. The selector switch for selecting the candela setting shall be tamper resistant.
9. The appliance, when synchronization is required, shall be compatible with sync modules or Power Supplies with built-in Sync Protocol.
10. The strobes shall not drift out of synchronization at any time during operation.
11. The strobes shall revert to a non-synchronized flash-rate, if the sync module or Power Supply should fail to operate (i.e. – contacts remain closed).
12. All notification appliances shall listed for Special Applications:
 - a. Strobes are designed to flash at 1-flash-per-second minimum over their "Regulated Input Voltage Range".
13. All candela ratings represent minimum-effective Strobe intensity, based on UL 1971.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70, NFPA 72 and NECA 1 - Standard of Good Workmanship in Electrical Contracting.
- B. Fasten equipment to structural members of building or metal supports attached to structure, or to concrete surfaces.
- C. In the event that limited energy cable installation is allowed, all cable runs shall be run at right angles to building walls, supported from structure at intervals not exceeding 3 feet and where installed in environmental air plenums, be rated for such use and tied/supported by components listed for environmental air plenums installation.
- D. Provide primary power for each panel from normal/ emergency panels as indicated on the Electrical Power Plans. Power shall be 120 VAC service, transformed through a two-winding, isolation type transformer and rectified to low voltage DC for operation of all circuits and devices.
- E. Voice Control Unit:

1. Provide Voice Control Unit and interconnection to existing Fire Alarm Control Panel.
2. Program notification zones and voice messages as directed by Owner.

3.3 INSTALLATION - CABLING

- A. Wherever possible, cables shall be concealed within wall or ceiling cavities.
- B. Provide cabling utilizing methods indicated:
 1. Within conduit as specified in Section 26 05 33.13:
 - a. Above any inaccessible ceiling system.
 - b. At any exposed area, unless noted otherwise.
 2. Within J-hooks or cable trays as specified in Section 26 05 29:
 - a. Above accessible ceiling systems.
 - b. In any mechanical or storage spaces with no ceiling system.
 3. Within surface mounted raceway as specified in Section 26 05 33.23:
 - a. For any surface mounted wall devices being installed on existing block walls where no usable pathway exists.
 4. Within enclosures:
 - a. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- C. Regardless of method utilized, install firestopping to preserve fire resistance ratings of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- D. Notify Architect and obtain approval prior to proceeding with installations that will not conform to methods outlined above, or that could result in aesthetically objectionable conditions.

3.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES AND WIRING DEVICES

- A. Boxes shall be installed plumb and firmly in position.
- B. Extension rings with blank covers shall be installed on junction boxes where required.
- C. Junction boxes served by concealed conduit shall be flush mounted.
- D. Upon initial installation, all wiring outlets, junction, pull and outlet boxes shall have dust covers installed. Dust covers shall not be removed until wiring installation when permanent dust covers or devices are installed.
- E. "Fire alarm system" decal or silk-screened label shall be applied to all junction box covers.

3.5 CONDUCTORS

- A. Each conductor shall be identified as shown on the drawings at each with wire markers at terminal points. Attach permanent wire markers within 2 inches of the wire termination. Marker legends shall be visible.
- B. All wiring shall be supplied and installed in compliance with the requirements of the National Electric Code, NFPA 70, Article 760, and that of the manufacturer.
- C. Wiring shall be in accordance with the approved color code for system conductors to allow rapid identification of circuit types.
- D. Wiring for strobe and audible circuits shall be a minimum 14 AWG, signal line circuits minimum 18 AWG twisted.
- E. All splices shall be made using solderless connectors. All connectors shall be installed in conformance with the manufacturer recommendations.

- F. Crimp-on type spade lugs shall be used for terminations of stranded conductors to binder screw or stud type terminals. Spade lugs shall have upset legs and insulation sleeves sized for the conductors.
- G. Wiring within sub panels shall be arranged and routed to allow accessibility to equipment for adjustment and maintenance.

3.6 DEVICES

- A. Relays and other devices to be mounted in auxiliary panels are to be securely fastened to avoid false indications and failures due to shock or vibration.
- B. Wiring within panels shall be arranged and routed to allow accessibility to equipment for adjustment and maintenance.
- C. All devices and appliances shall be mounted to or in an approved electrical box.
- D. Provide additional wiring and terminations as needed for any existing device or power supply requiring relocation due to space / room renovations and reconfiguration.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems.
- B. Permanently label or mark each conductor at both ends with permanent alphanumeric wire markers.
- C. A consistent color code for fire alarm system conductors throughout the installation.

3.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

3.9 ADDITIONAL COMPONENTS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Provide labor and materials to provide (2) additional Ionization Area Smoke Detectors and 250 linear feet of fire alarm circuitry (in addition to those shown on plans). Install at locations as directed by Engineer.
 - 2. Provide labor and materials to provide (2) additional Duct Smoke Detectors, 250 linear feet of fire alarm circuitry, and RTS (and control circuitry) in addition to those shown on plans. Install at locations as directed by Engineer.
 - 3. Provide labor and materials to provide (2) additional Rate of Rise Temperature Heat Detectors and 250 linear feet of fire alarm circuitry (in addition to those shown on plans). Install at locations as directed by Engineer.
 - 4. Provide labor and materials to provide (2) additional Fixed Temperature Heat Detectors and 250 linear feet of fire alarm circuitry (in addition to those shown on plans). Install at locations as directed by Engineer.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing General:
 - 1. All Alarm Initiating Devices shall be observed and logged for correct zone and sensitivity. These devices and their bases shall be tagged with adhesive tags located in an area not visible when installed, showing the initials of the installing technician and date.
 - 2. Wiring runs shall be tested for continuity, short circuits and grounds before system is energized. Resistance, current and voltage readings shall be made as work progresses.

3. The acceptance inspector shall be notified before the start of the required tests. All items found at variance with the drawings or this specification during testing or inspection by the acceptance inspector shall be corrected.
4. Test reports shall be delivered to the acceptance inspector as completed.
5. All test equipment, instruments, tools and labor required to conduct the system tests shall be made available by the installing contractor. The following equipment shall be a minimum for conducting the tests:
 - a. Ladders and scaffolds as required to access all installed equipment.
 - b. Multi-meter for reading voltage, current and resistance.
 - c. Two way radios, and flashlights.
 - d. A manufacturer recommended device for measuring air flow through air duct smoke detector sampling assemblies.
 - e. Decibel meter.
 - f. In addition to the testing specified to be performed by the installing contractor, the installation shall be subject to test by the acceptance inspector.

3.11 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. A written acceptance test procedure (ATP) for testing the fire alarm system components and installation will be prepared by the engineer in accordance with NFPA 72 and this specification. The contractor shall be responsible for the performance of the ATP, demonstrating the function of the system and verifying the correct operation of all system components, circuits, and programming.
- B. A program matrix shall be prepared by the installing contractor referencing each alarm input to every output function affected as a result of an alarm condition on that input.
- C. The installing contractor prior to the ATP shall prepare a complete listing of all device labels for alphanumeric annunciator displays.
- D. Loop Resistance Tests: Measure and record the resistance of each circuit with each pair of conductors in the circuit short-circuited at the farthest point from the circuit origin. The tests shall be witnessed by the owner and test results recorded for use at the final acceptance test.
- E. Preliminary Testing: Conduct preliminary tests to ensure that all devices and circuits are functioning properly. After preliminary testing is complete, provide a letter certifying that the installation is complete and fully operable. The letter shall state that each initiating and indicating device was tested in place and functioned properly. The letter shall also state that all panel functions were tested and operated properly. The Contractor and an authorized representative from each supplier of equipment shall be in attendance at the preliminary testing to make necessary adjustments.
- F. Final Acceptance Test: Notify the owner in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing. Submit request for test at least 14 calendar days prior to the test date. A final acceptance test will not be scheduled until Megger test results, the loop resistance test results, and the submittals required in Part 1 are provided to the owner. Test the system in accordance with the procedures outlined in NFPA 72.
 1. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's operating and maintenance manual.
 2. Test each initiating and indicating device and circuit for proper operation and response. Disconnect the confirmation feature for smoke detectors during tests to minimize the amount of smoke or test gas needed to activate the detector.
 3. Test the system for all specified functions in accordance with the contract drawings and specifications and the manufacturer's operating and maintenance manual.
 4. Visually inspect all wiring.
 5. Verify that all software control and data files have been entered or programmed into the FACP.
 6. Verify that Shop Drawings reflecting as-built conditions are accurate.
 7. Measure the current in circuits to assure that there is the calculated spare capacity for the circuits.
 8. Measure voltage readings for circuits to assure that voltage drop is not excessive.
 9. Measure the voltage drop at the most remote appliance on each notification appliance circuit.

EXISTING FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

- G. The acceptance inspector shall use the system record drawings in combination with the documents specified in this specification during the testing procedure to verify operation as programmed. In conducting the ATP, the acceptance inspector shall request demonstration of any or all input and output functions. The items tested shall include but not be limited to the following:
1. System wiring shall be tested to demonstrate correct system response and correct subsequent system operation in the event of:
 - a. Open, shorted and grounded signal line circuits.
 - b. Open, shorted and grounded notification, releasing circuits.
 - c. Primary power or battery disconnected.
 2. System notification appliances shall be demonstrated as follows:
 - a. All alarm notification appliances actuate as programmed.
 - b. Audibility and visibility at required levels.
 3. System indications shall be demonstrated as follows:
 - a. Correct message display for each alarm input at the control display.
 - b. Correct annunciator light for each alarm input at each annunciator and graphic display as shown on the drawings.
 - c. Correct history logging for all system activity.
 4. System off-site reporting functions shall be demonstrated as follows:
 - a. Correct zone transmitted for each alarm input.
 - b. Trouble signals received for disconnect.
 5. Secondary power capabilities shall be demonstrated as follows:
 - a. System primary power shall be disconnected for a period of time as specified herein. At the end of that period, an alarm condition shall be created and the system shall perform as specified for a period as specified.
 - b. System primary power shall be restored for forty-eight hours and system-charging current shall be normal trickle charge for a fully charged battery bank.
 - c. System battery voltages and charging currents shall be checked at the fire alarm control panel.

3.12 DOCUMENTATION

- A. System documentation shall be furnished to the owner and shall include but not be limited to the following:
1. System record drawings and wiring details including one set of reproducible drawings, and a Flash drive with copies of the record drawings in PDF format.
 2. System operation, installation and maintenance manuals.
 3. System matrix showing interaction of all input signals with output commands.
 4. Documentation of system voltage, current and resistance readings taken during the installation, testing and ATP phases of the system installation.
 5. System program showing system functions, controls and labeling of equipment and devices.

3.13 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace devices and panel components that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 31 10 00
SITE CLEARING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal or protection of designated trees, shrubs, and other plant life.
- B. Selective removal and trimming.
- C. Repair and restoration.
- D. Removal of existing surface debris.
- E. Removing designated paving, curbs.
- F. Demolition and removal of above grade improvements.
- G. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removal/abandoned utilities.
- H. Excavating of subsoil and topsoil.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Material for filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as result of removal operations.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 29 CFR 1910.266 - Logging Operations; Current Edition.
- B. ANSI A300 Part 1 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations - Tree, Shrub, and Other Woody Plant Management - Standard Practices (Pruning); 2017.
- C. ANSI A300 Part 5 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations – Tree, Shrub and Other Woody Plant Maintenance Standard Practices (Management of Trees and Shrubs During Site Planning, Site Development, and Construction); 2019.
- D. ANSI Z133 - American National Standard for Arboricultural Operations - Safety Requirements; 2017.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Remove and legally dispose of items except those indicated to be reinstalled, salvaged, or to remain the Owner's property.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Items indicated to be removed and salvaged remain the Owner's property. Remove, clean, and pack or crate items to protect against damage. Identify contents of containers and deliver to Owner's designated storage area.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Remove items indicated; clean, service, and otherwise prepare them for reuse; store and protect against damage. Reinstall items in locations indicated.

1.5 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, demolished materials shall become the Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site with further disposition at the Contractor's option.

- B. Historical items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to the Owner, which may be encountered during demolition, remain the Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to the Owner.
- C. The Contractor is responsible for cutting all marked trees to log length and stock piling the logs for the property owner on site at property owners designated location.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Conduct site clearing operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Protection of Existing Improvements: Provide protections necessary to prevent damage to existing improvements indicated to remain in place.
 - 1. Protect improvements on adjoining properties and on Owner's property.
 - 2. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to property owners.
- C. Protection of Existing Trees and Vegetation: Protect existing trees and other vegetation indicated to remain in place, against unnecessary cutting, breaking or skinning of roots, skinning or bruising of bark, smothering of trees by stockpiling construction materials or excavated materials within drip line, excess foot or vehicular traffic, or parking of vehicles within drip line. Provide temporary guards to protect trees and vegetation to remain at drip line.
- D. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged, and store on Owner's premises where indicated or directed.
- E. If indicated, Buildings to be demolished or relocated will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of Work.
- F. If indicated, Owner assumes no responsibility for actual condition of buildings to be demolished or relocated.
- G. Owner will maintain conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose as far as practical.
- H. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site will not be permitted.
- I. Explosives: Use of explosives will not be permitted.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Site Plan:
 - 1. Indicate vegetation removal limits.
 - 2. Indicate areas for temporary construction and field offices.
- C. Clearing Firm Qualification Statement: Documentation of specialized experience.
- D. Schedule of demolition activities indicating the following:
 - 1. The Owner reserves the right to claim any material scheduled for demolition. No demolition materials are to be removed from job site without approval of the Construction Manager.
 - 2. Detailed sequence of demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
 - 3. Dates for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
- E. Inventory of items to be removed and salvaged.
- F. Inventory of items to be removed by Owner.

- G. Photographs and videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.
- H. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 - 1. Identify and accurately locate capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Engage an experienced firm that has successfully completed demolition Work similar to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before starting demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clearing Firm Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least five years of documented experience.

1.9 SCHEDULING

- A. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's on-site operations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Sedimentation Barrier: See Section 01 57 13 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.
- B. Herbicides: Not allowed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify existing plant life designated to remain is tagged or identified.
- C. Identify salvage area for placing removed materials.
- D. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- E. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of demolition required.
- F. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
- G. Survey the condition of the building to determine whether removing any element might result in a structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of the structure or adjacent structures during demolition or relocation.
- H. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from demolition activities.

3.2 INITIAL PREPARATION

- A. Call Local Utility One Call Center @ 811 in the State of New York, not less than three working days before performing Work.
 - 1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Locate, identify, and protect utilities indicated to remain, from damage.
- B. Protect trees, plant growth, and features designated to remain, as final landscaping as specified in Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
- C. Protect bench marks, survey control points, and existing structures from damage or displacement.

3.4 UTILITY SERVICES

- A. Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during demolition operations.
- B. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or operating facilities, except when authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and to governing authorities.
- C. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
- D. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services serving structures to be demolished.
- E. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- F. Utility Requirements: Refer applicable specification sections for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utility services. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

3.5 PREPARATION

- A. Drain, purge, or otherwise remove, collect, and dispose of chemicals, gases, explosives, acids, flammables, or other dangerous materials before proceeding with demolition operations.
- B. Conduct demolition operations and remove debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
- D. Conduct demolition operations to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain. Ensure safe passage of people around demolition area.
- E. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
- G. Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of buildings to be demolished or related and adjacent buildings to remain.
- H. Strengthen or add new supports when required.

3.6 POLLUTION CONTROLS

- A. Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit the spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental protection regulations.
- B. Do not create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution, when using water.
- C. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- D. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level.
- E. Clean adjacent buildings and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before start of demolition.

3.7 CLEARING

- A. General: Remove trees, shrubs, grass and other vegetation, improvements, or obstructions as required to permit installation of new construction. Remove similar items elsewhere on site or premises as specifically indicated. "Removal" includes digging out and off-site disposing of stumps, roots, and branches.
- B. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner, where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
- C. Topsoil: Topsoil is defined as friable clay loam surface soil found in a depth of not less than 4 inches. Satisfactory topsoil is reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, stones, and other objects over 1/2" inch in diameter, and without weeds, roots, and other objectionable material.
- D. Do not remove wet topsoil.
- E. Strip topsoil to whatever depths encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other objectionable material.
 - 1. Do not remove topsoil from site.
- F. Remove heavy growths of grass from areas before stripping.
- G. Where existing trees are indicated to remain, leave existing topsoil in place within drip lines to prevent damage to root system.
- H. Stockpile topsoil in storage piles. Construct storage piles on site to a depth not exceeding 8 feet and protect from erosion. Cover storage piles, if required, to prevent wind erosion.
- I. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
- J. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 6 inches loose depth, and thoroughly compact to a density equal to adjacent original ground.
- K. Removal of Improvements: Remove existing above-grade and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
- L. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of Work to minimum depth of 12 inches.
- M. Clear undergrowth and deadwood, without disturbing subsoils.
- N. Removed timber and stumps that are unwanted by the Owner or landowner shall be properly disposed of.

3.8 REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, rock, and extracted plant life from site.

- B. Remove paving, walks and curbs as indicated on Drawings. Neatly saw cut edges at right angle to surface and at right angles to adjoining structures. Saw cut concrete pavement as indicated at locations shown on drawings nearest to existing joint.
- C. Remove abandoned utilities. Indicated removal termination point for underground utilities on Record Documents.
- D. Continuously clean-up and remove waste materials from site. Do not allow materials to accumulate on site.
- E. Do not burn or bury materials on site. Leave site in clean condition.

3.9 DEMOLITION

- A. Building Demolition: Demolish buildings completely and remove all building debris from the site. Use methods required to complete Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
- B. Locate demolition equipment throughout the building and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- C. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. On-site storage or sale of removed items is prohibited.
- D. Demolish concrete and masonry in small sections.
- E. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
- F. Break up and remove concrete slab on grade, unless or shown to remain on drawings.
- G. Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction, as follows:
- H. Unless directed otherwise completely remove below-grade construction, including foundation walls and footings, and concrete slabs.
- I. Break up and remove below-grade concrete slabs, unless indicated to remain.
- J. Filling Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from demolition of buildings and pavements with soil materials as required.
- K. Damages: Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by demolition operations.

3.10 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with local requirements; obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are to remain.
- E. Protect existing vegetation to remain from damage and monitor according to ANSI A300 Part 5.
- F. Install sedimentation barrier according to Section 01 57 13 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.

3.11 SELECTIVE REMOVAL AND TRIMMING

- A. Selective Removal: Individual tree and shrub identified for removal as indicated on drawings according to 29 CFR 1910.266.

- B. Selective Trimming: Individual limbs and branches cut back according to ANSI A300 Part 1 identified for removal as indicated on drawings. Follow recommendations of ANSI Z133 and best local practices for species involved.

3.12 REMOVED VEGETATION PROCESSING

- A. Do not burn, bury, landfill, or leave on-site, except as indicated on drawings.
- B. Trees: Sell if marketable.

3.13 REPAIR AND RESTORATION

- A. Remaining Existing Facilities, Utilities, and Site Features: If damaged due to this work, repair or replace to original condition.
- B. Vegetation: Replace damaged or destroyed vegetation identified to remain as indicated on drawings at no cost to Owner:
 - 1. Outside removal limits.

3.14 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Remove unused stockpiled subsoil. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing water.
- C. Leave site clean and ready to receive work.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 31 22 00
GRADING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal of subsoil.
- B. Rough grading cutting, filling, rough contouring, compacting, and finished grading the site for site structures, building pads, and trenches.
- C. Fine grading.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 10 00 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2017 (Reapproved 2025).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Materials Source: Submit name of imported materials source.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- B. Maintain one copy of all construction documents on site.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Gravel: Excavated on-site.
 - 1. Graded according to ASTM D2487 Group Symbol GW, GP, or SP.
- B. Other Fill Materials: See Section 31 23 23.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

- B. Verify survey bench mark and intended elevations for grading areas are as indicated.
- C. Verify the absence of standing or ponding water.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Call Local Utility One Call Center @ 811 in the State of New York, not less than three working days before performing Work.
 - 1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.
- B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- C. Stake and flag locations of known utilities.
- D. Locate, identify, and protect above- and below-grade utilities to remain.
- E. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.
- F. Provide temporary means and methods to remove standing or ponding water from areas prior to grading.
- G. Protect site features to remain, including but not limited to bench marks, survey control points, and fences.

3.3 ROUGH GRADING

- A. Excavate and fill subgrade material to elevations indicated on plans.
- B. Horizontally bench existing slopes greater than 1:4.
- C. Remove and replace unsuitable materials as specified fill.

3.4 FINE GRADING

- A. Scrape and spread subgrade material uniformly smooth and without disruptions as indicated on drawings.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

3.6 REPAIR AND RESTORATION

- A. Existing Facilities, Utilities, and Site Features to Remain: If damaged due to this work, repair or replace to original condition.
- B. Trees to Remain: If damaged due to this work, trim broken branches and repair bark wounds; if root damage has occurred, obtain instructions from Architect as to remedy.
- C. Other Existing Vegetation to Remain: If damaged due to this work, replace with vegetation of equivalent species and size.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 31 23 23 for compaction density testing.
- B. Perform laboratory material tests in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.

- C. Perform in place compaction tests in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
 - 1. Density Tests.
 - 2. Moisture Tests.
- D. When tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Leave site clean and raked, ready to receive work.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 31 23 16
EXCAVATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and protection.
- B. Dewatering.
- C. Excavation.
- D. Soil densification

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 29 CFR 1926 - Safety and Health Regulations for Construction; Current Edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Delegated Design Documents: Support and protection plan drawings and calculations sealed by designer.
- C. Field Quality Control Submittals: Document visual inspection of loadbearing excavated surfaces.
- D. Shop Drawings: Indicated soil densification grid for each size and configuration footing requiring soils densification.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fill Material Tests: A sieve analysis, loss on ignition, and magnesium sulfate soundness test shall be taken for each type of material from each source of material. Tests will be in accordance with appropriate ASTM methods. Tests shall be taken by an approved independent laboratory and results submitted directly to the Architect before such material is used for fill. Material which fails to meet the specified requirements shall be removed from the site. Payment for tests shall be as described in General Requirements.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions: Do not perform excavation during periods of heavy rain as directed by Architect.
- B. Utility Location: Notify Call Before You Dig (811) before excavation to request approximate underground utility marking.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

2.1 NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify survey bench mark elevations are as indicated on drawings.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- B. Protect survey bench marks, control points, and monuments from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.
- C. Protect existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.
- D. Protect plants, lawns, and other features to remain.
- E. Locate and identify known utilities to remain and protect from damage.
- F. Call Local Utility One Call Center @ 811 in the State of New York, not less than three working days before performing Work.
 - 1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.
- G. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.

3.3 SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

- A. Excavation Safety: Comply with OSHA's Excavation Standard, 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P.

3.4 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and groundwater from entering excavations and surrounding areas.
- B. Dispose of water without causing surface erosion, sediment buildup, or endangering public health or property.

3.5 EXCAVATION

- A. General Excavation:
 - 1. Excavate to indicated contours, elevations, and grades.
- B. Excavation to accommodate foundations and underground utilities.
 - 1. Excavate to specified elevations.
- C. Notify Architect of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected work in area until notified to resume work.
- D. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cubic yard measured by volume.
- E. Compact disturbed load bearing soil in direct contact with foundations to original bearing capacity; perform compaction in accordance with Section 31 23 23 and Section 31 23 16.13.
- F. Repair or replace any items indicated to remain damaged by excavation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Provide access for visual inspection of loadbearing excavated surfaces by Architect before proceeding with work.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Divert surface water away from excavations.
- B. Keep excavations free of standing water.
- C. Maintain stability of banks and loose soils; prevent from falling into excavations.
- D. Maintain excavations in satisfactory, undisturbed condition.
- E. Protect bottom of excavations from freezing.
- F. Protect structures, utilities and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards created by earth operations.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 31 23 16.13
TRENCHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Trench excavation.
- B. Backfill and compaction.
- C. Compacted fill from top of utility bedding to subgrade elevations.
- D. Backfilling and compaction.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 10 00 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 22 00 - Grading.
- C. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- D. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Utility: Any buried pipe, duct, conduit, or cable.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop; 2025.
- B. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- C. ASTM D1556/D1556M - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method; 2024.
- D. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2,700 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- E. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2015.
- F. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2023.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Samples: 10 lb sample of each type of fill; submit in air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
- C. Source Quality Control Submittals: Submit name of imported materials source.
 - 1. Results of gradation tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- D. Field Quality Control Submittals:

1. Results of compaction density tests.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Data: Submit data for geo-textile fabric indicating fabric and construction.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify Products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for packaging waste requirements.
- B. Deliver fill to project site in advance of need.
- C. When fill materials need on-site storage, locate stockpiles where indicated on drawings.
 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
 2. Prevent contamination.
 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.

1.9 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Coordination and project conditions.
- B. Verify work associated with lower elevation utilities is complete before placing higher elevation utilities.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILL MATERIALS

- A. See Section 31 23 23 - Fill.
- B. See Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading, for topsoil.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Geotextile, Non-biodegradable, woven.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Test fill materials in accordance with specified standard before delivery to site.
- C. Nonconforming Materials: Change and retest.
- D. Provide materials of each type from same source or as directed by Architect.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify survey benchmarks and intended elevations for work are as indicated on drawings.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- B. See Section 31 10 00 for site clearing and topsoil removal.

3.3 TRENCH EXCAVATION

- A. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water collection.
- B. Notify Architect of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected work in area until notified to resume.
- C. General: Cut trenches neat and clean.
 - 1. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.
 - 2. Do not interfere with 45-degree bearing splay of foundations.
 - 3. Cut trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.
 - 4. Hand trim excavations and remove loose matter.
 - 5. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
 - 6. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- D. Utility Preparation: Rake trench bottom to uniform grade.
 - 1. Remove unsuitable subgrade and backfill.
 - 2. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than subsequent fill material requirements.
- E. Maintain trenches and prevent loose soil or rocks from entering.
- F. Remove excavated material that is unsuitable for re-use from site.
- G. Remove excess excavated material from site.

3.4 BACKFILL AND COMPACTION

- A. Backfill to contours and elevations indicated on drawings using unfrozen materials.
- B. Fill to subgrade elevations unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- C. Employ placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
- D. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- F. Granular Fill: Place and compact material in equal continuous layers not exceeding 6 inches compacted depth.
- G. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 feet, unless noted otherwise. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope into level areas.
- H. Correct areas that are over-excavated.
 - 1. Other Areas: Backfill, flush to required elevation, compacted to minimum 97 percent of maximum dry density.
- I. Compaction Density Unless Otherwise Specified or Indicated:

TRENCHING

1. Under paving, slabs-on-grade, and similar construction: 97 percent of maximum dry density.
2. At Other Locations: 95 percent of maximum dry density.

- J. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.
- K. Place geotextile fabric over bedding fill prior to placing subsequent fill materials.
- L. Place fill material in continuous layers and compact in accordance with schedule at end of this section.
- M. Employ placement method that does not disturb or damage foundation perimeter drainage, utilities in trench, and other below grade improvements.
- N. Do not leave open trenching at end of working day.
- O. Protect open trenches at all times during installation of trenching.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Tolerances.
- B. Maximum Variation from Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- C. Maximum Variation from Top Surface of Backfilling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for general requirements for field inspection and testing.
- B. Perform compaction density testing on compacted fill in accordance with ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, or ASTM D6938.
- C. Evaluate results in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D1557 modified proctor, AASHTO T 180, or ASTM D698 standard proctor.
- D. Nonconforming Work: For failed tests, remove work, replace, and retest.
- E. Frequency of Tests: Backfill mid-point and top.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Stockpile excavated material re-used in area designated on-site; see Section 31 22 00.
- C. Remove excavated material that is not required or unsuitable for re-use from site.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Divert surface water away from excavations.
- B. Keep excavations free of standing water.
- C. Maintain stability of banks and loose soils; prevent from falling into excavations.
- D. Maintain excavations in neat and square, undisturbed condition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 19
DEWATERING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Dewatering system.
- B. System operation and maintenance.
- C. Water disposal.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

- A. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation
- B. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching
- C. Section 32 11 20 - Subbase and Aggregate Base Courses

1.3 REFERENCES STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2024a.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dewatering includes the following:
 - 1. Lowering of ground water table and intercepting horizontal water seepage to prevent ground water from entering excavations trenches.
 - 2. Disposing of removed water.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide dewatering system to permit Work to be completed on dry and stable subgrade.
 - 1. Install wells to dewater and relieve hydrostatic pressure within strata.
- B. Furnish standby equipment stored at Project site and ready for immediate use upon failure of dewatering equipment. Provide the following standby equipment:
 - 1. Dewatering Centrifugal Pumps;
 - 2. Dewatering Turbine Pumps;
 - 3. Pump Power Units;
 - 4. Dewatering Jet Eductor Pressure Pumps;
 - 5. Portable Electric Generators;

1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design dewatering systems to:
 - 1. Lower water table within areas of excavation to elevation minimum 2 feet below bottom of excavation to permit Work to be completed on dry and stable subgrade.
 - 2. Relieve hydrostatic pressures in confined water bearing strata below excavation to eliminate risk of uplift or other instability of excavation.
 - 3. Prevent damage to adjacent properties, buildings, structures, utilities, and facilities from construction operations.
 - 4. Prevent loss of fines, quick condition, or softening of foundation subgrade.
 - 5. Maintain stability of sides and bottoms of excavations and trenches.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: For submittals procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by professional engineer.
 - 1. Indicate dewatering system layout, well depths, well screen lengths, dewatering pump locations, pipe sizes and capacities, grades, filter sand gradations, surface water control devices, valves, and water disposal method and location.
 - 2. Indicate primary and standby power system location and capacity.
 - 3. Indicate layout and depth of monitoring wells and flow measuring devices for system performance measurement.
 - 4. Include detailed description of dewatering and monitoring system installation procedures and maintenance of equipment.
 - 5. Include description of emergency procedures to follow when problems arise.
- C. Product Data: Submit data for each of the following:
 - 1. Dewatering Pumps: Indicate sizes, capacities, priming method, motor characteristics.
- D. Design Data: Signed and sealed by professional engineer.
 - 1. Indicate design values, analyses, and calculations to support design.
 - 2. Include description and profile of geology, soil, and groundwater conditions.
- E. Field Reports: Test and monitoring reports as specified in Field Quality Control article.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for submittals.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations and depths of capped wells and piping abandoned in place.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for the following:
 - 1. Drilling and abandoning of wells used for dewatering systems.
 - 2. Water discharge and disposal from pumping operations.
- B. Obtain permit from EPA under National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), and/or New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (NYSDEC), State Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (SPDES), General permit for storm water discharge from construction sites.
- C. The Contractor may be required to prepare a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) to gain approval from the NYSDEC for dewatering discharge.
- D. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section documented experience and responsible for design, operation, and maintenance of dewatering system.
 - 1. Assume sole responsibility for dewatering and surface water control systems and for loss or damage resulting from partial or complete failure of protective measures and settlement or resultant damage caused by ground water control operations.
- E. Design, install, and monitor operation of dewatering under direct supervision of Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in the State of New York.

1.10 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Convene minimum one week prior to commencing work of this section.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Coordinate work to permit the following construction operations to be completed on dry stable substrate.
 - 1. Excavation for structures specified in Section 31 23 16.
 - 2. Trenching specified in Section 31 23 16.13

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DEWATERING EQUIPMENT

- A. Select dewatering equipment to meet specified performance requirements.

2.2 MONITORING EQUIPMENT

- A. Flow Measurement: Furnish devices as follows, if required by permit:
 - 1. Pitometer installed on discharge of pipe of from each well.
 - 2. Pitometer installed to measure flow from entire dewatering system.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Valves and Fittings: Furnish valves and fittings to isolate each well from header pipe and to prevent loss of pump prime.
- B. Grout: Mixture of portland cement and bentonite clay or sand suitable for sealing abandoned wells and piping.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Call Local Utility One Call Center @ 811 in the State of New York, not less than three working days before performing Work.
 - 1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect existing adjacent buildings, structures, and improvements from damage caused by dewatering operations.

3.3 DEWATERING SYSTEM

- A. Install dewatering system in accordance with shop drawings, and industry standards.
- B. Locate system components to allow continuous dewatering operations without interfering with installation of permanent Work and existing public rights-of-way, sidewalks, and adjacent buildings, structures, and improvements.
- C. Install self jetting well points in sizes indicated by driving and jetting to depth indicated.
- D. While drilling and installing well keep bore hole filled with natural or organic drilling fluid. Bentonite clay drilling fluid is not permitted.

- E. Attach well screen to riser pipe. Attach centralizers to riser pipe at maximum 20 feet spacing to keep screen and riser centered in bore hole. Insert well screen and riser pipe into well to elevation indicated.
- F. Install sand filter surrounding well screen and to minimum 2 feet above top of well screen.
- G. Develop wells by over pumping to remove clay, silt, and sand from well screen and immediate vicinity of bore hole.
- H. Test well for proper water flow through well screen and pumping rate for dewatering system operation. Repeat development until well meets performance requirements.
- I. Cover and seal top of well until pump is installed.
- J. Install pumps in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 SYSTEM OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Operate dewatering system continuously until backfilling is complete.
- B. Provide 24-hour supervision of dewatering system by personnel skilled in operation, maintenance, and replacement of system components.
- C. Conduct daily observation of dewatering system and monitoring system. Make required repairs and perform scheduled maintenance.
- D. Fill fuel tanks before tanks reach 25 percent capacity.
- E. Start emergency generators at least twice each week to check operating condition.
- F. When dewatering system cannot control water within excavation, notify Architect/Engineer and stop excavation work.
 - 1. Supplement or modify dewatering system and provide other remedial measures to control water within excavation.
 - 2. Demonstrate dewatering system operation complies with performance requirements before resuming excavation operations.
- G. Modify dewatering and surface water control systems when operation causes or threatens to cause damage to new construction, existing site improvements, adjacent property, or adjacent water wells.
- H. Correct unanticipated pressure conditions affecting dewatering system performance.
- I. Do not discontinue dewatering operations without Architect/Engineer's approval.

3.5 WATER DISPOSAL

- A. Discharge water into drainage channels and settling basins.

3.6 SYSTEM REMOVAL

- A. Remove dewatering system after dewatering operations are discontinued.
- B. Cut off and cap abandoned wells minimum 36 inches below completed subgrade elevation.
- C. Fill abandoned piping with grout.
- D. Repair damage caused by dewatering and surface water control systems or resulting from failure of systems to protect property.
- E. Submit a Notice of Termination (NOT) to NYSDEC

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements and 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Monitor ground water discharge for contamination while performing pumping in vicinity of potentially contaminated sites. Sample and test water weekly for contaminants.
- C. Survey existing adjacent buildings, structures, and improvements weekly to detect movement in comparison to original elevations during dewatering operations.
 - 1. Notify Architect/Engineer immediately of measured movement.
- D. Submit initial installation reports including the following:
 - 1. Installation and development reports and pumps.
 - 2. Initial dewatering flow rates.
- E. Submit weekly monitoring reports including the following:
 - 1. Dewatering flow rates.
 - 2. Test reports of discharge water analysis.
 - 3. Maintenance records for dewatering and surface water control systems.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 31 23 23
FILL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Filling, backfilling, and compacting for footings, slabs-on-grade, paving, and utilities within the building.
- B. Backfilling and compacting for utilities outside the building to utility main connections.
- C. Filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal (demolition) operations.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 22 00 - Grading: Site grading.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation: Removal and handling of soil to be re-used.
- C. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching: Excavating for utility trenches outside the building to utility main connections.
- D. Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade Elevations: Indicated on drawings.
- B. Subgrade Elevations: 6 inches below finish grade elevations indicated on drawings, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop; 2025.
- B. ASTM C136/C136M - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2025.
- C. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- D. ASTM D1556/D1556M - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method; 2024.
- E. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2,700 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- F. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2015.
- G. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2017 (Reapproved 2025).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data for geotextile fabric indicating fabric and construction.

- C. Soil Samples: 10 pounds sample of each type of fill; submit in air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
 - 1. Provide test of topsoil at a rate of one sample per 100 cubic yards.
 - 2. Stockpiled on-site topsoil shall be sampled from multiple locations within the stockpile.
- D. Materials Sources: Submit name of imported materials source.
- E. Fill Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
 - 1. Fill Composition Test Reports shall be conducted within twelve months prior to submission.
- F. Compaction Density Test Reports.
- G. Testing Agency Qualification Statement.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing testing and inspections of the type specified in this section.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. When fill materials need to be stored on site, locate stockpiles where designated.
 - 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
 - 2. Prevent contamination.
 - 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion, deterioration, and offsite impacts of materials.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILL MATERIALS

- A. General Fill: Native or imported material.
 - 1. Material used to meet grade, unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. Free of lumps larger than 3 inches, rocks larger than 3 inches, organics, trash, and debris.
 - 3. Complying with ASTM D2487 Group Symbol GW, GP, GM, SM, SW, or SP.
- B. Select Native Fill: Subsoil excavated on-site.
 - 1. Ungraded.
 - 2. Free of lumps larger than 6 inches, rocks larger than 6 inches, organics, trash, and debris.
 - 3. Complying with ASTM D2487 Group Symbol GW, GP, GM, SM, SW, or SP.
- C. Structural Fill: Conforming to DOT Standards in the State of New York.
 - 1. Structural fill shall meet all requirements specified for Type 2, (Item 733-0402) of the NYSDOT Standard Specification.
- D. Granular Fill: Coarse aggregate, conforming to DOT Standards in the State of New York.
 - 1. Granular fill shall meet all requirements specified for Type 2 (Crushed Ledgerock) or Type 4 Subbase in the NYSDOT Standard Specification.
 - a. Where use of recycled materials is indicated on Drawings, refer to NYSDOT Standard Specifications (Section 733-19 - Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material).
- E. Granular Fill - Pea Gravel: Natural stone; washed, free of clay, shale, organic matter.

- F. Sand- Fill Type Cushion Sand: Natural river or bank sand; free of silt, clay, loam, friable or soluble materials, and organic matter.
1. Graded in accordance with ASTM C136/C136M; within the following limits:
 - a. 1/4 inch sieve: 100 percent passing.
 - b. No. 50 sieve: 0 to 35 percent passing.
 - c. No. 100 sieve: 0 to 10 percent passing.

G. Topsoil: See Section 32 91 19.

H. Drainage Fill: Material shall consist of crushed stone or screened gravel:

1. Under Drain Filter: Meeting all requirements specified for Type 1, (Item 733-2001) of the NYSDOT Standard Specification:

U.S. Sieve No.	Percent Passing by Weight
1 inch	100
1/2 inch	30-100
1/4 inch	0-30
No. 10	0-10
No 20	0-5

- I. Pipe Bedding Stone: Material shall consist of crushed stone:
 1. Meeting all requirements specified for Type 1 and Type 2 (Item 703-4) of the NYSDOT Standard Specification mixed in a 50/50 proportion.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Geotextile Fabric: Non-biodegradable, woven, fabric ; 500X manufactured by Mirafi , or approved equal.
- B. Filter Fabric: Non-biodegradable, non-woven, fabric; Mirafi 140N, or approved equal.
- C. Geotextile Fabric for Perforated Drain Pipe: Non-biodegradable, non-woven, fabric; Mirafi 140N, or approved equal.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for testing and analysis of soil material.
- B. Where fill materials are specified by reference to a specific standard, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- C. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.
- B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- C. See Section 31 22 00 for additional requirements.
- D. Verify subdrainage, dampproofing, or waterproofing installation has been inspected.
- E. Verify areas to be filled are not compromised with surface or ground water.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Scarify subgrade surface to a depth of 8 inches.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with Fill Type directed by Owner's Representative.
- C. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- D. Until ready to fill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.
- E. Under structural elements and paving, the subgrade and subbase shall be proof rolled. Contact Engineer or Owners representative 24 hours before testing. If subgrade stabilization or undercutting is designed for the project, then proof rolling shall be used to verify the undercut replacement material stability.
- F. Proof rolling deflections and soil conditions that are observed during construction determine if the planned subgrade treatment must be adjusted. Adjustment of subgrade treatment to fit field conditions is essential and is the responsibility of the contractor.
- G. When rutting and deflection occur under wheels of 10-wheel dump truck engineer or representative will require corrective action.
- H. Improve subbase or subgrade by undercutting wet material, aeration of wet soil or use of additional subbase material. Compact material and proof roll again.
- I. Proof roll to identify soft spots; fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.

3.3 FILLING

- A. Fill to contours and elevations indicated using unfrozen materials.
- B. Fill up to subgrade elevations unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
- D. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- F. Granular Fill: Place and compact materials in equal continuous layers not exceeding 6 inches compacted depth.
- G. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 percent slope for minimum distance of 5 feet , unless noted otherwise. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope into level areas.
- H. Correct areas that are over-excavated.
 - 1. Load-bearing foundation surfaces: Use structural fill, flush to required elevation, compacted to 95 percent of maximum dry density.
 - 2. Other areas: Use general fill, flush to required elevation, compacted to minimum 95 percent of maximum dry density.
- I. Compaction Density Unless Otherwise Specified or Indicated:
 - 1. Under paving, slabs-on-grade, and similar construction: 95 percent of maximum dry density.
- J. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.
- K. Maintain temporary means and methods, as required, to remove all water while fill is being placed as required, or until directed by the Architect. Remove and replace soils deemed unsuitable by classification and which are excessively moist due to lack of dewatering or surface water control.

- L. Remove surplus backfill materials from site.

3.4 FILL AT SPECIFIC LOCATIONS

- A. Use fill type indicated unless otherwise indicated in the geotechnical report.
- B. Structural Fill under building footprints:
 - 1. Use structural fill.
 - 2. Fill up to subgrade elevations.
 - 3. Maximum depth per lift: 8 inches, compacted.
 - 4. Compact to minimum 95 percent of maximum dry density.
- C. Over Buried Utility Piping, Conduits, and Duct Bank in Trenches:
 - 1. Bedding: Use Fill Type indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Cover with Select Native fill unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Fill up to subgrade elevation.
 - 4. Compact in maximum 8 inch lifts to 95 percent of maximum dry density.
- D. At Lawn Areas:
 - 1. Use general fill.
 - 2. Compact to 95 percent of maximum dry density.
 - 3. See Section 32 91 19 for topsoil placement.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of General Filling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of Filling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection and testing.
- B. Perform compaction density testing on compacted fill in accordance with ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D3017, or ASTM D6938. Contractor shall be responsible for providing compaction testing as part of their base bid contract. Slab testing shall be every 100 square feet of area or every 50-ft of trench excavation.
- C. Evaluate results in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor"), AASHTO T 180, ASTM D 1557 ("modified Proctor"), ASTM D 1557 ("modified Proctor"), AASHTO T 180, ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor"), ASTM D 1557 ("modified Proctor"), AASHTO T 180, or ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor").
- D. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.
- E. Frequency of Tests: 1 per 2500 sq. ft, or as directed by Engineer.
- F. Proof roll compacted fill at surfaces that will be under slabs-on-grade, pavers, and paving.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.
- C. Leave borrow areas in a clean and neat condition. Grade to prevent standing surface water.

3.8 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Protecting finished work.
- B. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 01 90
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF PLANTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Maintain plants in manner that promotes health, growth, color and appearance, to quality levels specified; replace dead, dying, and damaged plants at no extra cost to Owner.
 - 1. It is Contractor's responsibility to determine type and quantity of soil amendments and fertilizer required.
 - 2. Perform soil analysis to determine type and quantity of soil amendments; test enough soil samples to obtain a comprehensive analysis; submit reports.
- B. Maintain newly planted landscape plants, including turf (lawns), shrubs, ground cover, and perennials.
- C. Maintain established landscape plants, including turf (lawns), turf (playfields), trees, shrubs, hedges, ground cover, perennials, and flowering bulbs.
- D. Clean up landscaped areas.
- E. Maintenance Period
 - 1. The date of installation to the date upon which the new planting are accepted as complete by Architect.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 22 00 - Grading.
- B. Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.
- C. Section 32 92 19 - Seeding.
- D. Section 32 93 00 - Plants.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A300 Part 1 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations - Tree, Shrub, and Other Woody Plant Management - Standard Practices (Pruning); 2017.
- B. ANSI Z133.1 - American National Standard for Arboricultural Operations - Safety Requirements; 2017.
- C. ASTM C602 - Standard Specification for Agricultural Liming Materials; 2023.
- D. ASTM D4972 - Standard Test Methods for pH of Soils; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2024).

1.4 PROPOSAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit complete maintenance plan, showing:
 - 1. Irrigation volume and frequency.
 - 2. Fertilizer type, quantity, and schedule of application.
 - 3. Soil amendment type, quantity, and schedule of application.
 - 4. Personnel assigned, including supervisor.
 - 5. Inspection procedures, diagnostics, and remedies.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Soil Tests and Analysis: Submit report showing number of samples, test results, and recommendations for soil amendments and fertilizer.
- C. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each fertilizer, and other chemical material to be used, showing trade name, chemical composition, mixing instructions, recommended application rate, storage and handling instructions, and application instructions.
- D. Certificates: Certification of composition of the following as delivered:
 - 1. Fertilizer.
 - 2. Mulch.
- E. Installer Qualifications: As specified.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Maintenance Contractor: The contractual entity that performed the planting installation.
 - 2. Pruners: Certified member, or supervised by certified member, of International Society of Arboriculture.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver U.S. EPA-controlled materials to site in original containers with legible labels indicating registration number and registered uses.
- B. Deliver fertilizer and manufactured soil amendments to site in original containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name or trademark, and indication of compliance with applicable state and federal laws and regulations ; alternatively, bulk delivery with equivalent certificate is acceptable.
- C. Store fertilizer, soil amendments, and mulch in dry locations away from contaminants.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FERTILIZERS AND SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Fertilizers: Free flowing granular organic type containing nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium, plus trace minerals and micro-nutrients; controlled release type is preferred.
 - 1. Determine type and quantity based on soil analysis.
- B. Soil Amendments: Type and quantity as required to achieve specified results, based on soil analysis.
- C. pH Adjuster: ASTM C602 Class O limestone.
- D. Gypsum: Commercially packaged, free flowing, minimum 95 percent calcium sulfate by volume.

2.2 APPLIED MATERIALS

- A. Organic Mulch: Maintain general appearance of existing mulched areas; use one of the following types:
 - 1. Shredded hardwood ranging in size from 1/2 inch to one inch.
- B. Inorganic Mulch: Match existing mulched areas.
- C. Water: Suitable for irrigation; Owner's water supply may be used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. If soil analysis has not already been performed, take sufficient samples to obtain a comprehensive analysis; perform analysis in accordance with ASTM D4972.

3.2 LANDSCAPE MAINTENANCE - GENERAL

- A. Protect existing vegetation, pavements, and facilities from damage due to maintenance activities; restore damaged items to original condition or replace, at no extra cost to Owner.
- B. General Cleanup: Remove debris from all landscape areas at least once a week and from turf areas before each mowing.
 - 1. Debris consists of trash, rubbish, dropped leaves, downed branches and limbs of all sizes, dead vegetation, rocks, and other material not belonging in landscaped areas.
 - 2. Remove debris from site and dispose of properly.
- C. Watering, Soil Erosion, and Sedimentation Control: Comply with federal, state, local, and other regulations in force; prevent over-watering, run-off, erosion, puddling, and ponding.
 - 1. Repair temporary erosion control mechanisms provided by others.
 - 2. Repair eroded areas and replant, when caused by inadequate maintenance.
 - 3. Prevent sediment from entering storm drains.
- D. Fertilizing: Apply fertilizer only when necessary.
- E. Drainage Channels: Remove obstructions in gutters, catch basins, storm drain inlets, yard drains, swales, ditches, and overflows.
 - 1. Remove grates from catch basins to clean.
 - 2. Prevent encroachment of other vegetation on turfed surface drainage channels.
- F. Health Maintenance: Inspect all plants regularly for health:
 - 1. Eradicate diseases and damaging pests, regardless of severity or speed of effect.
 - 2. Treat accidental injuries and abrasions.
 - 3. If a plant is unhealthy but not yet dead, according to specified definitions, determine reason(s) and take remedial action immediately.
 - 4. Remove dead plants immediately upon determining that they are dead.
- G. Replanting: Perform replacement and replanting immediately upon removal of dead plant.

3.3 IRRIGATION

- A. Irrigation: Do not allow plants to wilt; apply water as required to supplement rainfall; do not waste water; do not water plants or areas not needing water; do not water during rainfall; shut off water flow when finished; repair leaks.
 - 1. No automatic irrigation system is available; provide hoses and other equipment as required.
 - 2. Do not drive water trucks over turf, seeded areas, or planting beds.
 - 3. Provide backflow preventers on hose bibbs used for irrigation hoses.

3.4 RENOVATION OF ESTABLISHED TURF

- A. Remove turf from around trees to radius of 18 inches from base of tree trunk. Cut turf out and remove; do not simply mow. Trim turf edge as specified.
- B. Trim perimeter of turf area and around intervening objects as specified under Turf Maintenance.
- C. Eliminate undesirable grasses and weeds. Remove as much thatch as possible.
- D. Aerate established turf at least once every two years by coring and pulling out soil plugs 2 to 3 inches deep and not more than 2 inches apart.

1. Clean plugs from pavements immediately.
- E. Apply fertilizer over entire aerated area.
- F. Water as soon as possible after planting. Do not allow newly planted material to become dry.
- G. Begin normal mowing once grass reaches 1-1/2 times specified mowing height.

3.5 TURF MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain turf in manner required to produce turf that is healthy, uniform in color and leaf texture, and free from weeds and other undesirable growth.
 1. Grass Density - Lawns: 20 plants per square foot, minimum.
 2. Bare Spots - Lawns: 2 percent of total area, maximum; 6 inches square, maximum.
 3. Keep turf relatively free of thatch, woody plant roots, diseases, nematodes, soil-borne insects, stones larger than 1 inch in diameter, and other materials detrimental to grass growth.
 4. Limit broadleaf weeds and patches of foreign grass to a maximum of 2 percent of the total area.
- B. Mowing: During growing season(s) mow turf to uniform height, in manner that prevents scalping, rutting, bruising, and uneven or rough cutting.
 1. Prior to mowing clean all debris and leaves from turf surface.
 2. Schedule frequency of mowing so that no more than one-quarter to one-third of grass leaf length is removed during a cutting.
 3. Make each successive mowing at approximately 45 degrees to the previous mowing, if practical.
 4. Cool Season Grasses:
 - a. Reduce mowing height in fall and spring.
 - b. Use rotary type mowers; mulcher type mowers may be used.
 5. Warm Season Grasses:
 - a. Increase mowing height slightly as fall approaches.
 - b. Use reel type mowers; do not use mulcher mowers.
- C. Trimming: Immediately after each mowing, neatly trim perimeter of each turf area and around obstructions within turf area; match height and appearance of adjacent turf.
 1. Adjacent to Pavements: Cut edges of turf to form a distinct, uniform turf edge.
 2. Adjacent to Planting Beds and Permanently Mulched Areas: Cut edges of turf to form a distinct, uniform turf edge.
 3. Around Other Trees and Poles: Where no planting bed or mulched area exists, trimming with string trimmer is acceptable.
 4. At Fences: Trim on both sides of fence.
- D. Fertilizer: Apply as recommended by manufacturer and at rate indicated by soil analysis.
 1. Cool Season Grasses: Apply at least once, in Fall before first frost; do not apply high nitrogen fertilizer during Summer; Spring application is optional but must be reduced in quantity.

3.6 PLANTING BED MAINTENANCE

- A. Planting beds include all planted areas except turf.
- B. Begin maintenance immediately after plants have been installed; inspect at least once a week and perform needed maintenance promptly.
- C. Keep planting beds free of pests; remove weeds and grass by hand before reaching 1 inch height.
- D. Do not allow climbing, twining, or creeping plants to encroach into other species.
- E. Replace mulch as required and remove debris.

3.7 TREE AND SHRUB MAINTENANCE

- A. Trees will be considered dead when main leader has died back or when 25 percent or more of crown has died ; except as otherwise indicated for palm trees.
- B. Shrubs will be considered dead when 25 percent or more of plant has died.
- C. Inspect woody plants for health by scraping up to 1/16 inch square area of bark; no green cambium layer below bark shall be evidence of death.
- D. Adjust stakes, guys and turnbuckles, ties, and trunk wrap as required to promote growth and avoid girdling.
- E. Pruning: Unless otherwise indicated, prune only to maintain balanced natural shape; follow recommendations of ANSI A300 and ANSI Z133.1 and best local practices for species involved.
- F. Shrubs: Prune at least once during maintenance period at best time to influence ultimate shape and size for the particular species.
 - 1. Prune to balance the plant's form and according to its natural growth characteristics.
 - 2. Remove water shoots, suckers, and branches not complying with desired shape and size.
- G. Hedges: Trim to encourage growth into voids and gaps.
- H. Renovation of Established Shrubs: Prune and trim as required to improve shape and balance as appropriate to the particular species; remove dead, damaged, and diseased branches and limbs; do not remove excess growth except as follows:
 - 1. Remove growth in front of windows, above or obstructing entranceways and walkways, leaning against structures, and obstructing vision at street intersections.
- I. Renovation of Established Trees :
 - 1. Remove dead, damaged, and diseased branches and limbs and structurally weak limbs that may be a safety hazard.
 - 2. Remove growth in front of windows, above or obstructing entranceways and walkways, and leaning against structures.
 - 3. Remove growth obstructing traffic signs or vision at street intersections.
 - 4. Remove branches that extend over buildings or otherwise endanger roofs.
 - 5. Remove low-hanging branches over vehicular traffic routes to height necessary to clear expected traffic including buses and moving vans.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Remove fallen deciduous leaves in Fall; removal may wait until all leaves have fallen.
- B. Clean adjacent pavements of plant debris and other debris generated by maintenance activities.
- C. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris in a proper manner; Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.
- D. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris in a proper manner.
 - 1. Biodegradable Debris: Owner will designate a compost pile on site where biodegradable debris may be deposited; branches and bark are not considered biodegradable.
 - 2. Branches and Bark: Owner will designate a wood chip storage area; machine-chip all branch and bark debris.
 - 3. Non-Biodegradable Debris: Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 11 20
SUBBASE AND AGGREGATE BASE COURSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Subbase course.
- B. Geosynthetic reinforcement.
- C. Aggregate base course.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.
- C. Section 32 13 13 - Concrete Paving.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop; 2025.
- B. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- C. ASTM D1556/D1556M - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method; 2024.
- D. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2,700 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- E. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2015.
- F. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2017 (Reapproved 2025).
- G. ASTM D3665 - Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials; 2024.
- H. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2023.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Test Reports:
 - 1. Aggregate Composition: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
 - 2. Compaction Density: Results of laboratory tests on compacted course.
- C. Source Quality Control Submittals: Submit name of imported materials source.
- D. Field Quality Control Submittals: Submit compaction density testing results.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. When aggregate materials need to be stored on site, locate where indicated on drawings.
- C. Aggregate Storage: Prevent material intermixing, contamination, and deterioration.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Subbase Course:
 - 1. Coarse Aggregate: Coarse aggregate, conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
 - a. Granular fill shall meet all requirements specified for Type 2 (Crushed Ledgerock) or Type 4 Subbase in the NYSDOT Standard Specification.
 - 1) Where use of recycled materials is indicated on Drawings, refer to NYSDOT Standard Specifications (Section 733-19 - Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material).
- B. Geosynthetic:
 - 1. Geotextile: Nonbiodegradable, woven.
- C. Aggregate Base Course:
 - 1. Coarse Aggregate: Conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
 - a. Meet all requirements specified for Type 2 (Crushed Ledgerock) or Type 4 Subbase in the NYSDOT Standard Specification.
 - 1) Where use of recycled materials is indicated on Drawings, refer to NYSDOT Standard Specifications (Section 733-19 - Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material).

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.
- C. Provide materials of each type from same source throughout the Work.
- D. For aggregate materials using classification complying with ASTM D2487, provide testing before delivery to site.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the work are as indicated.
- B. Verify substrate has been inspected, and gradients and elevations are correct and dry.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Correct irregularities in substrate gradient and elevation by scarifying, reshaping, and recompacting.
- B. Do not place aggregate on soft, muddy, or frozen surfaces.

SUBBASE AND AGGREGATE BASE COURSES

3.3 PLACEMENT

- A. Under Bituminous Concrete Paving:
 - 1. Subbase Compacted Thickness: According to design drawings.
 - 2. Install geosynthetic reinforcement on substrate in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
 - 3. Aggregate Base Compacted Thickness: According to design drawings.
- B. Under Portland Cement Concrete Paving:
 - 1. Subbase Compacted Thickness: According to design drawings.
 - 2. Install geosynthetic reinforcement on substrate in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
 - 3. Aggregate Base Compacted Thickness: According to design drawings.
- C. Place course in maximum 4 inch layers and roller compact to specified density.
- D. Level and contour surfaces to elevations and gradients indicated.
- E. Use mechanical tamping equipment in areas inaccessible to compaction equipment.

3.4 TOLERANCES

- A. Variation From Design Elevation: Within 1/2 inch.
- B. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- C. Scheduled Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Subbase Compaction Density Testing: In accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, ASTM D2167, or ASTM D6938.
- C. Aggregate Base Compaction Density Testing: In accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, ASTM D2167, or ASTM D6938.
- D. Evaluate results in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with AASHTO T 180, ASTM D698 ("standard Proctor"), or ASTM D1557 ("modified Proctor").
- E. Frequency of Tests: In accordance with ASTM D3665.
- F. Remove, replace, and retest work that does not meet specified requirements.
- G. Proof roll compacted aggregate at surfaces going underneath flexible paving.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Remove unused materials and grade areas to prevent standing surface water.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 12 16
ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Single course bituminous concrete paving.
- B. Double course bituminous concrete paving.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 22 00 - Grading: Preparation of site for paving and base.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Compacted subgrade for paving.
- C. Section 32 11 20 - Subbase and Aggregate Base Courses.
- D. Section 32 17 23 - Pavement Markings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AI MS-2 - Asphalt Mix Design Methods; 2015.
- B. ASTM D946 - Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction; 2009a.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Pre-installation meeting.
- B. Convene pre-installation meeting a minimum of one week prior to commencing work of this section. Attendance by Architect/ Engineer, Construction Manager, Owner, and Contractor.
- C. Schedule a proof roll of subbase prior to asphalt installation.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Submit proposed mix design of each class of mix for review prior to beginning of Work.
 - 1. Each mix design shall be certified and signed by the respective State Department of Transportation within two years preceding submittal.
- C. Product Data: Provide product data on each additional product required, including, but not limited to primer, tack coat, and joint sealant.
- D. Asphalt Pavement Work Plan: Indicate paving pass width, paving directions, site access, and coordination of timing with other installations.
- E. Installers qualification statement.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- B. Mixing Plant: Conform to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.

- C. Obtain materials from same source throughout.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum 10 years documented experience.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Environmental conditions affecting products on site.
- B. Do not place asphalt when ambient air or base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen, and as further provided:

TEMPERATURE REQUIREMENTS	
Nominal Compacted Lift Thickness	Surface Temperature Minimum
No greater than 1 inch	50 degrees F.
1 inch through 3 inches	45 degrees F.
Greater than 3 inches	40 degrees F.

- C. Place bitumen mixture when temperature is not more than 15 F degrees below bitumen supplier's bill of lading and not more than maximum specified temperature.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Cement: Conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- B. Aggregate for Base Course: Conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- C. Aggregate for Binder Course: Conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- D. Aggregate for Wearing Course: Conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- E. Fine Aggregate: Sand in conformance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- F. Mineral Filler: Finely ground particles of limestone, hydrated lime or other mineral dust, free of foreign matter.
- G. Primer: Homogeneous, medium curing, liquid asphalt in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- H. Tack Coat: Homogeneous and Emulsified asphalt conforming to Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- I. Joint Sealant: Asphalt joint sealant meeting ASTM D6690 Type II or IV requirements.

2.2 ASPHALT PAVING MIXES AND MIX DESIGN

- A. Use dry material to avoid foaming. Mix uniformly.
- B. Base Course: State of New York Highways standards: Superpave 37.5mm Base.
- C. Binder Course: State of New York Highways standards: Superpave 25mm Binder.
- D. Wearing Course: State of New York Highways standards: Superpave 9.5mm Top Course.

- E. Submit proposed mix design of each class of mix for review prior to beginning of work.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test mix design and samples in accordance with AI MS-2.
- B. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Testing, inspection and analysis requirements.

2.4 EQUIPMENT

- A. Hauling Equipment
 - 1. Trucks used for hauling asphalt shall have clean, smooth, tight metal beds.
 - a. Any debris from previous loads hauled shall be removed.
 - 2. The inside of the truck box shall be coated with a Department of Transportation approved release agent.
 - a. Petroleum products, (including but not limited to fuel oil, diesel fuel, kerosene, and gasoline) or solvents shall not be used.
 - 3. Trucks shall be equipped with waterproof covers that totally cover the asphalt load, the front of which is attached to prevent wind from entering under tarp during transport.
- B. Pavers
 - 1. Units shall be self-propelled and include receiving hopper, transfer system, and activated screed.
 - 2. Units shall provide automatic slope control.
 - 3. Units shall be equipped with screed heaters and joint pre-heaters.
- C. Rollers
 - 1. Rollers shall be of vibratory or static steel wheel design, of sufficient weight to adequately provide compaction rate specified.
 - 2. Furnish the following minimum roller quantities per project:
 - a. Total Rollers: Two.
 - b. Total Rollers: Three, when tonnage is 300 tons per day or greater.
 - c. In every instance, one of the required rollers shall be of a Vibratory Wheel design.
 - 3. Equipment shall be free from oil leaks.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that compacted subgrade is dry and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
- C. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.
- D. Verify that site improvement items scheduled within the paved area, including but not limited to bollards, sign posts, fence posts, gate operator foundations, and any utilities servicing such equipment are installed prior to paving operations.
- E. Verify gutter drainage grilles and frames manhole frames and curbing are installed in correct position and elevation.

3.2 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

- A. Place and compact aggregate base course.
- B. See Section 32 11 23 - Aggregate Base Courses.

3.3 PREPARATION - PRIMER

- A. Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in conformance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
 - 1. Primer shall be placed on aggregate base in all Department of Transportation right-of-ways.
- B. Apply primer on aggregate base or subbase at uniform rate of 1/2 gal/sq yd.

3.4 PREPARATION - TACK COAT

- A. Apply tack coat in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply tack coat in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
 - 1. Apply tack coat between all pavement layers within Department of Transportation right-of-ways.
 - 2. Apply tack coat between pavement layers when:
 - a. Pavement is exposed to traffic.
 - b. Pavement is exposed to dirt and dust.
 - c. Forty eight hours have passed between courses.
- C. Apply tack coat on asphalt or concrete surfaces over subgrade surface at uniform rate of .03 to .10 gallons per square yard.
- D. Apply tack coat to all contact surfaces of curbs, gutters, manholes, and adjacent pavement edges.
- E. Paving shall not commence until tack coat emulsion has broken or is tacky to the touch.

3.5 PLACING ASPHALT PAVEMENT - SINGLE COURSE

- A. Install gutter drainage grilles and frames in correct position and elevation.
- B. Place asphalt wearing course to thickness as identified on construction drawings.

3.6 PLACING ASPHALT PAVEMENT - DOUBLE COURSE

- A. Place asphalt binder course within 24 hours of applying primer or tack coat.
- B. Place asphalt wearing course within two hours of placing and compacting binder course.
- C. Install gutter drainage grilles and frames in correct position and elevation.
- D. Compact pavement by rolling to specified density. Do not displace or extrude pavement from position. Hand compact in areas inaccessible to rolling equipment.
 - 1. Compaction should occur when asphalt course is between 150 and 185 degrees F.
- E. Perform rolling with consecutive passes to achieve even and smooth finish, without roller marks.

3.7 TOLERANCES

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Tolerances.
- B. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- C. Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch of specified or indicated thickness.
- D. Variation from True Elevation: Within 1/2 inch.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for quality control.
- B. Provide field inspection and testing. Take samples and perform tests in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.

3.9 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
- B. Documentation: Provide copies of Truck Loading Slips (bill of lading) for each load of each design mix of asphalt material used on site.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect pavement from mechanical injury for 3 days or until surface temperature is less than 140 degrees F.
- B. Surface Sealer drying time: 8 hours max.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 12 17
ASPHALT PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Asphalt and concrete paving crack sealants
- B. Hot pour mastics

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving
- B. Section 32 13 13 - Concrete Paving

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D113 - Standard Test Method for Ductility of Asphalt Materials; 2017
- B. ASTM D3111 - Standard Test Method for Flexibility Determination of Hot-Melt Adhesives by Mandrel Bend Test Method
- C. ASTM D36 - Standard Test Method for Softening Point of Bitumen (Ring-and-Ball Apparatus)
- D. ASTM D5078 - Standard Specification for Crack Filler, Hot Applied, for Asphalt Concrete and Portland Cement Concrete Paving.(Reapproved 2016)
- E. ASTM D5329 - Standard Test Methods for Sealants and Fillers, Hot-Applied, for Joints and Cracks in Asphalt Pavements and Portland Cement Concrete Pavements; 2016
- F. ASTM D6690 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements; 2015

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate work of this section with Owner, Architect, and all other trades involved in the project.
 - 1. Ensure work of this section is scheduled and carried out so as not to limit access to site.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's product data sheets, performance criteria and installation instructions.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate preparation requirements, application limitations, and environmental conditions required for installation.
- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York in DOT Right-of-Ways.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with at least three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.
- D. Obtain materials from same source throughout project.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products specified herein to project site in manufacturer's unopened, undamaged packaging..
- B. Store products under cover and elevated above grade, and as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Prevent damage due to moisture, temperature extremes, or contaminants.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements,
- B. Ensure all application limitations including manufacturer's, temperature, and weather are within specified limits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide one year manufacturer warranty for each product.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Maxwell Products, Inc.: www.maxwellproducts.com.
- B. P&T Products, Inc.: www.p-tproductsinc.com.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants for parking lots and non-DOT right-of-ways.
 - 1. Polymer modified crack and joint sealant
 - 2. Conforming to ASTM D5078
 - 3. Basis of Design Product: Elastoflex 650 by Maxwell Products.
 - a. Or approved equal
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Joint Sealants for DOT right-of-ways.
 - 1. Polymer modified crack and joint sealant
 - 2. Conforming to ASTM D6690 Type I
 - 3. Basis of Design Product: Elastoflex 410 by Maxwell Products.
 - a. Or approved equal
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

- C. Hot Pour Mastic for wide cracks or surface repair:
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: GAP B by Maxwell Products.
 - a. Or approved equal
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that all areas to receive work of this section are available, and conditions are favorable for work to proceed.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare cracks for sealing on the same day they are to be sealed. Install suitable traps or devices on the compressed air equipment to prevent moisture and oil from contaminating the joint surfaces. Maintain these devices and see that they are functioning properly.
- B. Hot Air Lance: In order to thoroughly clean and dry cracks of dust, dirt, foreign material, sand and any other extraneous materials immediately prior to sealing joints. Using compressed air no lower than 90 cfm to 185 cfm, the operator shall blow dry the affected cracks to receive the hot pour sealant. To clean and ensure a dry condition, a hot air lance capable of reaching temperatures ranging from a low end 600 degrees F to 2,000 degrees F shall be used. Do not burn, or scorch the adjoining pavement when using a hot air lance.
 - 1. The hot air lance preparation shall not exceed 200 yards in front of the sealing operation. The compressor delivering the pressurized air shall have functional water and oil separators to ensure no moisture is injected into the cracks.

3.3 SEALANT MELTING

- A. Heat and melt the sealant in a melter constructed either as a double boiler filled with a heat-transfer medium between the inner and outer shells, or with internal tubes or coils carrying the sealant through a heated oil bath and into a heated double wall hopper. The melter will be equipped with separate thermometers to indicate the temperature of the heat transfer medium and the sealant material, positive temperature controls and with a mechanical agitator and recirculating pumping of sealant to assure a homogeneous blend of the sealant. Maintain the sealant temperature inside the tank at the manufacturer's recommended pouring temperature as indicated on the material packaging of the sealant.
- B. To ensure proper sealant application temperature check the discharge of the sealant with a non-contact infrared thermometer. Discharge the sealant at a temperature between the manufacturer's recommended pouring and safe heating temperatures indicated on the material packaging.
- C. Sealing is not permitted if the melter and discharge temperatures do not meet with the requirements described above. Circulate the sealant from the discharge hose and the melter to maintain the proper sealant pouring temperature.
- D. Do not use sealant material heated beyond the safe heating temperature. If the manufacturer's recommendations allow the sealant to be reheated or heated in excess of six hours, recharge the melter with fresh material amounting to at least 20 percent of the volume of the material remaining in the melter.

3.4 PLACING JOINT SEALANT

- A. Sealing is to be done when ambient air temperature is at or above 40F. Seal the routed crack by placing the applicator wand in or directly over the recess and carefully discharge the sealant. Strike-off the sealant flush with the pavement surface so that only a narrow thin film of material measuring no wider than 2 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick is allowed on the pavement surface after sealing the reservoir. Properly sealed joints shall be watertight.
- B. A low pressure, light spray of water or a manufacturer recommended barrier spray may be used to accelerate cooling of the sealant and allow traffic on it without tracking. Blotting the sealant with fine aggregate is not allowed.
- C. Remove and dispose sealant in excess of the specified thin "film" dimensions or that has not bonded to both sides of the reservoir.

3.5 WIDE CRACKS AND PATCHING

- A. Cracks wider than one inch, small potholes and other pavement imperfections as outlined by the Engineer are to be repaired and filled with the hot pour mastic.
- B. Preparing the repair areas is the same process used for crack sealing as outlined above. Equipment used for the heating of the mastic shall conform with the same standards outlined for crack sealing with the exception of having any activity requiring the recirculation or pumping of the material. Due to the high abrasive content of the aggregate no pumping can be used. A gravity discharge directly into the repair area or a box screen applicator shall be used to fill and repair the pavement. To install a proper filled and waterproof repair heated flat stock steel shall be used to ensure the material overbids the repair by 2 inches on all sides. The hot steel plate shall be used to smooth the surface of the mastic.
- C. When manufacturers require a primer prior to installation or a finishing stone topping, it shall be applied in accordance with the materials installation instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
- D. No traffic shall be allowed on top of the mastic repair unit the temperature cools to ensure no damage to the repair or oncoming traffic.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed joint sealants and patches from subsequent construction operations.
- B. Protect sealed areas from vehicular and pedestrian traffic until products have set sufficiently to prevent tracking of sealants.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 13 13
CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Paving assemblies.
- B. Form materials.
- C. Reinforcement.
- D. Concrete materials.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints.
- C. Section 31 22 00 - Grading: Preparation of site for paving and base and preparation of subsoil at pavement perimeter for planting.
- D. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Compacted subbase for paving.
- E. Section 32 11 20 - Subbase and Aggregate Base Courses.
- F. Section 32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving: Asphalt wearing course.
- G. Section 32 17 26 - Tactile Warning Surfacing: Plastic tactile and detectable warning tiles for pedestrian walking surfaces.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI PRC-211.1 - Selecting Proportions for Normal-Density and High Density-Concrete - Guide; 2022.
- B. ACI PRC-304 - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete; 2000 (Reapproved 2009).
- C. ACI PRC-305 - Guide to Hot Weather Concreting; 2020.
- D. ACI PRC-306 - Guide to Cold Weather Concreting; 2016.
- E. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- F. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2025.
- G. ASTM C39/C39M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens; 2024.
- H. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2025.
- I. ASTM C173/C173M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method; 2024a.
- J. ASTM C685/C685M - Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing; 2025.

- K. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Asphalt Types); 2023.
- L. ASTM D1752 - Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork, and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction; 2018 (Reapproved 2023).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on joint filler, admixtures, and curing compound.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PAVING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Comply with applicable requirements of Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.

2.2 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Form Materials: As specified in Section 03 30 00, conform to ACI SPEC-301.
- B. Joint Filler: Preformed; non-extruding bituminous type (ASTM D1751) or sponge rubber or cork (ASTM D1752).

2.3 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel and Welded Wire Reinforcement: Types specified in Section 03 30 00.
- B. Dowels: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40 - 40,000 psi yield strength; deformed billet steel bars; unfinished finish.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Obtain cementitious materials from same source throughout.
- B. Concrete Materials: As specified in Section 03 30 00.
- C. Fiber Reinforcement: Synthetic fibers shown to have long-term resistance to deterioration when in contact with alkalis and moisture; 1/2 inch length.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Curing Compound: Conforming with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- B. Liquid Surface Sealer: Conforming with Department of Transportation Standards in the State of New York.
- C. Tactile Warning Surfaces: See Section 32 17 26.

2.6 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

- A. Proportioning Normal Weight Concrete: Comply with ACI PRC-211.1 recommendations.
- B. Concrete Strength: Establish required average strength for each type of concrete on the basis of field experience or trial mixtures, as specified in ACI SPEC-301.

1. For trial mixtures method, employ independent testing agency acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs.
- C. Admixtures: Add acceptable admixtures as recommended in ACI PRC-211.1 and at rates recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Fiber Reinforcement: Add to mix at rate of 1.5 pounds per cubic yard, or as recommended by manufacturer for specific project conditions.
- E. Concrete Properties:
 1. Compressive strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM C39/C39M at 28 days; 4,000 psi.
 2. Fly Ash Content: Maximum 20 percent of cementitious materials by weight.
 3. Cement Content: Minimum 605 lb per cubic yard.
 4. Water-Cement Ratio: Maximum 40 percent by weight.
 5. Total Air Content: 5.0 to 8.0 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M.
 6. Maximum Slump: 4 inches.
 7. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1 inch.

2.7 MIXING

- A. On Project Site: Mix in drum type batch mixer, complying with ASTM C685/C685M. Mix each batch not less than 1-1/2 minutes and not more than 5 minutes.
- B. Transit Mixers: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify compacted subgrade is acceptable and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
- B. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.

3.2 SUBBASE

- A. See Section 32 11 20 for construction of base course for work of this Section.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Moisten base to minimize absorption of water from fresh concrete.
- B. Coat surfaces of manhole frames with oil to prevent bond with concrete pavement.
- C. Notify Architect minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of concreting operations.

3.4 FORMING

- A. Place and secure forms to correct location, dimension, profile, and gradient.
- B. Assemble formwork to permit easy stripping and dismantling without damaging concrete.
- C. Place joint filler vertical in position, in straight lines. Secure to formwork during concrete placement.

3.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Place reinforcement at as indicated on the construction drawings.
- B. Interrupt reinforcement at expansion joints.

- C. Place dowels to achieve pavement and curb alignment as detailed.

3.6 COLD AND HOT WEATHER CONCRETING

- A. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-305 when concreting during hot weather.
- B. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-306 when concreting during cold weather.
- C. Do not place concrete when base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.

3.7 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Coordinate installation of snow melting components.
- B. Place concrete in accordance with ACI PRC-304.
- C. Do not place concrete when base surface is wet.
- D. Place concrete using the slip form technique.
- E. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, embedded parts, formed joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- F. Place concrete continuously over the full width of the panel and between predetermined construction joints. Do not break or interrupt successive pours such that cold joints occur.
- G. Place concrete to pattern indicated.

3.8 JOINTS

- A. Align joints with adjacent surfaces.
- B. Place 1/2 inch wide expansion joints at 20 foot intervals and to separate paving from vertical surfaces and other components and in pattern indicated.
 - 1. Form joints with joint filler extending from bottom of pavement to within 1/4 inch of finished surface.
 - 2. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- C. Provide scored joints.
 - 1. As indicated on plan.
 - 2. At 5 feet intervals.
 - 3. Between adjacent surfaces.
 - 4. Scores to be a 2" tooled joint.
- D. Provide keyed joints as indicated.
- E. Saw cut contraction joints 3/16 inch wide at an optimum time after finishing. Cut 1/3 into depth of slab.
- F. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Apply joint sealants to expansion joints, and other areas indicated.
 - 2. See Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants for sealant type and application.
 - 3. In addition to the requirements of 07 92 00, apply sealants prior to first freezing temperatures, and when substrate can be maintained at 40 degrees F, minimum for 48 hours prior to and 72 hours following application.

3.9 FINISHING

- A. Area Paving: Light broom, texture perpendicular to pavement direction.

- B. Median Barrier: Light broom, texture perpendicular to direction of travel with troweled and radiused edge 1/4 inch radius.
- C. Curbs and Gutters: Light broom, texture parallel to pavement direction.
- D. Place sealer on exposed concrete surfaces immediately after finishing. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation of Surface Flatness: 1/4 inch in 10 ft.
- B. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/4 inch.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
 - 1. Provide free access to concrete operations at project site and cooperate with appointed firm.
 - 2. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of concrete operations.
 - 3. Tests of concrete and concrete materials may be performed at any time to ensure compliance with specified requirements.
- B. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M; for each test, mold and cure three concrete test cylinders. Obtain test samples for every 100 cu yd or less of each class of concrete placed.
 - 1. Take one additional test cylinder during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
 - 2. Perform one slump test for each set of test cylinders taken.
- C. Maintain records of placed concrete items. Record date, location of pour, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.

3.12 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect pavement from premature drying, excessive hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Do not permit pedestrian or vehicular traffic over pavement for 7 days minimum after finishing.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 17 23
PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Painted pavement markings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving.
- B. Section 32 13 13 - Concrete Paving.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO MP 24 - Standard Specification for Waterborne White and Yellow Traffic Paints; 2015 (Reapproved 2020).

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the work of this section with adjoining work.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate survey control points and pavement markings color and layout.
 - 1. Layout and color shall be Owner approved prior to application.
- C. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
- D. Certificates: Submit for each batch stating compliance with specified requirements.
 - 1. Painted pavement markings.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions:
 - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 3. Installation methods.
- F. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- G. Installer's qualification statement.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver paint in containers of at least 5 gallons accompanied by batch certificate.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Do not apply paint if temperature of surface to be painted or the atmosphere is less than 50 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F.

1.9 SEQUENCING

- A. Allow new pavement surfaces to cure for a period of not less than 30 days before application of markings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Painted Pavement Markings:
 - 1. Ennis-Flint: www.ennisflintamericas.com.
 - 2. Franklin Paint; HYDROPHAST: www.franklinpaint.com.
 - 3. Ozark Materials, LLC: www.ozarkmaterials.net.
 - 4. Sherwin Williams: www.sherwinwilliams.com.
 - 5. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 PAINTED PAVEMENT AND CURB MARKINGS

- A. Painted Pavement Markings: As indicated on drawings.
 - 1. Marking Paint: Latex Based, in accordance with AASHTO MP 24.
 - a. Parking Lots: White.
 - b. Symbols and Text: White.
 - c. Accessible Symbols: Provide blue.
 - d. Curb Text: Red.
 - 2. Obliterating Paint: Type I, in accordance with AASHTO MP 24.
 - a. Bituminous Pavement: Black.
 - b. Concrete Pavement: Gray.

2.3 TEMPORARY MARKING TAPE

- A. Preformed, reflective, pressure sensitive adhesive tape in color(s) required; Contractor is responsible for selection of material of sufficient durability as to perform satisfactorily during period for which its use is required.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Identify existing markings for removal.
- B. Owner verification: Verify by Owner approved shop drawings of new pavement markings prior to beginning application.
 - 1. Final approval by Owner following chalking out, shall be required.

- C. Verification of Conditions: Verify that pavement is dry and ready for installation.
- D. Notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Establish survey control points for locating and dimensioning of markings.
- B. Place barricades, warning signs, and flags as necessary to alert approaching traffic and prevent traffic crossing newly painted markings.
- C. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- D. Clean surfaces prior to installation.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, and other debris by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods.
 - 2. Remove rubber deposits and other coatings adhering to the pavement, by scraping, wire brushing, sandblasting, mechanical abrasion, or approved chemicals.
 - 3. Remove existing paint markings by mechanical means outlined above or by applying obliterating paint.
 - 4. Sandblasting: Use equipment of size and capacity necessary, providing not less than 150 cfm of air at pressure not less than 90 psi at each nozzle used.
- E. Where oil or grease are present, scrub affected areas with several applications of trisodium phosphate solution or other approved detergent or degreaser, and rinse thoroughly after each application; after cleaning, seal oil-soaked areas with cut shellac to prevent bleeding through the new paint.
- F. Temporary Markings: Apply as directed by Architect.
- G. Apply paint stencils by type and color at necessary intervals.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Position pavement markings as indicated on drawings and approved shop drawings.
 - 2. Field location adjustments require approval of Architect and Owner.
 - 3. Allow traffic movement without hindrance.
- B. Painted Pavement Markings:
 - 1. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions using an experienced technician that is thoroughly familiar with equipment, materials, and marking layouts.
 - 2. Obliterating Paint: Apply as necessary to cover existing markings completely.
 - 3. Marking Paint: Apply uniformly, with sharp edges.
 - a. Applications: One coat.
 - b. Wet Film Thickness: 0.015 inch, minimum.
 - c. Stencils: Lay flat against pavement, align with striping, remove after application.
 - d. Length Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 inches.
 - e. Width Tolerance: Plus or minus 1/8 inch.
 - 4. Roadway Traffic Lanes: Use suitable mobile mechanical equipment that provides constant agitation of paint and travels at controlled speeds.
 - a. Conduct operations in such a manner that necessary traffic can move without hindrance.
 - b. If paint does not dry within expected time, discontinue paint operations until cause of slow drying is determined and corrected.
 - c. Skip Markings: Synchronize one or more paint "guns" to automatically begin and cut off paint flow; make length of intervals as indicated.
 - d. Use hand application by pneumatic spray for application of paint in areas where a mobile paint applicator cannot be used.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. If inspections indicate work does not meet specified requirements, rework and reinspect at no cost to Owner.
 - 1. Remove and replace markings that are applied at less than minimum material rates; deviate from true alignment; exceed length and width tolerances; or show light spots, smears, or other deficiencies or irregularities.
 - 2. Remove unsatisfactory markings in a manner to avoid damage to the surface to which the marking was applied by carefully controlled sandblasting, approved grinding equipment, or other approved method.
- C. Allow the pavement marking to set at least the minimum time recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional requirements.
- B. Temporary Markings: Remove without damaging surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent approaching traffic from crossing newly applied pavement markings.
- B. Replace damaged or removed markings at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. Preserve survey control points until pavement marking acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 17 26
TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Plastic tactile warning surfacing.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 32 17 23 - Pavement Markings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASTM A666/A666M - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2024.
- C. ATBCB PROWAG - Accessibility Guidelines for Pedestrian Facilities in the Public Right-of-Way; 2023.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, standard details, details specific to this project, written installation, and maintenance instructions.
- C. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- D. Installer's qualification statement.
- E. Executed warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with minimum 3 years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified, with minimum 3 years of documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver to project site in manufacturer's protective wrapping and in manufacturer's unopened packaging.
- B. Store covered and elevated above grade and in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation. Maintain at ambient temperature between 40 and 90 degrees F.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions: Do not install tiles when ambient air temperature is below manufacturer's recommendations.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide standard 5-year warranty against manufacturing defects, breakage, or deformation of plastic tiles. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Plastic Tactile Warning Surfacing:
 - 1. Access Tile, a brand of Access Products, Inc: www.accesstile.com.
 - 2. ADA Solutions, Inc: www.adatile.com.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Tactile Warning Surfacing:
 - 1. Pattern: In-line pattern of truncated domes complying with ADA Standards.
 - 2. Products:
 - a. Access Tile, a brand of Access Products, Inc; Cast in Place Replaceable Tactile Warning Tile: www.accesstile.com/#sle.
 - b. ADA Solutions, a division of SureWerx USA; Radius Systems - Cast in Place Replaceable: www.adatile.com/#sle.
 - c. ADA Solutions, a division of SureWerx USA; Cast in Place (Wet-Set): www.adatile.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: ASTM A666/A666M, Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 1. Type: Countersunk, color-matched composite sleeve anchors.
 - 2. Size: 1/4 inch diameter and 1-1/2 inches long.
- B. Adhesive: Type recommended and approved by surfacing tile manufacturer.
- C. Sealant: Elastomeric sealant of color to match adjacent surfaces; approved by surfacing tile manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. When installation location is near site boundary or property line, verify required location using property survey.
- B. Verify that work area is ready to receive work:
 - 1. If existing conditions are not as required to properly complete the work of this section, notify Architect.
 - 2. Do not proceed with installation until deficiencies in existing conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify that dimensions, tolerances, and attachment methods for work in this section are properly coordinated with other work on site.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
 - 1. Remove dust, oil, grease, curing compounds, sealers, and other substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or sealant adhesion.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Do not install damaged, warped, bowed, dented, abraded, or otherwise defective units.
 - 2. Do not install when ambient or substrate temperature has been below 40 degrees F during the preceding 8 daylight hours.
- B. Field Adjustment:
 - 1. Do not cut plastic tiles to less than 9 inches wide in any direction.
 - 2. Locate relative to curb line in accordance with ATBCB PROWAG, Sections 304 and 305.
 - 3. Orient so dome pattern is aligned with the direction of ramp.
 - 4. Align truncated dome pattern between adjacent units.
- C. Install units fully seated to substrate, square to straight edges and flat to required slope.
- D. Align units so that tops of adjacent units are flush and joints between units are uniform in width.
- E. Surface Applied:
 - 1. Cure concrete surfaces for minimum of 4 days before installing units.
 - 2. Mechanically roughen surface as required to remove contaminants and prepare surface for adhesive and sealant application.
 - 3. When installing multiple adjacent units, leave 1/8-inch gap between tiles to allow for expansion.
 - 4. Drill fastener holes straight, true, and to depth recommended by manufacturer.
 - 5. Apply adhesive to back of unit as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 6. Mechanically fasten to substrate. Avoid striking or damaging unit during installation.
 - 7. Apply sealant to edges in cove profile.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect for raised edges and misalignment.
- C. Nonconforming Work: Remove and replace.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective plastic sheeting within 24 hours of installation.
- B. Remove excess sealant or adhesive from joints and edges.
- C. Clean four days prior to date of scheduled inspection.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed units from traffic, subsequent construction operations or other imposed loads until concrete is fully cured.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 18 16.13
PLAYGROUND PROTECTIVE SURFACING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal of existing protective surfacing and correction of grades as necessary.
- B. Protective surfacing for playground area.
- C. Subbase under resilient surfacing.
- D. Containment curbs.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 32 33 44 - Playground Equipment: Playground layout (staking).
- C. Section 32 11 20 - Subbase and Aggregate Base Courses.
- D. Section 33 41 16.16 - Geocomposite Subdrainage

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers--Tension; 2016 (Reapproved 2021).
- B. ASTM D624 - Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers; 2000 (Reapproved 2020).
- C. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2,700 kN-m/m³)); 2012 (Reapproved 2021).
- D. ASTM D2047 - Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Flooring Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine; 2025.
- E. ASTM D2859 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials; 2016 (Reapproved 2021).
- F. ASTM E303 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Surface Frictional Properties Using the British Pendulum Tester; 2022.
- G. ASTM F1292 - Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment; 2022.
- H. ASTM F1487 - Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use; 2025.
- I. ASTM F1551 - Standard Test Methods for Comprehensive Characterization of Synthetic Turf Playing Surfaces and Materials; 2023.
- J. ASTM F2075 - Standard Specification for Engineered Wood Fiber for Use as a Playground Safety Surface Under and Around Playground Equipment; 2020.
- K. CPSC Pub. No. 325 - Public Playground Safety Handbook; 2025.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Use Zone: The area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or equipment (play event) that is designated for unrestricted circulation around equipment, and on whose surface it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the equipment.
- B. Critical Fall Height: The maximum fall height at which the protective surfacing meets the requirements of ASTM F1292.
- C. Fall Height: The vertical distance between the finished elevation of the designated play surface and the finished elevation of the protective surfacing beneath it as defined by ASTM F1487.
- D. Protective Surfacing: Resilient ground surfacing. The characteristics of the protective surfacing are based on the fall height of the playground equipment. Changes in either the surfacing or the fall height, particularly reducing the resilience of the protective surfacing or increasing the fall height, will reduce safety-related performance.
- E. Subbase: A layer under the resilient layer of the protective surfacing but over the subgrade; may be rigid, as in concrete or bituminous, or aggregate.
- F. Subgrade: The surface of the ground on which the protective surfacing is installed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: For all manufactured surfacing products, provide manufacturer's product data showing materials of construction, compliance with specified standards, installation procedures, and safety limitations.
 - 1. Include IPEMA certifications where required.
 - 2. Treated Wood Products: Provide information on wood treatment chemical content, toxicity level, and life-cycle durability.
- C. Product Data: For natural surfacing materials, provide supplier's certification or mill certificate showing compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Samples: For each product for which color must be selected provide color chart showing full range of colors.
- E. Maintenance Data:
 - 1. For manufactured surfacing products, provide manufacturer's recommended maintenance instructions and list of repair products, with address and phone number of source of supply.
 - 2. For loose fill surfacing products, provide detailed re-ordering information to enable Owner to match installed material exactly.
- F. Manufacturer's Field Report.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of the latest edition of ASTM F1487 and CPSC Pub. No. 325 at project site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company regularly engaged in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
 - 1. Surfacing installed in minimum 10 sites and been in successful service minimum 5 years.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Representative: Provide name, company name and address, and qualifications.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company certified by manufacturer for training and experience installing the protective surfacing; provide installer's company name and address, and training and experience certificate.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETING

- A. Coordinate with Section 32 33 44.
- B. Convene a meeting one week before starting earthwork for playground to discuss coordination between various installers.
 - 1. Require attendance by personnel responsible for grading and installers of playground equipment, protective surfacing, footings, and adjacent work.
 - 2. Include representatives of Contractor.
 - 3. Notify Architect at least 2 weeks prior to meeting.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, handle, and store protective surfacing to project site in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Store materials in a dry, covered area, elevated above grade.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Because the safety of the playground depends on strict compliance with the performance criteria, this information is provided for Contractor's information.
 - 1. The protective surfacing constitutes a resilient layer installed over a non-resilient layer, which is installed over the subgrade, with the top of playground equipment footings and anchorage devices covered by full depth of the resilient portion of the protective surfacing.
 - 2. The total depth available for protective surfacing, from surface of subgrade, is indicated on drawings.
 - 3. The top elevation of the protective surfacing is intended to be flush with adjacent grades.
- B. If deviation from specified depth is required, it is the Contractor's responsibility to make all changes required to maintain specified top elevation and required impact attenuation at no extra cost to Owner; obtain approval prior to proceeding; follow approval request procedure as specified for substitutions.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Poured-In-Place Surfacing: "RubberBond Elevate"
 - 1. Description: Dual-layer, playground surfacing consisting of a compacted SBR rubber base layer and a resilient, seamless EPDM poured-in-place top surface.
 - 2. Compliance: Meet or exceed CPSC guidelines for impact attenuation.
 - 3. Material: EPDM granules mixed with 100 percent solids MDI polyurethane binding resin.
 - 4. Base Course: Compacted SBR shredded rubber
 - a. Compacted Weight: 11 pounds per sq. ft.
 - b. Thickness: 3.5 inches
 - 5. Wear Course: Granulated EPDM rubber granules mixed with 100% solids MDI polyurethane binder.
 - a. Thickness: 1.5 inches
 - b. Binder to Rubber Ratio: 21 percent.
 - c. Compacted weight: 5 pounds per sq. ft.
 - 6. Total System Thickness: 5 inches
 - 7. Total System Weight: 16 pounds per sq. ft.

PLAYGROUND PROTECTIVE SURFACING

8. Colors: Selected by Owner from manufacturer's standard color options.
9. Test Results:
 - a. Impact Attenuation, ASTM F1292
 - 1) Gmax: Less than 100.
 - 2) Head Injury Criteria (HIC): Less than 500.
 - b. Tensile Strength, ASTM D412
 - 1) Tensile Strength: 89.4 psi
 - 2) Elongation 35.93%
 - c. Tear Strength, ASTM D624
 - 1) Machine: 5.26 lbs
 - 2) Cross Machine: 6.22 lbs
 - d. Coefficient of Friction, ASTM C1028
 - 1) Dry: 85
 - 2) Wet: 87
 - e. Coefficient of Friction ASTM D2047
 - 1) Dry: 1.15
 - 2) Wet: 0.97
 - f. Skid Resistance, ASTM E303
 - 1) Dry: 91
 - 2) Wet: 49
 - g. Flammability, ASTM D2859
 - 1) Pass
 - h. Water Permeability, ASTM F1551
 - 1) 2245.5 Inches/Hour
 - i. Manufacturers:
 - 1) Rubberecycle LLC: www.rubbermulch.com/#sle.
 - 2) Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Engineered Wood Fiber Fill: Manufactured for the purpose of protective surfacing; complying with ASTM F2075; do not use mulch manufactured from recycled pallets, or lumber containing nails or metal fasteners.
 1. Depth: As required to achieve specified Critical Fall Height as defined in ASTM F1292 but not more than depth indicated; maintain top elevation flush with adjacent grades.
 2. Certification: Provide IPEMA certification of ASTM F1292 Critical Fall Height at thickness specified.
 3. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fibar Systems: www.fibar.com/#sle.
 - b. GameTime, Inc: www.gametime.com/#sle.
 - c. Sof' Fall : www.sof-fall.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Geotextile: Nonwoven polypropylene sheet.
- D. Aggregate Subbase: See Section 32 11 20.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION FOR REPLACEMENT OF EXISTING LOOSE FILL SURFACING

- A. Remove existing loose fill.
- B. Measure the location of all playground elements, including perimeter of existing protective surfacing, access and egress points, hard surfaces, walls, fences, and structures, and planting locations.
- C. Stake the layout of the entire Use Zone perimeter before starting any work, based on Contract Documents.
 1. Verify that Use Zone perimeters do not overlap hard surfaces, whether currently installed or not.

PLAYGROUND PROTECTIVE SURFACING

2. If overlaps exist, notify Architect.
 3. Do not proceed until revised drawings have been provided, showing corrected layout.
- D. Inside Use Zones remove all obstructions that would extend into the resilient protective surfacing.
- E. After subgrade is correct, mark intended depth of surfacing on the base supports of each item of playground equipment using paint or tape in a manner that will be easily verifiable during installation of surfacing.
- F. Perform percolation test at the lowest elevation of the subgrade in the areas to be covered by protective surfacing.
1. Report results to Architect.
 2. If percolation is less than 1 inch in a 3 hour period, do not proceed.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Playground equipment installer will perform playground layout prior to installation of footings; verify correctness of layout before starting this work.
- B. Verify that playground equipment and site furnishings and irrigation system located within playground area are complete.
- C. Verify location of underground utilities and facilities in the playground area. Damage to underground utilities and facilities will be repaired at Contractor's expense.
- D. Verify that subgrades are at proper elevations and that smooth grading is complete.
- E. Verify that proper depth of surfacing is marked on base supports of playground equipment.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Correct subgrade irregularities to ensure that required depth of protective surfacing can be installed, and subgrade elevation is in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Inside Use Zones remove all obstructions that would extend into the resilient protective surfacing.
- C. Remove rocks, debris, and other similar items.

3.4 SUBBASE

- A. Install aggregate subbase as indicated on drawings and in Section 32 11 23. Compact aggregate to maximum 95 percent, in accordance with ASTM D1557.
- B. Install with top surface of subbase no higher than grades and levels indicated and not more than 1/4 inch lower than grades and levels indicated.
- C. Install in true, even plane, sloped to provide positive drainage.
- D. Flatness Tolerance: 1/4 inch in 10 feet, maximum.

3.5 RESILIENT SURFACING LAYER

- A. Install in accordance with CPSC Pub. No. 325, ASTM F1487, manufacturer's instructions, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. Install proper thickness throughout Use Zone(s).
- C. Clean and dry surface of subbase.
- D. Cover aggregate subbase with geotextile:
1. Verify that aggregate is free of ruts or protruding objects.

2. Lap minimum 4 inches width at seams. Adhere seams in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Install smooth, and free of tensile stresses, folds, or wrinkles.
4. Protect from clogging, tears, or other damage during surfacing installation.
5. Repair or replace damaged geotextile in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Poured-In-Place Surfacing:

1. Do not proceed with installation until all applicable site work, including substrate preparations, playground equipment installation and other relevant work has been completed.
2. Install poured-in-place playground safety surfacing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the drawings.
3. Ensure prepared subsurface is dry and clean.
4. Install edges in accordance with manufacturer's edge detail instructions and as indicated on the drawings.
5. Install cold seams in areas containing graphics as indicated on the drawings.

3.6 LOOSE FILL SURFACING

- A. Install in accordance with CPSC Pub. No. 325, ASTM F1487, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. Cover Subgrade with Geotextile:
 1. Lap minimum 4 inches width at seams. Adhere seams in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 2. Install smooth, and free of tensile stresses, folds, or wrinkles.
 3. Protect from clogging, tears, or other damage during surfacing installation.
 4. Repair or replace damaged geotextile in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Install loose fill to depths indicated, with smooth even surface flush with tops of containment curbs.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Obtain the services of the equipment manufacturer's field representative to review the finished installation for compliance with specified requirements and with design criteria to the extent known to the Contractor; submit report of field review.
- B. Owner or Owner's representative will inspect playground surfacing after installation to verify that surfacing is of proper type and depth and that playground meets specified design safety and accessibility requirements.
- C. Repair or replace rejected work until compliance is achieved.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Do not allow foot traffic until poured-in-place playground safety surfacing has cured.
- B. Restore adjacent existing areas that have been damaged from the construction.
- C. Clean playground equipment of construction materials, dirt, stains, filings, and blemishes due to shipment or installation. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using cleaning agents as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Clean playground area of excess construction materials, debris, and waste.
- E. Remove excess and waste material and dispose of off-site in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- G. Replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 18 23.59
SYNTHETIC COURT SURFACING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Acrylic Athletic Court Resurfacer.
- B. Acrylic Athletic Court Color Finish Coat.
- C. Acrylic Athletic Court Line Paint.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data including technical data sheets for all components used in acrylic color surfacing system.
- B. Certification that materials meet or exceed the requirements specified.
- C. Color samples and complete specifications of acrylic color system proposed.
- D. Installer's Qualification Statement.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer must be a member of American Sports Builders Association.
- B. All system components shall be free of asbestos, lead, and mercury.
- C. Water used in all mixtures shall be fresh and potable.
- D. No part of the surfacing system shall be applied during a rainfall, or when rainfall is imminent.
- E. Do not apply coatings to a cold surface. Surface and air temperatures must be a minimum of 50 degrees F and rising.
- F. No coatings shall be applied if surface temperatures exceed 130 degrees F.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. All materials shall be delivered to the job site in sealed containers with manufacturer's label affixed.
- B. Store products between 40 and 90°F prior to application.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Contractor shall warrant the surface installation against faulty materials or workmanship for a period of two years from the date of acceptance by the Owner. Any defects occurring during the warranty period shall be promptly repaired upon notification at no cost to the Owner.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN

- A. Advanced Polymer Technology; Laykold Advantage Color System: www.advpolytech.com.

2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Resurfacer and Filler
 - 1. Sand-filled 100% acrylic emulsion to fill and smooth rough pavements.
 - 2. Single- or multi-coat application.
 - 3. Percent solids by weight 52% Minimum.
 - 4. Weight: 10.68 lbs/gal.
 - 5. Color: Same as finish coat.
 - 6. Product: Laykold Advantage NuSurf.
- B. Color Finish Coat
 - 1. Sand-filled pigmented wear-resistant acrylic emulsion.
 - 2. Two coats.
 - 3. Percent solids by weight 49% minimum.
 - 4. Weight: 12.9 (+/-3) lbs/gal.
 - 5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
 - 6. Product: Laykold Advantage Color.
- C. Line Paint
 - 1. Factory textured, wear-resistant acrylic emulsion line marking paint.
 - a. One coat hand painted or two coats if rolled.
 - b. Spray application not permitted.
 - 2. Percent solids by weight 67% minimum.
 - 3. Weight: 11.4 lbs/gal.
 - 4. Color: White.
 - 5. Product: Laykold Acrylic Paint.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Follow manufacturer's preparation procedures.
- B. New asphalt substrates shall be allowed to cure a minimum of 30 days prior to application of any coatings.
- C. The substrate shall be clean and dry before coatings are applied. The surface of the substrate shall be inspected and free of grease, oil, dust, dirt and other foreign matter before any coatings are applied.
- D. Pressure wash entire court surface to remove all mildew, mold and debris using a rotating high pressure washing head capable of producing heated water. Utilize water reclamation and filtration systems to conserve water and reduce water runoff. Soiled water and debris must be contained and not allowed to run off into surrounding areas.
- E. Flood entire court surface with the Owner or Owner's representative present. After one hour of 70 degree sunny temperatures any depressions holding more than a nickel laying flat, will be defined and receive a shim of acrylic Leveling binder patch. Re-flood designated area to insure it is within tolerance. the finished surface shall have no depressions or ridges exceeding one eighth (1/8) inch in ten (10) feet. Clean and fill structural cracks with crack & leveling binder patch.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Mix and apply acrylic resurfacer /filler per manufacturer's instructions. Court surfaces shall match existing colors.
 - 1. One coat on existing asphalt.
 - 2. Two coats on new asphalt.
 - a. Second coat shall be pulled 90 degrees to the first coat.

- B. Apply acrylic color finish in two coats per manufacturer's instructions. Courts shall be same color as filler coats.
 - 1. All color pigmented by the manufacturer. The use of neutral material pigmented on site will not be allowed.
 - 2. All acrylic color material must be mixed using a motor agitation system having a minimum capacity of 165 gallons.
 - 3. Color: Playing court and out of bounds area color to match existing, and to be approved by Owner.
 - 4. Mask and hand paint courts with acrylic white line paint two inches wide per USTA standards, accurately located and marked in accordance with rules of the high school tennis. No spraying of the line paint will be allowed.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 31 13
CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Posts, rails, and frames.
- B. Wire fabric.
- C. Concrete.
- D. Manual gates with related hardware.
- E. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete anchorage for posts.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A121 - Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire; 2022.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.
- C. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2023.
- D. ASTM A392 - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric; 2011a (Reapproved 2022).
- E. ASTM A428/A428M - Standard Test Method for Weight [Mass] of Coating on Aluminum-Coated Iron or Steel Articles; 2021.
- F. ASTM A491 - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric; 2011 (Reapproved 2022).
- G. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2025a.
- H. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2025.
- I. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2025.
- J. ASTM F567 - Standard Practice for Installation of Chain-Link Fence; 2023.
- K. ASTM F1043 - Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework; 2018 (Reapproved 2022).
- L. ASTM F1083 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures; 2018 (Reapproved 2022).
- M. CLFMI CLF-PM0610 - Product Manual; 2017.

- N. CLFMI CLF-SFR0111 - Security Fencing Recommendations; 2014.
- O. FS RR-F-191/1D - Fencing, Wire and Post Metal (Chain-Link Fence Fabric); 1990.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on fabric, posts, accessories, fittings and hardware.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate plan layout, spacing of components, post foundation dimensions, hardware anchorage, and schedule of components. See CLFMI CLF-SFR0111 for planning and design recommendations.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation requirements, post foundation anchor bolt templates, and shop drawings.
- E. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Fence Installer Qualification Statement.
- G. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of property perimeter posts relative to property lines.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Fence Installer: Company with demonstrated successful experience installing similar projects and products, with not less than five years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Chain Link Fences and Gates:
 - 1. Master-Halco, Inc.: www.masterhalco.com.
 - 2. Merchants Metals: www.merchantsmetals.com.
 - 3. Wheatland Tube Company: www.wheatland.com.

2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Line Posts:
 - 1. Up to 6 feet high: 1.9 inch O.D.
 - 2. Up to 8 feet high: 2.375 inch O.D.
 - 3. Up to 12 feet high: 2.875 inch O.D.
- B. Corner and Terminal Posts:
 - 1. Up to 6 feet high: 2.375 inch O.D.
 - 2. Up to 8 feet high: 2.88 inch O.D.
 - 3. Up to 12 feet high: 4.0 inch O.D.
 - 4. Beyond 12 feet high: Refer to details.

- C. Gate Posts:

Gate Fabric Height Up To & Including 6 ft		Gate Fabric Height Over 6 ft To 12 ft	
Gate Leaf Width	Outside Diameter	Gate Leaf Width	Outside Diameter
up to 4 ft	2.375 in	up to 6 ft	2.875 in

over 4 ft to 10 ft	2.875 in	over 6 ft to 12 ft	4.000 in
over 10 ft to 18 ft	4.000 in	over 12 ft to 18 ft	6.625 in
		over 18 ft to 24 ft	8.625 in

- D. Top and Brace Rail: 1.66 inch diameter, plain end, sleeve coupled.
- E. Gate Frame: 1.66 inch diameter for welded fabrication.
- F. Fabric: 2 inch diamond mesh interwoven wire, 9 gauge, 0.1483 inch thick, top selvage knuckle end closed, bottom selvage knuckle end closed or equivalent.
- G. Tension Wire: 7 gauge, .177 inch thick steel, single strand.
- H. Tension Band: 3/16 x 3/4 inch thick, minimum cast steel, galvanized.
- I. Tension Strap: .196 inch thick, minimum cast steel, galvanized.
- J. Tie Wire: 9 gauge aluminum core; vinyl coated to 6 gauge.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Posts, Rails, and Frames:
 - 1. Line Posts: Type I round in accordance with FS RR-F-191/1D.
 - 2. Terminal, Corner, Rail, Brace, and Gate Posts: Type I round in accordance with FS RR-F-191/1D.
- B. Wire Fabric Vinyl Coated:
 - 1. ASTM A392 zinc coated steel chain link fabric.
 - 2. Comply with CLFMI CLF-PM0610.
 - 3. Where wire gauge is indicated for fabric, the gauge shall refer to the wire (core) prior to vinyl coating.
- C. Concrete:
 - 1. Type specified in Section 03 30 00.

2.4 MANUAL GATES AND RELATED HARDWARE

- A. Hardware for Single Swinging Gates: 180 degree box hinges, 2 for gates up to 60 inches high, 3 for taller gates; strong arm latch.
- B. Hardware for Double Swinging Gates: 180 degree box hinges, 2 for gates up to 60 inches high, 3 for taller gates; strong arm latch.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Caps: Cast steel galvanized; Vinyl coated sized to post diameter, set screw retainer.
- B. Fittings: Sleeves, bands, clips, rail ends, tension bars, fasteners and fittings; Cast Steel Galvanized.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Hardware: Hot-dip galvanized to weight required by ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Accessories: Same finish as framing.
- C. Color(s): To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install framework, fabric, accessories and gates in accordance with ASTM F567.
- B. Place fabric on outside of posts and rails.
- C. Set intermediate posts plumb, in concrete footings with top of footing 3 inches below finish grade. Slope top of concrete for water runoff.
- D. Line Post Footing Depth Below Finish Grade: ASTM F 567.
- E. Corner, Gate and Terminal Post Footing Depth Below Finish Grade: ASTM F 567.
- F. Brace each gate and corner post to adjacent line post with horizontal center brace rail and diagonal truss rods. Install brace rail one bay from end and gate posts.
- G. Provide top rail through line post tops and splice with 6 inch long rail sleeves.
- H. Install center brace rail on corner gate leaves.
- I. Do not stretch fabric until concrete foundation has cured 7 days.
- J. Stretch fabric between terminal posts or at intervals of 500 foot maximum, whichever is less.
- K. Position bottom of fabric 2 inches above finished grade.
- L. Fasten fabric to top rail, line posts, braces, and bottom tension wire with tie wire at maximum 15 inches on centers.
- M. Attach fabric to end, corner, and gate posts with tension bars and tension bar clips.
- N. Install bottom tension wire stretched taut between terminal posts.
- O. Do not attach the hinged side of gate to building wall; provide gate posts.
- P. Install hardware and gate with fabric to match fence.
- Q. Provide concrete center drop to footing depth and drop rod retainers at center of double gate openings.

3.2 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Position: 1 inch.
- C. Do not infringe on adjacent property lines.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Layout: Verify that fence installation markings are accurate to design, paying attention to gate locations, underground utilities, and property lines.
- C. Post Settings: Randomly inspect three locations against design for:
 - 1. Hole diameter.
 - 2. Hole depth.
 - 3. Hole spacing.
- D. Fence Height: Randomly measure fence height at three locations or at areas that appear out of compliance with design.
- E. Gates: Inspect for level, plumb, and alignment.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Leave immediate work area neat at end of each work day.
- B. Clean jobsite of excess materials; scatter excess material from post hole excavations uniformly away from posts. Remove excess material if required.
- C. Clean fence with mild household detergent and clean water rinse well.
- D. Remove mortar from exposed posts and other fencing material using a 10 percent solution of muriatic acid followed immediately by several rinses with clean water.
- E. Touch up scratched surfaces using materials recommended by manufacturer. Match touched-up paint color to factory-applied finish.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstrate proper operation of equipment to Owner's designated representative.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 33 44
PLAYGROUND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Playground layout and staking.
- B. Playground equipment.
- C. Location of each item of playground equipment is indicated on drawings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Footings for playground equipment.
- B. Section 09 91 13 - Exterior Painting.
- C. Section 31 22 00 - Grading: Shaping subgrade to specified grade levels.
- D. Section 32 18 16.13 - Playground Protective Surfacing: Protective surfacing in playground area.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Play Event: A piece of playground equipment that supports one or more play activities.
- B. Use Zone: Area under and around a play event within which the ground surfacing must meet fall impact attenuation requirements of ASTM F1292 when tested at the fall height specified for the play event.
- C. Fall Height: Vertical distance between the finished elevation of the designated play surface and the finished elevation of the protective surfacing beneath it, as defined in ASTM F1487.
- D. Protective Surfacing: Resilient ground surfacing, specified in Section 32 1816.13. The characteristics of the protective surfacing are based on the fall height of the playground equipment. Changes in either the surfacing or the fall height, particularly reducing the resilience of the protective surfacing or increasing the fall height, will reduce safety-related performance.
- E. Subgrade: Surface of the ground on which the protective surfacing is installed; the subbase for the protective surfacing is installed over the subgrade.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM F1292 - Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment; 2022.
- B. ASTM F1487 - Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use; 2025.
- C. CPSC Pub. No. 325 - Public Playground Safety Handbook; 2025.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meetings: Convene a meeting one week before starting earthwork for playground to discuss coordination between various installers.
 - 1. Require attendance by personnel responsible for grading and installers of playground equipment, protective surfacing, footings, and adjacent work.

2. Include representatives of Contractor.
3. Notify Architect at least 2 weeks prior to meeting.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Proposals for Substitutions: Substitutions that will increase fall height, platform height, or maximum equipment height will not be considered; submit shop drawings with proposed modifications clearly identified and sufficient information to determine compliance with specified criteria.
- C. Product Data: For manufactured equipment, provide manufacturer's product data showing materials of construction, compliance with specified standards, installation procedures, safety limitations, and the number of users permitted.
- D. Shop Drawings: Detailed scale drawings showing play event layout, use zone perimeters, and fall height for each play event.
 1. Show locations and dimensions of footings and anchorage points.
 2. Clearly identify mounting elevations in relation to a fixed survey point on site and to subgrade elevation and depth of protective surfacing.
 3. Show locations of underground utilities, storm drainage system and irrigation system.
 4. Show locations of related construction such as walkways and roadways, fences, site furnishings, and plantings.
- E. Samples: For each item that a color must be selected, provide color chart showing full range of colors and finishes.
- F. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- G. Installer's qualification statement.
- H. Maintenance Data: Provide manufacturer's recommended maintenance instructions and list of replaceable parts for each equipment item, with address and phone number of source of supply.
- I. Executed warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of the latest edition of ASTM F1487 and CPSC Pub. No. 325 at project site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company regularly engaged in manufacturing materials and products specified in this section, with at least three years of experience.
 1. Provide documentation showing that playground equipment similar to that specified has been installed in at least ten sites and in successful service for at least five years; provide addresses.
 2. Provide certificate of Insurance AA rated for minimum 1,000,000 dollars covering both product and general liability.
 3. Manufacturer's Representative: Provide product rep's name, company name and address, and playground safety training certificate.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company certified by manufacturer for training and experience installing play events and equipment.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, handle, and store equipment to project site in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Store materials in a dry, covered area, elevated above grade.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Playground Equipment:
1. GameTime, Inc: www.gametime.com/#sle.
 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 PLAYGROUND EQUIPMENT - GENERAL

- A. Design Assumptions: Because the safety of the playground depends on strict compliance with design criteria, this information is provided for Contractor's information.
1. Playground has been designed for children ages 5 through 12.
 2. If deviations from specified dimensions, especially fall heights, is required, obtain approval prior to proceeding; follow approval request procedure as specified for substitutions.
- B. Mount equipment on concrete footings, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Playground protective surfacing constitutes a resilient layer installed over a subbase (non-resilient) that is installed over subgrade; top of footings and anchorage devices is to be covered by full depth of resilient portion of protective surfacing.
 2. Protective Surfacing Depth: Refer to Section 32 1816.13.
 3. Provide supports as required to mount equipment at proper height above finish and sub-grades to allow installation of sufficient depth of protective surfacing; portion of support below top of surfacing must comply with specified requirements for equipment.
 4. Paint portion of support that is intended to be installed below top surface of protective surfacing a different color, or mark in other permanent way, so that installers and maintainers of protective surfacing can easily determine whether sufficient depth has been installed.
- C. Provide permanent label for each equipment item stating age group that equipment was designed for, manufacturer identification, and warning labels in accordance with ASTM F1487.

2.3 PLAYGROUND EQUIPMENT

- A. Comply with ASTM F1487 and CPSC Pub. No. 325; provide equipment complying with specified requirements for relevant age group(s).
1. Provide components having factory-drilled holes; do not use components with extra holes that will not be filled by hardware or covered by other components.
- B. The basis of design is GameTime, Inc., for substitution request procedures See Section 01 60 00- Product Requirements.
- C. Equipment / Components:
1. 5287 - Belt Seat 8'
 2. 5332 - PowerScape ADA Swing Frame 5" x 8'
 3. 5333 - PowerScape ADA Swing Frame 5" x 8' AAB
 4. 5376 - Zero-G (5-12) Yellow
 5. 5378 - Zero-G (5-12) Beige
 6. 32023 - Hex Pod Step
 7. 32076 - TriNet (Medium) w/ PrimeTime Connection
 8. 4962 - Echo Chamber
 9. 18337 - Triangle Transfer Platform
 10. 12747 - Sky Wheel
 11. 19174 - Leaning Wall Climber
 12. 19250 - Hour Glass Leaning Wall
 13. 19669 - Whirlwind Climber

14. 18201 - Punched Steel Deck - PrimeTime
15. 19006 - Transfer System w/ Barrier (2'-6" Rise)
16. 19007 - Transfer System w/ Barrier (3' Rise)
17. 18766 - Fun Seat
18. 19002 - Single Gizmo Decorative Panel
19. 19085 - Djembe
20. 19427 - WilderSlide II Single Spiral
21. 5209 - Catalina Climber Base
22. 6256 - Sensory Dome - Medium
23. 6264 - Inclusive Whirl - Playful
24. 90033 - Transfer Platform w/ Guardrail
25. 91697 - VistaRope Hybrid Archway
26. 91931 - Entryway (Versa)
27. 91934 - Offset Entryway (Versa)
28. 81680 - Single Seat
29. 90256 - Leaning Wall Climber
30. 80000 - Square Deck - 49"
31. 80001 - Punched Steel Deck
32. 90021 - Transfer System w/ Barrier (2' Rise)
33. 90790 - Sloped Funnel Climber Barrier (2' Rise)
34. 90848 - Net Wall Link
35. 91939 - Kokoda Climber
36. 90355 - Store Front Panel - Below Deck
37. 90506 - Single Wave Zip Slide
38. 90510 - Dueling Wave Zip Slide
39. 18914 - Offset Entryway (Versa)
40. 19099 - Schooner Climber
41. 19967 - Quiver Climber
42. 18200 - 36" Square Deck - Punched Steel
43. 19900 - Conversion Deck
44. 18766 - Fun Seat
45. 19427 - WilderSlide II Single Spiral
46. 19790 - Double Swerve Zip Slide
47. 26161 - ConnectScape Climber
48. 27102 - X-Connector (PowerScape)
49. 27083 - Geocentrix
50. 26088 - Tri Ladder
51. 27075 - 90 degree Trapezoid Overhead Ladder
52. 27085 - Metal Climbing Wall Link
53. 26094 - Triangular Shroud

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Main Structural Uprights

1. Shall be 3.5" outside diameter tubing, 1/8" wall thickness, extruded from 6005A-T61 aluminum alloy conforming to ASTM-B-221. Minimum yield strength shall be 35,000 psi and minimum tensile strength shall be 38,000 psi. All upright posts shall be coated with a custom formula TGIC polyester powder coating in conformance with the specification outlined herein.
2. AND / OR

3. Shall be 3.5" outside diameter, 13 gauge (nominal .095") galvanized round tubing, manufactured to ASTM A-500 Grade B tolerances from cold-formed steel conforming to ASTM A-1011 Sheet Spec for steel coil. Minimum yield strength shall be 45,000 psi and minimum tensile strength shall be 48,000 psi. The exterior surface is In line Zinc Flo Coating with a zinc coating of .03 thickness minimum, chromate conversion coated, and a clear high performance organic polymer is applied. Galvanizing coverage shall demonstrate the ability to exceed 1000 hours salt spray corrosion exposure in accordance with ASTM B-117. Internal surface zinc rich 91% minimum zinc dust content in organic resin, as per ASTM F-1043. All upright posts shall be coated with a custom formula TGIC.
- B. Component Attachment
 1. Must be factory preset to the uprights to ensure full field compliance with current safety standards. Hinges, or any clamps, that require field locating or field drilling or installation are not acceptable, due to the susceptibility of installation out of compliance with safety standards.
- C. Plastisol Coated Steel
 1. Products including platforms, steps, and bridges shall be fabricated from 12-gauge perforated steel with a .08" minimum thickness, textured slip-resistant polyvinyl chloride plastisol dipped coating. Platforms must attach directly to threaded inserts factory installed to uprights, using (2) 3/8" bolts at each upright connection point to eliminate the possibility of deck slipping. Plastisol coating shall be free of latex and tested to meet California standards for phthalate levels and safe for children. Available in manufacturers standard colors.
- D. Molded Polyethylene
 1. Products are to be rotationally molded plastic with a 1/4" nominal wall thickness. All plastic is to be U.V. stabilized with optional graphics molded into the component during the molding process. Molded products shall have an anti-static additive and be available in any of the manufacturer's standard colors.
- E. High Density Polyethylene
 1. Shall be made from either 1/2" or 3/4" thick (depending on application used) high density, UV-stabilized and color impregnated polyethylene.
- F. Metal Climbers and Enclosures
 1. Products shall be fabricated from 1 5/16" OD x .083" (14 gauge) wall galvanized steel tubing with frames fabricated of 2 3/8" OD x .134 (10 gauge) wall galvanized steel tubing. All tubing used shall be an electrical resistance welded, cold rolled, high strength steel tubing. The exterior coating will consist of an in-line Zinc Flo Coating with a zinc coating of .03 thickness minimum, chromate conversion, and acrylic over-coating. The interior coating will consist of a special organic acrylic modified polyester. All climbers shall be coated with a custom formula TGIC.
- G. Cables
 1. Shall be 18mm polyester twisted type with the following properties: calculated tensile strength of >60kN, quantity 6 strands 2.8mm diameter each, steel strands shall have QTY 19 steel wires diameter .62mm each, quantity 3 fiber core 2.7mm diameter each, UV protected polyester impregnated. Terminations shall be made of the following materials: Aluminum forks, stainless steel D-shackles, stainless steel lifting eye nuts. Connections shall be made of the following: Aluminium connector eggs, aluminum 20piece T-joints, aluminum T-joints, alluminum in-line connector, aluminum ferrules.
- H. Hardware

1. All nuts, bolts, screws, inserts, and lock washers used in the assembly of all play equipment shall be stainless steel, yellow dichromate plated steel, blue-coat plated steel, mechanically galvanized or powder coated/yellow dichromate plated steel. All primary fasteners shall be 304 alloy stainless steel. Fasteners with yellow dichromate treatment have an electro-deposited, 99.9% pure zinc substrate applied from a specially formulated solution sealed with a yellow dichromate topcoat designed to work in conjunction with the zinc plating. Yellow dichromate has a 320% longer life to white corrosion and 275% longer to red corrosion than does hot-dip galvanizing. PowerScope Plus stainless-steel fasteners shall be button pin-in head, socket cap screws with a two-part epoxy locking patch added to the threads. The two-part locking patch shall consist of one part resin and one part catalyst which are activated during installation. After curing, the material shall require a minimum of five times the installation torque to remove the fastener. Manufacturer shall provide special installation tools for pinned fasteners.
- I. Finishes
 1. Polyester (Powder) Coating
 - a. The polyester coating shall be uniformly applied by the electrostatic method to a minimum thickness of four mils. Promptly after application of the powder, the coating shall be oven-cured at 350 degrees Fahrenheit. The color(s) of the polyester coating shall be as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standard and/or custom color selection charts. The paint process must adhere to the Powder Coat Institute 4000 Certification.
 2. Galvanized Finish
 - a. All components shall have a galvanized finish prior to powder coating and shall be protectively coated with ZRP, a zinc primer that forms a rust-resistant barrier layer. All galvanized surfaces shall be free of burs, splinters, and sharp edges.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that playground equipment footings have been installed in proper locations and at proper elevations.
- B. Verify location of underground utilities and facilities in playground area; damage to underground utilities and facilities will be repaired at Contractor's expense.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake location of playground elements, including Use Zone perimeters, perimeter of protective surfacing, access and egress points, hard surfaces, walls, fences, and structures, and planting locations.
- B. Stake layout of entire Use Zone perimeter before starting any work and before subbase under resilient surfacing is laid.
 1. Verify that Use Zone perimeters do not overlap hard surfaces, whether currently installed or not.
 2. Verify that Use Zones are free of obstructions that would extend into resilient portion of protective surfacing.
 3. If conflicts or obstructions exist, notify Architect.
 4. Do not proceed until revised drawings have been provided, showing corrected layout, and obstructions have been removed.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of equipment shall be completed by manufacturer's certified installer only.
- B. Coordinate work with preparation for and installation of protective surfacing specified in Section 32 18 16.13; install resilient portion of protective surfacing after playground equipment installation.

- C. Install in accordance with CPSC Pub. No. 325, ASTM F1487, manufacturer's instructions, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- D. Anchor equipment securely below bottom elevation of resilient surfacing layer.
- E. Install without sharp points, edges or protrusions, entanglement hazards, pinch, crush, or shear points.
- F. Do not modify play events on site without written approval of manufacturer.
- G. Install required signage if not factory-installed.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Obtain the services of the equipment manufacturer's field representative to review the finished installation for compliance with specified requirements and with design criteria to the extent known to the Contractor; submit report of field review.
- B. Certified playground installer is responsible for obtaining third party safety audit after installation to verify that playground meets specified design safety and accessibility requirements.
- C. Repair or replace rejected work until compliance is achieved.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Restore adjacent existing areas that have been damaged from the construction.
- B. Clean playground equipment of construction materials, dirt, stains, filings, and blemishes due to shipment or installation; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using cleaning agents as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Clean playground area of excess construction materials, debris, and waste.
- D. Remove excess and waste material and dispose of off-site in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 91 19
LANDSCAPE GRADING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Topsoil placement.
- B. Finish grading.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 22 00 - Grading.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.
- C. Section 32 92 19 - Seeding.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2017 (Reapproved 2025).
- B. ASTM D5268 - Standard Specification for Topsoil Used for Landscaping and Construction Purposes; 2023.
- C. ASTM F1647 - Standard Test Method for Organic Matter Content of Athletic Field Rootzone Mixes; 2011 (Reapproved 2018).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of utilities remaining by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.
- B. Soil Samples: 10 pounds sample of each type of topsoil; submit in air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
 - 1. Provide test of topsoil at a rate of one sample per 100 cubic yards.
 - 2. Stockpiled on-site topsoil shall be sampled from multiple locations within the stockpile.
- C. Field Quality Control Submittals: Topsoil depth measurements.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Place topsoil during dry weather.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Comply with ASTM D5268.
- B. Topsoil: Topsoil excavated on-site, tested and amended as required.
 - 1. Select.
 - 2. Handle excavated topsoil in accordance with Section 31 22 00 - Grading.

3. Double screened on site prior to placement.
 4. Free of roots, rocks larger than 1/2 inch, subsoil, debris, large weeds and foreign matter, including but not limited to woody material, trash and glass.
 5. Acidity range (pH) of 5.5 to 7.5.
 6. Complying with ASTM D2487 Group Symbol OH.
 7. Disturbed soil shall be minimally mechanically raked to smooth soil and remove stone.
- C. Topsoil: Friable loam; imported borrow.
1. Select.
 2. Free of roots, rocks larger than 1/2 inch, subsoil, debris, large weeds and foreign matter.
 3. Acidity range (pH) of 5.5 to 7.5.
 4. Containing a minimum organic matter of 4 percent of total content by volume, when tested in accordance with ASTM F1647, Test Method A.
 5. Complying with ASTM D2487 Group Symbol OH.
 6. USDA Textural Soil Classification: Percentage of clay, silt, and sand; defined as Sandy Loam.
 - a. Assume 1:3 sand to topsoil ratio to meet requirements.
 7. Investigate imported soil supply prior to bidding and include necessary amendments.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify grading and intended elevations are as indicated on drawings.
- B. Verify absence of standing or ponding water.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect site features to remain, including bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs.
- B. Protect trees, plants, lawns, rock outcroppings, and other features to remain.
- C. Remove debris, roots, branches, stones, in excess of 1/2 inch in size.
- D. Scarify trafficked surface to a minimum depth of 8 inches.
- E. Follow State's best practice for decompaction and deep ripping all surfaces impacted by construction.
- F. Grade substrate, see Section 31 22 00.

3.3 TOPSOIL PLACEMENT

- A. Uniformly distribute and spread topsoil.
- B. Place topsoil in areas where seeding, sodding, and planting as indicated on drawings.
- C. Place topsoil to the following compacted thicknesses:
 1. Areas Indicated Seeded with Grass: 6 inches.
 2. Areas Indicated as Sodded: 4 inches.
 3. Shrub Beds: 18 inches.
 4. Flower Beds: 12 inches.

3.4 FINISH GRADING

- A. Maintain profiles and contour of subgrade.
- B. Remove roots, weeds, rocks, and foreign material while spreading.

- C. Maintain uniform topsoil thickness.
- D. Lightly compact placed topsoil.
- E. Regrade or add topsoil where settling occurs during lawn establishment.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Topsoil Thickness: 1/2 inch plus/minus.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Remove unused topsoil. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing water.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect from stormwater runoff and subsequent construction operations.
- B. Do not permit traffic until established.
- C. Provide appropriate stakes, flags, or signage along sidewalk(s) or other areas where foot or vehicle traffic is possible until lawn is established.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 32 92 19
SEEDING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Hydroseeding, mulching and fertilizer.
- D. Maintenance.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 22 00 - Grading.
- B. Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D5268 - Standard Specification for Topsoil Used for Landscaping and Construction Purposes; 2023.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weeds: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Sample: Submit minimum 10 oz sample of proposed topsoil. Forward sample to approved testing laboratory in sealed containers to prevent contamination.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate nitrogen, phosphorus, potash, soluble salt, organic matter, and pH.
- D. Product Data: Submit data for seed mix, fertilizer, mulch, and other accessories.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify Products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance instructions, cutting method and maximum grass height; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer .

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver grass seed mixture in sealed containers. Seed in damaged packaging is not acceptable. Deliver seed mixture in containers showing percentage of seed mix, year of production, net weight, date of packaging, and location of packaging.
- B. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Seed Supplier: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum five years documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED MIXTURE

- A. Seed Mixture: General Lawn Mix - Summer Green Supreme mix:
 - 1. 20% Essential/Traverse 2 Tall Fescue.
 - 2. 20% 4th Millennium SRP Tall Fescue.
 - 3. 20% Rebounder Tall Fescue.
 - 4. 15% Cochise IV Tall Fescue.
 - 5. 10% Palmetto Turf Type Annual Ryegrass.
 - 6. 10% Green Supreme Perennial Ryegrass.
 - 7. 5% Brooklawn Kentucky Bluegrass.
 - 8. Seeding Rate: 8 lbs./1,000 sqft.

2.2 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; pH value of minimum 5.4 and maximum 7.0.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mulching Material: Oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry. Hay or chopped cornstalks are not acceptable.
- B. Mulching Material: Pelleted, biodegradable, dry recycled paper fiber, free from weeds, formulated to absorb and release water continually during seeding establishment.
 - 1. Integral tackifier and starter fertilizer.
 - 2. Manufacturer:
 - a. Lebanon Turf; PennMulch: www.lebanonturf.com.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Water: Clean, fresh and free of substances or matter that could inhibit vigorous growth of grass.
- D. Erosion Fabric: Jute matting, open weave. Provide on all disturbed slopes of 3:1 or greater.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this Section.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 31 22 00.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 32 91 19.

3.3 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer at a rate of soil analysis recommendations.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to roller compaction.
- C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine as will be used to apply seed.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

3.4 SEEDING

- A. Apply seed at a rate of 10 lbs per 1000 sq ft evenly in two intersecting directions. Rake in lightly.
- B. Do not seed areas in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or during windy periods.
- D. Roll seeded area with roller not exceeding 112 lbs.
- E. Immediately following seeding and compacting, apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
 - 1. Where pelleted mulch is incorporated, apply at manufacturer's recommended rate of coverage.
- F. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.
- G. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 4 by 4 inches.

3.5 HYDROSEEDING

- A. Apply seeded slurry with a hydraulic seeder at a rate of 10 lbs per 1000 sq ft evenly in two intersecting directions.
- B. Do not hydroseed area in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Immediately following seeding, apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- D. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.
- E. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 4 by 4 inches.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Cover seeded slopes where grade is 36 inches per foot or greater with erosion fabric. Roll fabric onto slopes without stretching or pulling.
- B. Lay fabric smoothly on surface, bury top end of each section in 6 inch deep excavated topsoil trench. Provide 12 inch overlap of adjacent rolls. Backfill trench and rake smooth, level with adjacent soil.
- C. Secure outside edges and overlaps at 36 inch intervals with stakes.
- D. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between fabric and soil.
- E. At sides of ditches, lay fabric laps in direction of water flow. Lap ends and edges minimum 6 inches.

3.7 MAINTENANCE

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.
- B. Protect seeded areas with warning signs during maintenance period.
- C. Maintain turf in manner required to produce healthy turf, uniform in color and leaf texture, and free from weeds and other undesirable growth.
 - 1. Grass Density - Lawns: 20 plants per sq ft, minimum.
 - 2. Bare Spots - Lawns: 2 percent of total area, maximum; 6 inches square, maximum.
 - 3. Keep turf relatively free of thatch, woody plant roots, diseases, nematodes, soil-borne insects, stones larger than 1 inch in diameter, and other materials detrimental to grass growth.
 - 4. Limit broadleaf weeds and patches of foreign grass to maximum of 2 percent of total area.
- D. Mowing: During growing season, mow turf to uniform height, preventing scalping, rutting, bruising, and uneven or rough cutting.
 - 1. Prior to mowing, clean debris and leaves from turf surface.
 - 2. Schedule frequency of mowing so no more than one-quarter to one-third of grass leaf length is removed during cutting.
 - a. Maximum Grass Height Before Mowing: 4 inches.
 - b. Height of turf is measured from soil surface.
 - 3. Make each successive mowing at approximately 45 degrees to previous mowing, if practical.
 - 4. Cool Season Grasses:
 - a. Reduce mowing height in fall and spring.
 - b. Use rotary-type mowers; mulcher-type mowers may be used.
 - 5. Warm Season Grasses:
 - a. Increase mowing height slightly as fall approaches.
 - b. Use reel-type mowers; do not use mulcher mowers.
 - 6. Remove grass clippings.
- E. Trimming: Immediately after each mowing, neatly trim perimeter of each turf area and around obstructions within turf area; match height and appearance of adjacent turf.
 - 1. Adjacent to Pavements: Cut edges of turf to form distinct, uniform turf edge.
 - 2. Adjacent to Planting Beds and Permanently Mulched Areas: Cut edges of turf to form distinct, uniform turf edge.
 - 3. Around Other Trees and Poles: Where no planting bed or mulched area exists, trimming with string trimmer is acceptable.
 - 4. At Fences: Trim on both sides of fence.
 - 5. Irrigation Heads and Valve Boxes: Trim neatly so grass does not interfere with operation.
- F. Fertilizer: Apply as recommended by manufacturer and at rate indicated by soil analysis.
 - 1. Cool Season Grasses: Apply at least once in fall before first frost; do not apply high-nitrogen fertilizer during summer; reduced spring application is optional.
 - 2. Warm Season Grasses: Make two applications, in spring when grass begins to green up, and in fall about 6 weeks before average first frost.
- G. Reseeding: Comply with requirements of this section.
- H. Cleanup:
 - 1. Clean adjacent pavements of plant debris and other debris generated by maintenance activities.
 - 2. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris; Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.
 - 3. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris.
 - a. Biodegradable Debris: Deposit biodegradable debris in Owner's designated on-site compost pile, branches and bark are not considered biodegradable.
 - b. Branches and Bark: Machine-chip branch and bark debris; deposit resulting debris in Owner's designated wood chip storage area.
 - c. Non-Biodegradable Debris: Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.

END OF SECTION

SEEDING

SECTION 32 93 00
PLANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. New trees, plants, and ground cover.
- D. Relocated trees, plants, and ground cover.
- E. Mulch and Fertilizer.
- F. Maintenance.
- G. Tree Pruning.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.
- B. Section 32 92 19 - Seeding.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A300 Part 1 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations - Tree, Shrub, and Other Woody Plant Management - Standard Practices (Pruning); 2017.
- B. ANSI/AHIA Z60.2 - American Standard for Nursery Stock; 2025.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Maintenance Data: Include cutting and trimming method; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer.
- C. Submit list of plant life sources.
- D. Maintenance Contract.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Nursery Qualifications: Company specializing in growing and cultivating the plants with three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing and planting the plants with 5 years experience.
- C. Tree Pruner Qualifications: Company specializing in pruning trees with proof of Arborist Certification.
- D. Maintenance Services: Performed by installer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.
- B. Protect and maintain plant life until planted.
- C. Deliver plant life materials immediately prior to placement. Keep plants moist.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install plant life when ambient temperatures may drop below 35 degrees F or rise above 90 degrees F.
- B. Do not install plant life when wind velocity exceeds 30 mph.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide one year warranty.
- C. Warranty: Include coverage for one continuous growing season; replace dead or unhealthy plants.
- D. Replacements: Plants of same size and species as specified, planted in the next growing season, with a new warranty commencing on date of replacement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANTS

- A. Plants: Species and size identified in plant schedule, grown in climatic conditions similar to those in locality of the work according to ANSI/AHIA Z60.2.

2.2 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; minimum pH value of 5.4 and maximum 7.0.

2.3 SOIL AMENDMENT MATERIALS

- A. Peat Moss: Shredded, loose, sphagnum moss; free of lumps, roots, inorganic material or acidic materials; minimum of 85 percent organic material measured by oven dry weight, pH range of 4 to 5; moisture content of 30 percent.
- B. Bone Meal: Raw, finely ground, commercial grade, minimum of 3 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphorous.
- C. Lime: Ground limestone, dolomite type, minimum 95 percent carbonates.

2.4 MULCH

- A. Mulching Material: Oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry. Hay or chopped cornstalks are not acceptable.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wrapping Materials: Burlap.
- B. Stakes: Softwood lumber, pointed end.

- C. Cable, Wire, Eye Bolts and Turnbuckles: Non-corrosive, of sufficient strength to withstand wind pressure and resulting movement of plant life.
- D. Plant Protectors: Rubber sleeves over cable to protect plant stems, trunks, and branches.
- E. Landscape Fabric: Non-woven, needle punched, polypropylene, fabric; Mirafi MSCAPE, or approved equal.

2.6 PLANT SOIL MIX

- A. A uniform mixture of 1 part peat and 3 parts topsoil by volume.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide analysis of topsoil; comply with requirements of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Provide testing of imported topsoil.
- C. Testing is not required if recent tests are available for imported topsoil. Submit these test results to the testing laboratory for approval. Indicate, by test results, information necessary to determine suitability.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that prepared subsoil and planters are ready to receive work.
- B. Saturate soil with water to test drainage.
- C. Verify that required underground utilities are available, in proper location, and ready for use.

3.2 PREPARATION OF SUBSOIL

- A. Prepare subsoil to eliminate uneven areas. Maintain profiles and contours. Make changes in grade gradual. Blend slopes into level areas.
- B. Remove foreign materials, weeds and undesirable plants and their roots. Remove contaminated subsoil.
- C. Scarify subsoil to a depth of 3 inches where plants are to be placed. Repeat cultivation in areas where equipment, used for hauling and spreading topsoil, has compacted subsoil.
- D. Dig pits and beds 6 inches larger than plant root system.

3.3 PLACING TOPSOIL

- A. Spread topsoil to a minimum depth of 4 inches over area to be planted. Rake smooth.
- B. Place topsoil during dry weather and on dry unfrozen subgrade.
- C. Remove vegetable matter and foreign non-organic material from topsoil while spreading.
- D. Grade topsoil to eliminate rough, low or soft areas, and to ensure positive drainage.
- E. Install topsoil into pits and beds intended for plant root balls, to a minimum thickness of 6 inches.

3.4 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after initial raking of topsoil.
- C. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- D. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

3.5 PLANTING

- A. Place plants for best appearance for review and final orientation by Architect.
- B. Set plants vertical.
- C. Remove non-biodegradable root containers.
- D. Set plants in pits or beds, partly filled with prepared plant mix, at a minimum depth of 6 inches under each plant. Remove burlap, ropes, and wires, from the root ball.
- E. Place bare root plant materials so roots lie in a natural position. Backfill soil mixture in 6 inch layers. Maintain plant life in vertical position.
- F. Saturate soil with water when the pit or bed is half full of topsoil and again when full.

3.6 PLANT RELOCATION AND RE-PLANTING

- A. Relocate plants as indicated by Architect.
- B. Replant plants in pits or beds, partly filled with prepared topsoil mixture, at a minimum depth of 6 inches under each plant. Remove burlap, ropes, and wires, from the root ball.
- C. Place bare root plant materials so roots lie in a natural position. Backfill soil mixture in 6 inch layers. Maintain plant materials in vertical position.
- D. Saturate soil with water when the pit or bed is half full of topsoil and again when full.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF ACCESSORIES

- A. Wrap deciduous shade and flowering tree trunks and place tree protectors.

3.8 PLANT SUPPORT

- A. Brace plants vertically with plant protector wrapped guy wires and stakes to the following:
 - 1. Tree Caliper: 1 inch; Tree Support Method: 1 stake with one tie
 - 2. Tree Caliper: 1 to 2 inches; Tree Support Method: 2 stakes with two ties
 - 3. Tree Caliper: 2 to 4 inches; Tree Support Method: 3 stakes with 2 ties
 - 4. Tree Caliper: Over 4 inches; Tree Support Method: 4 guy wires with eye bolts and turn buckles

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.
- B. Plants will be rejected if a ball of earth surrounding roots has been disturbed or damaged prior to or during planting.

3.10 MAINTENANCE

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.
- B. Provide a separate maintenance contract for specified maintenance service.

- C. Cleanup:
1. Clean adjacent pavements of plant debris and other debris generated by maintenance activities.
 2. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris; Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.
 3. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris.
 - a. Biodegradable Debris: Deposit biodegradable debris in Owner's designate on-site compost pile; branches and bark are not considered biodegradable.
 - b. Branches and Bark: Machine-chip branch and bark debris; deposit resulting debris in Owner's designated wood chip storage area.
 - c. Non-Biodegradable Debris: Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 33 41 16.16
GEOCOMPOSITE SUBDRAINAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Systems.
- B. Filter aggregate and bedding.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation: Excavating for subdrainage system piping and surrounding filter aggregate.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Backfilling over filter aggregate, up to subgrade elevation.
- C. Section 33 42 11 - Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping: Connector and drainage pipe.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on geosynthetic drainage products, fittings, and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, layout of geocomposite, high and low points of pipe inverts, and gradient of slope between corners and intersections.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record location of geocomposite and pipe runs, connections, cleanouts and principal invert elevations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Geocomposite Drainage: Structured high-density polyethylene (HDPE) perforated core, thermally bonded to geotextile filter fabric, suitable for horizontal or vertical installation. Drain shall allow water collection from all sides and provide continuous flow path.
 - 1. Drain Thickness: 1 inch, minimum.
 - 2. Drain Width: 6 inch.
 - 3. Core Material: High density polyethylene.
 - 4. Ultraviolet Stability: 70 percent, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4355/D4355M.
 - 5. Compressive Strength: 11,400 psi, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1621.
 - 6. Flow Rate: 21 gpm/ft width at 10psi and 0.1 gradient, minimum when tested in accordance with ASTM D4716/D4716M.
 - 7. Filter Fabric Material: Needle punctured, nonwoven geotextile.
 - 8. Elongation: 50%, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M
 - 9. Grab Tensile: 120 pounds, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
 - 10. Permittivity: 0.5 per second, minimum, ASTM D4491/D4491M.
 - 11. Apparent Opening Size: 70 U.S. Std. Sieve, in accordance with ASTM D4751.
 - 12. Products:

- a. Intech Anchoring Systems; Hydraway: www.hydraway.net.
- b. Or Approved Equal.
- c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Drain Couplings, Fittings, and Outlets: Solid polypropylene plastic, same manufacturer as drain system.
- B. Connector and drainage pipe: See Section 33 42 11.

2.3 AGGREGATE AND BEDDING

- A. Filter Aggregate and Bedding Material: As detailed on Drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that excavated base is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on drawings.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hand trim excavations to required elevations. Correct over-excavation.
- B. Remove large stones or other hard matter that could damage geocomposite drainage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and join geocomposite system components and pipe fittings in accordance with drainage system manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place drainage system on compacted granular fill.
- C. Lay geocomposite drain to slope gradients noted on drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
 - 1. For horizontal applications, ensure top and bottom of system is oriented according to manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Join geocomposite ends with manufacture's standard splice couplings.
- E. Install other fittings and outlet transitions at locations indicated on approved shop drawing to provide free flowing drainage.
- F. Place aggregate in maximum 4 inch lifts, consolidating each lift.
 - 1. Do not allow wheeled traffic over geocomposite prior to a minimum of 6 to 9 inches of compacted cover being established.
- G. Refer to Section 31 23 23 for compaction requirements. Do not displace or damage geocomposite or pipe when compacting.
- H. Connect to storm sewer system with unperforated pipe .

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Field inspection and testing.

- B. Request inspection prior to and immediately after placing aggregate cover over pipe.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drainage, pipe and aggregate cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation begins.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 33 42 11
SITE STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Stormwater drainage piping.
- B. Stormwater pipe accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete for cleanout base pad construction.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation: Excavating of trenches.
- C. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching: Excavating, bedding, and backfilling.
- D. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Bedding and backfilling.
- E. Section 33 42 30 - Stormwater Drains.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C14 - Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe; 2020 (Reapproved 2025).
- B. ASTM C76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2025.
- C. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2021a.
- D. ASTM D2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications; 2025.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the installation of stormwater gravity piping with size, location and installation of stormwater drains according to Section 33 42 30.
- B. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating pipe, pipe accessories.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures required to install Products specified.
- E. Project Record Documents:
 - 1. Record location of pipe runs, connections, and invert elevations.

2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STORMWATER PIPE MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2729, Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) material; inside nominal diameter of 4-15 inches, bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint end.
- B. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D3350, High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) corrugated wall pipe with integrally formed smooth liner; inside nominal diameter of 3 - 60 inch, meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 252, Type S, for diameters between 3 inches and 10 inches and AASHTO M 294, Type S, for diameters between 12 inches and 60 inches, soil-tight, bell and spigot joints with rubber gaskets, with pipe and fittings manufactured from virgin PE compounds with cell classification 3254420C, or better.

2.2 PIPE ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Same material as pipe molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in required tee, bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps and other configurations required.
- B. Filter Fabric: Non-biodegradable, woven.
- C. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor, clear plastic covering, minimum 6 inches wide by 4 mil thick, imprinted with "Storm Sewer Service " in large letters, for direct burial service.

2.3 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS

- A. Bedding: As specified in Section 31 23 16.13.
- B. Cover: As specified in Section 31 23 16.13.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 TRENCHING

- A. See Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching for additional requirements.
- B. Hand trim excavation for accurate placement of pipe to elevations indicated.
- C. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling to provide top cover to minimum compacted thickness of 12 inches exclusive of asphalt or concrete, compacted to 95%.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on layout drawings.
- B. Install pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Seal watertight.
 1. Plastic Pipe: Also comply with ASTM D2321.
- C. Lay pipe to slope gradients noted on layout drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- D. Connect to building storm drainage system, foundation drainage system, and utility/municipal system.

- E. Make connections through walls through sleeved openings, where provided.
- F. Install continuous trace wire 6 inches above top of pipe; coordinate with Section 31 23 16.13.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection in accordance with Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect pipe and bedding cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.
- B. Repair or replace pipe that is damaged or displaced from construction operations.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 33 42 30
STORMWATER DRAINS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Precast concrete catch basins.
- B. Prefabricated trench drains.
- C. Frames and grates.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.
- D. Section 33 42 11 - Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO HB - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges; 2005, with Errata.
- B. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- C. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- D. ASTM C478/C478M - Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections; 2020.
- E. ASTM C990 - Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants; 2009 (Reapproved 2019).

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Installation of stormwater drains with piping and other structures.
 - 1. See Section 33 42 11 for stormwater gravity piping.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.
- C. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Weight rating for catch basins, trench drains, and frame and grates.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate stack assembly, invert elevations, opening sizes, and pipe angles.
- D. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- E. Installer's qualification statement.

- F. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- G. Project Record Documents:
 - 1. Record invert elevations of catch basins, drop inlets, and trench drains.
 - 2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with at least three years of documented experience.
- B. Documents at Project Site: Maintain one copy of manufacturer's instructions, assembly drawings, and shop drawings at the project site.
- C. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI SPEC-301 and ACI CODE-318.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CATCH BASINS

- A. Weight Rating: H 10 according to AASHTO HB.
- B. Precast Concrete Catch Basins: Comply with ASTM C478/C478M, reinforced.
 - 1. Wall Thickness: 6 inches (152 mm).
 - 2. Base Thickness: 12 inches (305 mm).
 - 3. Reinforcement: Formed steel wire, galvanized finish, wire diameter as indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C990.
- C. Grade Adjustments:
 - 1. Adjustment Ring: Expanded polypropylene, 6 inches (152 mm) wide, diameter matching frame dimensions, in accordance with ASTM C478/C478M.
- D. Frames and Grates: Cast iron, checkerboard pattern, as noted on plans.

2.2 PREFABRICATED TRENCH DRAINS

- A. Prefabricated Trench Drain: Polymer concrete, glass fiber reinforced, metal installation brackets.
 - 1. Weight Rating: Pedestrian according to AASHTO HB.
 - 2. Bottom: Sloped.
 - 3. Frames and Grates: Galvanized steel support, steel grate, linear pattern, match drain opening size.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify items provided by other sections of work are properly sized and located.
- B. Verify built-in items are in proper location and ready for roughing into work.
- C. Verify excavation location and depth are correct.

3.2 EXCAVATION AND FILL

- A. Hand trim excavation for accurate placement to indicated elevations.

- B. Backfill with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.
- C. See Section 31 23 16 for additional excavation requirements.
- D. See Section 31 23 23 for additional fill requirements.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Establish elevations and pipe inverts for inlets and outlets as indicated in drawings.
- B. Precast Concrete Catch Basins:
 - 1. Place base section plumb and level.
 - 2. Install joint sealant uniformly around section lip.
 - 3. Overlay additional sections on joint sealant.
- C. Prefabricated Drop Inlets, Trench Drains, or Slot Drains:
 - 1. Place base section plumb and level.
 - 2. Install according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 3. Secure installation brackets.
 - 4. Protect drain from foreign material.
- D. Grade Adjustments:
 - 1. Install expanded polypropylene ring according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Place adjacent materials tight and smooth following design grades.
- E. Frames and Grates:
 - 1. Place frame plumb and level.
 - 2. Mount frame on expanded polypropylene ring according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 3. Mount frame on prefabricated drop inlets or trench drains according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 4. Place grate in frame securely.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Perform field inspection for pipe invert elevations.
- C. If inspections indicate work does not meet specified requirements, adjust work and reinspect at no cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank